TUTORIA
LATIN
GRAMM

HAYES
AND
MASON

Univers
Tutorial

Malvern College for Girls

Regular Verbs.

ACTIVE VOICE.

From the Present Base.

Pres. Indic.	ăm-ō, -ās, -ăt; -āmŭs, -ātĭs, -ant	
	mŏn-ēō, -ēs, -ēt; -ēmŭs, -ētĭs, -ent	
	rĕg-ō, -ĭs, -ĭt; -ĭmŭs, -ĭtĭs, -unt	
	aud-īō, -īs, -ĭt; -īmŭs, -ītĭs, -ĭunt	
Imperf.	ăm-ā, mŏn-ē, rĕg-ē, aud-ĭē	-bam, -bās, -băt; -bāmŭs, -bātĭs, -bant
Future.	ăm-ā, mŏn-ē	-bō, -bĭs, -bĭt; -bĭmŭs, -bĭtĭs, -bunt
	rĕg, aud-ĭ	-am, -ēs, -ĕt; -ēmŭs, -ētĭs, -ent
Pres. Subj.	ăm-em, -ēs, -ĕt; -ēmŭs, -ētĭs, -ent	
	mŏn-ĕ, rĕg, aud-ĭ	-am, -ās, -ăt; -āmŭs, -ātĭs, -ant
Imperf.	ăm-ā, mŏn-ē, rĕg-ĕ, aud-ī	-rem, -rēs, -rĕt; -rēmŭs, -rētĭs, -rent
Imperat.	ăm-ā, -ātĕ; -ātō, -ātōtĕ, -antō	
	mŏn-ē, -ētĕ; -ētō, -ētōtĕ, -entō	
	rĕg-ĕ, -ĭtĕ; -ĭtō, -ĭtōtĕ, -unto	
	aud-ī, -ītĕ; -ītō, -ītōtĕ, -ĭuntō	

Infin., etc.	Pres. Part.	Pres. Inf.	Gerund.
ăm	-ans	-ārĕ	-andum
mŏn	-ens	-ērĕ	-endum
rĕg	-ens	-ĕrĕ	-endum
aud	-ĭens	-īrĕ	-iendum

From the Perfect Base.

ăm-āv, mŏn-ŭ, rex, aud-īv	-ī, -istī, -ĭt; -ĭmŭs, -istĭs, -ērunt (-ērĕ)	Ind. Perf.
	-ĕram, -ĕrās, -ĕrăt; -ĕrāmŭs, -ĕrātĭs, -ĕrant	Plpf.
	-ĕrō, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĭt; -ĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrĭtĭs, -ĕrint	Fut.-Perf.
	-ĕrim, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĭt; -ĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrĭtĭs, -ĕrint	Subj. Perf.
	-issem, -issēs, -issĕt; -issēmŭs, -issētĭs, -issent	Plpf.
	-issĕ	Perf. Inf.

From the Supine Base.

ăm-āt, mŏn-ĭt, rect, aud-īt	-ūrŭs essĕ	Fut. Inf.
	-ūrŭs	Fut. Partic.
	-um, -ū	Supine.

PASSIVE VOICE.

From the Present Base.

Pres. Indic.	-ŏr, -ārĭs, -ātŭr; -āmŭr, -āmĭnī, -antŭr	
	-ĕŏr, -ērĭs, -ētŭr; -ēmŭr, -ēmĭnī, -entŭr	
	-ŏr, -ĕrĭs, -ĭtŭr; -ĭmŭr, -ĭmĭnī, -untŭr	
	-ĭŏr, -īrĭs, -ītŭr; -īmŭr, -īmĭnī, -ĭuntŭr	
Imperf.	-bār, -bārĭs (-bārĕ), -bātŭr; -bāmŭr, -bāmĭnī, -bantŭr	
Future.	-bŏr, -bĕrĭs (-bĕrĕ), -bĭtŭr; -bĭmŭr, -bĭmĭnī, -buntŭr	
	-ăr, -ērĭs (-ērĕ), -ētŭr; -ēmŭr, -ēmĭnī, -entŭr	
Pres. Subj.	-ĕr, -ērĭs (-ērĕ), -ētŭr; -ēmŭr, -ēmĭnī, -entŭr	
	-ăr, -ārĭs (-ārĕ), -ātŭr; -āmŭr, -āmĭnī, -antŭr	
Imperf.	-rĕr, -rērĭs (-rērĕ), -rētŭr; -rēmŭr, -rēmĭnī, -rentŭr	
Imperat.	-ārĕ, -āmĭnī; -ātŏr, -antŏr	
	-ērĕ, -ēmĭnī; -ētŏr, -entŏr	
	-ĕrĕ, -ĭmĭnī; -ĭtŏr, -untŏr	
	-īrĕ, -īmĭnī; -ītŏr, -ĭuntŏr	

Gerundive.	Pres. Inf.
-andŭs	-ārī
-endŭs	-ērī
-endŭs	-ī
-iendŭs	-īrī

From the Supine Base.

ăm-āt, mŏn-ĭt, rect, aud-īt	-ŭs sum, ĕs, est; -ī sŭmŭs, estĭs, sunt	Ind. Perf.
	-ŭs ĕram, ĕrās, ĕrăt; -ī ĕrāmŭs, ĕrātĭs, ĕrant	Plpf.
	-ŭs ĕrō, ĕrĭs, ĕrĭt; -ī ĕrĭmŭs, ĕrĭtĭs, ĕrunt	Fut.-Perf.
	-ŭs sim, sīs, sĭt; -ī sīmŭs, sītĭs, sint	Subj. Perf.
	-ŭs ess-em -ēs, -ĕt; -ī ess-ēmŭs, -ētĭs, -ent	Plpf.
	-ŭs (essĕ)	Perf. Part. & Inf.
	-um īrī	Fut. Inf.

L. G.

Irregular Verbs.

	SUM (§ 134).	*VOLO* (§ 211).	*NOLO* (§ 211).	*MALO* (§ 211).
PERFECT	fŭ-ī	vŏlŭ-ī	nōlŭ-ī	mālŭ-ī
INDIC. Pres.	sum	vŏlō	nōlō	mālō
	ĕs	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	est	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	sŭmŭs	vŏlŭmŭs	nōlŭmŭs	mālŭmŭs
	estĭs	vultĭs	nōn vultĭs	māvultĭs
	sunt	vŏlunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Imperf.	ĕram	vŏlēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
	ĕrās, etc.	vŏlēbās, etc.	nōlēbās, etc.	mālēbās, etc.
Fut.	ĕrō	vŏlam	(nōlam)	(mālam)
	ĕrĭs, etc.*	vŏlēs, etc.	nōlēs, etc.‡	(mālēs), etc.
SUBJ. Pres.	sim	vĕlim	nōlim	mālim
	sīs, etc.	vĕlīs, etc.	nōlīs, etc.	mālīs, etc.
Impf.	essem†	vellem	nollem	mallem
	essēs, etc.	vellēs, etc.	nollēs, etc.	mallēs, etc.
IMPER. Pres.	ĕs, estĕ	*None*	nōlī, nōlītĕ	*None*
Fut.	estō	*None*	nōlītō	*None*
	estōtĕ		nōlītōtĕ	
	suntō		nōluntō	
INF. Pres.	essĕ	vellĕ	nollĕ	mallĕ
PART. Pres.	*None*	vŏlens	nōlens	*None*

	FERO (§ 212). ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.	*EO* (§ 214).	*FIO* (§ 218).
PERFECT	tŭl-ī		īv-ī	fact-ŭs sum
SUPINE	lāt-um		ĭt-um	—
INDIC. Pres.	fĕrō	fĕrŏr	ĕō	fīō
	fers	ferrĭs	īs	fīs
	fert	fertŭr	ĭt	fĭt
	fĕrĭmŭs	fĕrĭmŭr	īmŭs	—
	fertĭs	fĕrĭmĭnī	ītĭs	—
	fĕrunt	fĕruntŭr	ĕunt	fīunt
Imperf.	fĕrēbam	fĕrēbăr	ībam	fīēbam
	fĕrēbās, etc.	fĕrēbārĭs (-ārĕ), etc.	ībās, etc.	fīēbās, etc.
Fut.	fĕram	fĕrăr	ībō	fīam
	fĕrēs, etc.	fĕrēris (-ērĕ), etc.	ībĭs, etc.	fīēs, etc.
SUBJ. Pres.	fĕram	fĕrăr	ĕam	fīam
	fĕrās, etc.	fĕrārĭs (-ārĕ), etc.	ĕās, etc.	fīās, etc.
Imperf.	ferrem	ferrĕr	īrem	fĭĕrem
	ferrēs, etc.	ferrērĭs (-ērĕ), etc.	īrēs, etc.	fĭĕrēs, etc.
IMPER. Pres.	fĕr, fertĕ	ferrĕ, fĕrĭmĭnī	ī, ītĕ	fī, fītĕ
Fut.	fertō	fertŏr	ītō	*None*
	fertōtĕ		ītōtĕ	
	fĕruntō	fĕruntŏr	ĕuntō	
INF. Pres.	ferrĕ	ferrī	īrĕ	fĭĕrī
GERUND	fĕrendum		ĕundum	—
PART. Pres.	fĕrens		ĭens (gen. ĕuntĭs)	

*Third person plural: ĕrunt. †Or fŏrem, fŏrēs, etc. ‡The plural, like the forms of nōlō and mālō enclosed in brackets ( ), is not in common use.

Lolo Jones-

The University Tutorial Series

Classical Editor

B. J. HAYES, M.A.

Vice-Principal of University Correspondence College

THE TUTORIAL LATIN GRAMMAR

TEXT-BOOKS FOR

LONDON MATRICULATION.

Matriculation English Course. Containing Grammar, Analysis, Composition, Paraphrasing, and Précis-writing. By W. H. Low, M.A., and John Briggs, M.A., F.Z.S. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

Tutorial History of English Literature. By A. J. Wyatt, M.A., Examiner in the University of London. *Third Edition, continued to the present time.* 2s. 6d.

Tutorial Arithmetic. By W. P. Workman, M.A., B.Sc. 4s. 6d.

The New Matriculation Algebra. By Rupert Deakin, M.A. With a Section on Graphs. *Fourth Edition.* 3s. 6d. Also separately, Matriculation Graphs. 1s.

Matriculation Geometry. By W. P. Workman, M.A., B.Sc., and A. G. Cracknell, M.A., B.Sc., F.C.P. 3s. 6d.

Euclid.—Books I.-IV. By Rupert Deakin, M.A. With Problems in Practical Geometry. 2s. 6d.

Tutorial Latin Grammar. By B. J. Hayes, M.A., and W. F. Masom, M.A., Examiner in the University of London. *Fourth Edition.* 3s. 6d.

Latin Composition. By A. H. Allcroft, M.A., and J. H. Haydon, M.A. *Sixth Edition.* 2s. 6d.

Matriculation Selections from Latin Authors. By A. F. Watt, M.A., and B. J. Hayes, M.A. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.

Matriculation Latin Construing Book. By A. F. Watt, M.A., and B. J. Hayes, M.A. 2s.

Matriculation French Course. Containing Accidence, Syntax, and Composition. By Prof. E. Weekley, M.A., Examiner in the University of London. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

Matriculation French Reader. Containing Prose, Verse, Notes, and Vocabulary. By J. A. Perret, late Examiner in the University of London. 2s. 6d.

Matriculation Modern History: The History of England, 1485-1901, with some reference to the contemporary History of Europe and Colonial Developments. By C. S. Fearenside, M.A. 3s. 6d.

Text-Book of Geography. By G. C. Fry, M.Sc., F.I.C. 4s. 6d.

Matriculation Mechanics. By Wm. Briggs, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., and G. H. Bryan, Sc.D., F.R.S. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

Matriculation Hydrostatics. By the same authors. 2s.

Chemistry for Matriculation. By G. H. Bailey, D.Sc., Ph.D., and H. W. Bausor, M.A. 5s. 6d.

The New Matriculation Heat: The New Matriculation Light: The New Matriculation Sound. By R. W. Stewart, D.Sc. *Three volumes, each* 2s. 6d.

Botany for Matriculation. By F. Cavers, D.Sc., F.L.S. 5s. 6d.

London: W. B. CLIVE, Drury Lane, W.C.

The University Tutorial Series

THE TUTORIAL LATIN GRAMMAR

BY

B. J. HAYES, M.A. Lond. and Camb.

GOLD MEDALLIST IN CLASSICS
VICE-PRINCIPAL OF UNIVERSITY CORRESPONDENCE COLLEGE

AND

W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. and Camb.

FELLOW OF UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON

Ninth Impression (*Fourth Edition*)

London: W. B. CLIVE

University Tutorial Press Ltd.

DRURY LANE, W.C.

1910

PREFACE TO THE FOURTH EDITION.

THE object kept in view throughout in writing this book was to produce a grammar, clearly and simply arranged, which should impart a sound general knowledge of Latin of the classical period, without encumbering the reader with a number of isolated forms and usages. The steady and increasing sale of the work since its first publication in 1892 would seem to indicate that a grammar so designed is found useful both in schools and by private students.

In order to distinguish points of fundamental importance from those which may be passed over at first, use has been made of a considerable variety of types. This principle has been extended to the classified lists of verbs with irregular perfects and supines—the commoner verbs being printed in heavy type—and also to the alphabetical list of verbs; the latter is intended for the purposes of revision and reference.

In the syntax the constructions found in simple sentences are treated first, and are followed by an account of the various kinds of dependent clauses used in complex sentences. Rules relating to individual words are collected in a chapter by themselves (ch. xlvii.). The examples in the syntax are drawn, to a great extent, from the classics most usually read, so that even the beginner may recognise some familiar sentences among them.

The point of view throughout the book is that of translation from Latin, though a few cautions are given here and there with regard to usages that should not be imitated; translation into Latin has already been dealt with in this series in a volume entitled *Latin Composition*.

The chief change introduced in the fourth edition is to be found in the tables of the regular conjugations: the commonest meanings of the subjunctives in principal sentences have been inserted in the paradigms, and the more important usages in dependent clauses have also been indicated by means of English conjunctions added in brackets.

The chief authorities on which this book is based are Neue, Dräger, Roby, and Lewis and Short; but various other writers have been consulted occasionally. I have pleasure in repeating here the acknowledgment made in the Preface to the First Edition with regard to my indebtedness to my colleague, Mr. W. F. Masom; his constant assistance and painstaking revision amply justify the appearance of his name on the title-page. I received also, when engaged on this book, many valuable suggestions from two other members of the staff of University Correspondence College, Mr. A. H. Allcroft (Oxon.) and Mr. F. G. Plaistowe, Fellow of Queens' College, Cambridge.

B. J. H.

Burlington House, Cambridge,
March 1900.

CONTENTS.

PART I.: ACCIDENCE.

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	Introduction	1
II.	Parts of Speech	4
III.	Substantives	5
IV.—VIII.	The Five Declensions	10
IX.	Irregularities in the Declension of Substantives	28
X.	Greek Substantives	34
XI.	Gender of Substantives	37
XII.	Declension of Adjectives	43
XIII.	Comparison of Adjectives	53
XIV.	The Numerals	57
XV.	Pronouns	62
XVI.	Remarks on Verbs	72
XVII.	The Verb *SUM*	78
XVIII.	The Four Regular Conjugations	80
XIX.	Third Conjugation, with the Short-I Forms of the Fourth	108
XX.	Deponent Verbs	110
XXI.	Principal Parts of Verbs	116
XXII.	Irregularities in the Conjugation of Verbs	132
XXIII.	Irregular Verbs	134
XXIV.	Defective Verbs	144
XXV.	Impersonal Verbs	145
XXVI.	Alphabetical List of Verbs	146

CHAPTER PAGE

XXVII. ADVERBS 160
XXVIII. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS 165
XXIX. PREPOSITIONS 166
XXX. CONJUNCTIONS 168
XXXI. INTERJECTIONS 170

PART II.: FORMATION OF CERTAIN CLASSES OF WORDS.

XXXII. SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES 171
XXXIII. DERIVED AND COMPOUND VERBS 175
XXXIV. INSEPARABLE PARTICLES 178

PART III.: SYNTAX.

XXXV. SENTENCES 179
XXXVI. VERBS, TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE: USE OF THE VOICES 181
XXXVII. THE SIMPLE SENTENCE: CONCORDS . . . 183
XXXVIII. SUBSTANTIVES: USE OF CASES AND NUMBERS . 187
XXXIX. VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES . . 216
XL. QUESTIONS 229
XLI. VERBS: NUMBER AND PERSON 231
XLII. MOODS AND TENSES IN SIMPLE SENTENCES . . 232
XLIII. COMPLEX SENTENCES CONTAINING A SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSE 239
XLIV. COMPLEX SENTENCES CONTAINING AN ADJECTIVAL CLAUSE 245
XLV. COMPLEX SENTENCES CONTAINING AN ADVERBIAL CLAUSE 249
XLVI. CLAUSES DEPENDENT ON AN INFINITIVE OR DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE, *ORATIO OBLIQUA*, AND TABLE OF SUBJUNCTIVE USAGES . . . 265
XLVII. CONSTRUCTIONS AND USAGES OF CERTAIN WORDS 274

APPENDIX 289
INDEX 299

PART I.: ACCIDENCE.

CHAPTER I.—INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. Classical Latin, *i.e.* Latin of the best period, is the language of Roman literature during the century preceding the death of the Emperor Augustus (A.D. 14).

Alphabet.

§ 2. The Latin alphabet is the same as that now in use for writing English, except that it has no **W**.

In the classical period one form (**I**) served for the vowel **I** and the consonant **J**, and accordingly the form **J** is not used in current editions of the ancient authors or in Latin words in this book.

U and **V** were also denoted by the same form (**V**), but the modern distinction has, in deference to custom and for convenience' sake, been retained in this book, **U** (**u**) being used as a vowel and also after **Q**.

Note.—In some texts of Latin writers **u** is not admitted after **u** or **v**. Either it is replaced by **o**, *e.g.* **volgŭs** (= **vulgŭs**), *common people*, **ĕquŏs** (= **ĕquŭs**), *horse;* or **c** is substituted for **qu**, *e.g.* **ĕcŭs** (= **ĕquŭs**). Some editors prefer **ŭ** to **ĭ** before **m** in superlatives and some other words; *e.g.* **maxŭmŭs** (= **maxĭmŭs**), *greatest*.

Marks of Quantity.

§ 3. Vowels are said to be of long or short quantity, according to the time occupied by their pronunciation. Thus in the English word *fumigated* *u* and *a* are of long quantity, *i* and *e* of short quantity.

The sign (−) denotes that the quantity of the vowel over which it is placed is long, the sign (⏑) denotes that the quantity of the vowel is short, and the sign (⏓) is placed over vowels that may be either long or short.

§ 4. Our knowledge of the quantities of Latin vowels is mainly derived from the poets, Latin metre depending on quantity, not, as English metre, on accent. The quantity, however, of which metre takes account is, strictly speaking, not that of *vowels*, but that of *syllables;* and although a syllable containing a long vowel is always long, a syllable containing a short vowel is short only if its vowel is not followed by two consonants or by **x**, **z**, or consonantal **i** (= **j**). Hence it is impossible to ascertain from the poets the natural length

of vowels followed by two consonants, **x**, **z**, or consonantal **i**; but philological research has now settled the quantity of most of such vowels. The subject, however, is not one that need trouble a beginner.

A syllable with a short vowel may be either long or short if its vowel be followed by two consonants of which the first is a mute (**b, p; g, c; d, t**) or **f**, and the second **l** or **r**. The mark (⏑) is often placed over such vowels; *e.g.* **pătrēs**, plural of **pătĕr**, *father*.

The final syllable of a word ending in **m** was either made long in poetry, owing to the following word beginning with a consonant, or, if the following word began with a vowel, the final **m** and the vowel preceding it were, as far as the metre was concerned, treated as non-existent. For instance the words **monstrum horrendum ingens**, *huge dreadful monster*, make only five syllables in verse: **monstr' horrend' ingens**. Hence the quantity of the vowel preceding a final **m** cannot be ascertained. It is customarily pronounced short.

§ 5. In this grammar the quantity of every vowel is marked, except in the case of—

(1) diphthongs (these are always long);

(2) vowels followed in the same word by two consonants or by **x** or **z** (but see § 4, second paragraph);

(3) vowels preceding **m** at the end of a word.

Observe also:—

(4) When the letter **i** occurs in this book without a mark of quantity in a position not included in the above three exceptions, it is consonantal; *e.g.* **iăcĭō** (= **jăcĭō**), *I throw*.

Accentuation.

§ 6. Latin words of two syllables are accentuated on the first syllable (*e.g.* **pắtĕr**, *father*; **mā́tĕr**, *mother*), *i.e.* the first syllable is pronounced with more stress than the second, though the stress is not so marked as in the English words *fáther*, *móther*.

Latin words of more than two syllables are accentuated on the penultimate (last syllable but one) if that syllable is long, *e.g.* **sŏrṓrēs**, *sisters*; but on the ante-penultimate (last syllable but two) if the penultimate is short, *e.g.* **dŏ́mĭnŭs**, *lord*; **fămí́lĭă**, *household*. Accordingly **tĕnĕbrae**, *darkness*, is pronounced **tĕ́nĕbrae** or **tĕnébrae**.

Obs. The mark of accentuation is not used in writing or printing Latin.

Pronunciation.

§ 7. There are two ways of pronouncing Latin at present common in England: (1) as English, but with final *e* never mute (*e.g.* **mărĕ**, *sea*, is a word of two syllables); (2) as the Romans are supposed to have pronounced it.

§ **8.** The following are the rules of the latter method :—

CONSONANTS : **C**, always hard, as in *can*.
G, „ „ „ *go*.
I (in some books printed **J**), as *y* in *ye*.
R, always rolled, as *rr* in *furrier*.
S, always sharp, as in *hiss* (not as in *his*).
V, as *w* in *we*.
X, always as *cs*, not *gs*.
Z, as *dz* in *adze*.

COMBINATIONS: **BS**, as *ps*; *e.g.* trabs, *beam*, is pronounced *trraps*.
CH, PH, TH, as *c*, *p*, *t*, followed by aspirate; compare *inkhorn*, *loophole*, *boathouse*.
GU (before a vowel), as *gu* in *language*.
QU, as *qu* in *queen*.
SU (in **suādĕō**, *I recommend*; **suāvĭs**, *sweet*, **suescō**, *I become accustomed*; and words formed from these), as *sw* in *sweet*.

The other consonants have their normal English value ; *t* is never to be pronounced *sh* as in *diction*.

VOWELS: **ā**, as second *a* in *papa*. **ă**, as first *a* in *papa*.
ē, „ *ê* in *fête*. **ĕ**, „ *e* in *set*.
ī, „ second *i* in *quinine*. **ĭ**, „ first *i* in *quinine*.
ō, „ „ *o* in *follow*. **ŏ**, „ „ *o* in *follow*.
ū, „ *oo* in *boot*. **ŭ**, „ *oo* in *foot*.
ȳ, like Latin **ī** uttered with rounded lips.
y̆, „ „ **ĭ** „ „

DIPHTHONGS: **ae**, as *ea* in *pear*.*
au, „ *ou* in *house*.
oe, „ *oi* in *boil*.
ei, „ *ei* in *eight*, } rarely used.
eu, „ *eu* in *feud*, }
ui, „ *we*, }

NOTE.—The true pronunciation of the diphthongs is best ascertained by pronouncing the vowels of which they are composed quickly one after the other ; the sounds indicated above are only approximations.

Obs. The learner should as occasion requires refer to the above rules for pronunciation until he is thoroughly familiar with them.

* This is the usual pronunciation in England ; according to recent authorities it should be approximately as *i* in *side*.

CHAPTER II.—PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 9. There are eight parts of speech in Latin:—

1. Substantive	declined	inflected.
2. Adjective	declined	inflected.
3. Pronoun	declined	inflected.
4. Verb	conjugated	inflected.
5. Adverb	not inflected.	
6. Preposition	not inflected.	
7. Conjunction	not inflected.	
8. Interjection	not inflected.	

NOTE.—Adverbs, though not subject to any other change, have *Degrees of Comparison* (§ 250).

When we say that a word is "inflected," we mean that to a certain unchangeable portion of the word, called the "base," suffixes are added. This system of inflexion is in substantives, adjectives, and pronouns called "declension"; in verbs it is called "conjugation."

As an example of declension in English the word *child* may be taken: from it are formed by suffixes *child's, children, children's*. Similarly in the conjugation of the verb *to love* there occur the forms *lovest, loves, loved, lovedst.*

In Latin inflexion plays a much more important part than it does in English, and **it is absolutely impossible to ascertain the meaning of a Latin sentence without paying attention to the suffix of every inflected word.**

Obs. The department of grammar that deals with inflexion is termed "accidence."

CHAPTER III.—SUBSTANTIVES.

§ **10.** Latin substantives are of **three genders**—masculine, feminine, and neuter. As in English, substantives denoting persons of the male sex are masculine, and those denoting persons of the female sex are feminine; but other substantives, instead of being all neuter, are in Latin some masculine, some feminine, some neuter.

(In this book, m. = masculine, f. = feminine, c. = common, *i.e.* either masculine or feminine, n. = neuter.)

Substantives have **inflexions** that indicate (*a*) **number** and (*b*) **case.**

§ **11.** There are in Latin, as in English, **two numbers**—singular and plural.

§ **12.** Latin substantives have **six cases.**

[To illustrate the use of the cases here and in § 18, the following words have been employed:—

Substantives (all of the First Declension, § 16).

cōpĭă, *plenty.*
cōrōnă, *wreath.*
cūră, *care.*
ĕpistōlă, *letter.*
fīlĭă, *daughter.*
glōrĭă, *glory.*
insŭlă, *island.*
Kălendae (pl.), *Calends* (the Roman name for the first day of each month).
neglĕgentĭă, *heedlessness.*
portă, *gate.*
pŭellă, *girl.*
rēgīnă, *queen.*
Rōmă, *Rome.*
rōsă, *rose.*
sŭperbĭă, *pride.*

Verbs.

ămăt, (*he, she*) *loves;* **ămātŭr,** (*he, she*) *is loved.*
cănĭt, (*he, she*) *sings;* **cănunt,** (*they*) *sing.*
dăt, (*he, she*) *gives.*
ĕrĭt, (*he, she*) *will be.*
est, (*he, she*) *is;* **sunt,** (*they*) *are.*
mūnĭt, (*he, she*) *fortifies;* **mūnītŭr,** (*it*) *is being fortified.*
pārĕt, (*he, she*) *is obedient.*
vĕnī, *come* (*thou*); **vĕnītĕ,** *come* (*ye*).
vĕnĭt, (*he, she*) *comes.*

Prepositions.

ā (before a vowel or *h*, **ăb**), *from, by* (with ablative).
ăd, *to* (with accusative).
cum, *with* (with ablative).
ĭn, *in* (with ablative).]

(1) The **nominative**, as in English, denotes the subject of the sentence, and also (with the verb *to be*) the predicate.

E.g., pŭellă cănĭt. — *the girl sings.*
pŭellă rēgīnă ĕrĭt. — *the girl will be queen.*

English Example: "*I* am *he.*"

NOTE.—*A* and *the* are not, as a rule, expressed in Latin. Thus pŭellă means *girl*, *a girl*, or *the girl.*

(2) The **vocative** denotes the person addressed.

E.g., vĕnī, pŭellă!
come, girl!

(3) The **accusative**, like the objective case in English, (*a*) denotes the direct object of a transitive verb, and (*b*) follows many prepositions.

E.g., rēgīnă pŭellam ămăt.
the queen loves the girl.
rēgīnă ăd pŭellam vĕnĭt.
the queen comes to the girl.

English Example: "He calls *me* to *him.*"

(4) The **genitive** answers to the English possessive case, and also expresses nearly all the other relations indicated by the preposition *of.*

E.g., rēgīnae fīlĭă. — *the queen's daughter* (or *the daughter of the queen*).
cōpĭă rŏsārum. — *plenty of roses.*
cŏrōnă rŏsārum. — *a wreath of roses.*
neglĕgentĭă glōrĭae. — *heedlessness of glory.*

(5) The **dative** expresses the indirect object of a transitive or intransitive verb.

(*A*) (*C*) (*B*)
E.g., pŭellă rēgīnae rŏsam dăt.
the girl gives a rose to the queen.
(*A*) (*C*)
pŭellă rēgīnae pārĕt.
the girl is obedient to the queen.

NOTE.—Where *A* (the subject) performs an action on *B* (direct object) whereby *C* (indirect object) is affected, *A* is nominative, *B* accusative, *C* dative; this is illustrated by the first of the above two examples. In the second example, the verb being intransitive, there is no direct object (*B*), but the indirect object (*C*) is, as before, in the dative.

(6) The **ablative** has three chief significations, in each of which it is used sometimes with and sometimes without a preposition:—

(*a*) **local** and **temporal**, denoting *place where* or *time when*, and usually rendered by the English preposition **in**;

(*b*) **instrumental**, denoting that with which (*instrument*) a thing is done, or the *manner* in which it is done, and usually rendered by the English preposition **with**;

(*c*) **ablative proper** (ablation = taking away), denoting *place whence*, and usually rendered by the English preposition **from**;

E.g., (*a*) Place where (with preposition):

ĭn cŏrōnā sunt rŏsae.
in the wreath are roses.

Time when (without preposition):

Kălendīs vĕnī.
come on the Calends.

(*b*) Instrument (without preposition):

rēgīnā insŭlam portīs mūnīt.
the queen fortifies the island with gates.

Manner (with preposition):

insŭlă cum cūrā mūnītŭr.
the island is being fortified with care.

(*c*) Place whence (generally with preposition):

pŭellă ā portā vĕnīt.
the girl comes from the gate.

(7) A seventh case, the **locative**, is found in the declension of some names of towns and a few other words. It has the same signification as the local use of the ablative, viz. *place where.*

E.g., rēgīnă Rōmae est.
the queen is at Rome.

NOTE 1.—It will be observed that, of the above examples of case-usage, the examples of the genitive alone contain no verb. The reason is that the genitive shows the relation of the substantive to another substantive in the same sentence; whereas the nominative, accusative, dative, ablative, and locative show the relation of the substantive to the verb. The vocative stands out of the sentence altogether.

NOTE 2.—It will also be observed that the order of words in the above Latin sentences differs from the order of the English. In Latin the extensive use of inflexions makes the order of words less essential to the meaning of the sentence than it is in English; but there is a normal order in sentences such as the above, viz.: (1) subject, (2) indirect object, (3) direct object, (4) ablative, (5) verb.

THE FIVE DECLENSIONS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 13. There are five declensions of substantives, *i.e.* Latin substantives are severally declined in five different ways.

Dictionaries indicate to which declension a substantive belongs by giving after the nominative singular the suffix of the genitive singular.

The declensions are also known according to the characteristic vowel of the genitive plural, as follows:—

	Gen. Sing. Suffix.	Gen. Pl. Suffix.	Characteristic.
First Declension	ae	Ārum	A
Second ,,	ī	Ōrum	O
Third ,,	ĭs	um or ĭum	Consonant or I
Fourth ,,	ūs	ŭum	U
Fifth ,,	ĕ̄ī	Ērum	E

§ 14. The base of a substantive, *i.e.* the invariable part to which the case-suffixes are added, can always be ascertained by cutting off the suffix from the genitive singular; but, except with substantives of the third declension, and those of the second declension which end in **r**, the base is more readily ascertained from the nominative singular by cutting off—

in the first declension ă,
„ second „ ŭs or **um**,
„ fourth „ ŭs or ū,
„ fifth „ ēs,

as is indicated by the hyphen in the examples given in the following pages.

The learner must bear in mind that **it is impossible for him to "decline" a substantive**, *i.e.* to enumerate the forms proper to the several cases, **until he has ascertained the base** to which the suffixes are to be added.

§ 15. The following remarks apply to all the declensions:—

(1) The vocative in Latin substantives is always the same as the nominative, except in the singular of substantives of the second declension with nominative singular in **ŭs**.

(2) The accusative of all neuter substantives is the same as the nominative and vocative, both in the singular and in the plural. In the plural of Latin neuter substantives these three cases always end in ă.

(3) The ablative plural is always the same in form as the dative plural.

CHAPTER IV.—FIRST (OR A) DECLENSION.

§ 16. Example: mensă (f.*), *table.* Base, mens-.

Singular.		Plural.
Nominative.	mens-ă	mens-ae
Vocative.	mens-ă	mens-ae
Accusative.	mens-am	mens-ās
Genitive.	mens-ae	mens-ārum
Dative.	mens-ae	mens-īs
Ablative.	mens-ā	mens-īs

For the signification of the several cases, see the table on the next page.

Obs. The difference in the quantity (see § 3) of the suffix in the nominative and ablative singular must be carefully marked in pronunciation, ă being sounded as the first *a* in *papa*, and ā as the second (or, if the "English" pronunciation is adopted, as *a* in *baker*).

§ 17. In the first declension the locative has been displaced by the local ablative, except in the names of towns (singular number); in these words it has the same form as the genitive singular. Thus Rōmă, *Rome*, has locative Rōmae (§ 12, 7).

NOTE.—**mīlĭtĭă**, *warfare*, also has locative **mīlĭtĭae**, *at the wars*.

For irregularities in the first declension, see §§ 41-43.
For Greek substantives of the first declension, see § 62.
For the gender of substantives of this declension, see § 71.

* Inanimate objects, though almost always neuter in English, are in Latin some masculine, some feminine, some neuter.

§ 18. TABLE OF CASE-MEANINGS (SINGULAR AND PLURAL).

EXAMPLE: pŭellă, *girl.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	**girl** (subject) as in	**pŭellă cănĭt** *the girl sings*	**girls** (subject) as in	**pŭellae cănunt** *the girls sing*
	„ (predicate with verb *to be*) „	**rēgīnă est pŭellă** *the queen is a girl*	„ (predicate with verb *to be*) „	**rēgīnae sunt pŭellae** *the queens are girls*
Voc.	**girl!** (addressed) „	**vĕnī, pŭellă!** *come, girl!*	**girls!** (addressed) „	**vĕnītĕ, pŭellae!** *come, girls!*
Acc.	**girl** (direct object) „	**rēgīnă pŭellam ămăt** *the queen loves the girl*	girls (direct object) „	**rēgīnă pŭellās ămăt** *the queen loves the girls*
	„ (after many prepositions) „	**rēgīnă ăd pŭellam vĕnĭt** *the queen comes to the girl*	„ (after many prepositions) „	**rēgīnă ăd pŭellās vĕnĭt** *the queen comes to the girls*
Gen.	**girl's** or **of a girl** „	**pŭellae rŏsă** *the girl's rose*	**girls'** or **of girls** „	**pŭellārum rŏsae** *the girls' roses*
Dat.	**girl** or **to a girl** „ (indirect object)	**rēgīnă pŭellae rŏsam dăt** *the queen gives the girl a rose*, or *the queen gives a rose to the girl*	**girls** or **to girls** „ (indirect object)	**rēgīnă pŭellīs rŏsās dăt** *the queen gives the girls roses*, or *the queen gives roses to the girls*
Abl.	**(in) a girl** (local) „	**est ĭn pŭellā sŭperbĭă** *there is pride in the girl*	**(in) girls** (local) „	**est ĭn pŭellīs sŭperbĭă** *there is pride in the girls*
	(from) a girl (ablative proper) „	**ĕpistŏlă ā pŭellā vĕnĭt** *a letter comes from the girl*	**(from) girls** (ablative proper) „	**ĕpistŏlă ā pŭellīs vĕnĭt** *a letter comes from the girls*
	(by) a girl (§ 375) „	**rēgīnă ā pŭellā ămātŭr** *the queen is loved by the girl*	**(by) girls** „	**rēgīnă ā pŭellīs ămātŭr** *the queen is loved by the girls*

CHAPTER V.—SECOND (OR O) DECLENSION.

§ 19. Substantives of this declension may be arranged as follows:—

(1) Masculines (and a few feminines) with nom. sing. suffix **-ŭs**;

(2) Masculines with nom. sing. suffix **-ĕr**;

(3) Neuters with nom. sing. suffix **-um**.

(1) Example: dŏmĭnŭs (m.), *lord*. Base, **dŏmĭn-**.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. dŏmĭn-ŭs	dŏmĭn-ī
Voc. dŏmĭn-ĕ	dŏmĭn-ī
Acc. dŏmĭn-um	dŏmĭn-ōs
Gen. dŏmĭn-ī	dŏmĭn-ōrum
Dat. dŏmĭn-ō	dŏmĭn-īs
Abl. dŏmĭn-ō	dŏmĭn-īs

(2) Example: măgistĕr (m.), *master*. Base, **măgistr-**.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. măgistĕr	măgistr-ī
Voc. măgistĕr	măgistr-ī
Acc. măgistr-um	măgistr-ōs
Gen. măgistr-ī	măgistr-ōrum
Dat. măgistr-ō	măgistr-īs
Abl. măgistr-ō	măgistr-īs

Obs. The vocative singular has the same form as the nominative. In the other cases **ĕ** is dropped before **r**.

A few substantives, however, retain **ĕ** before **r** throughout.

Example: **pŭĕr** (m.), *boy* Base, **pŭĕr-**.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. pŭĕr	pŭĕr-ī
Voc. pŭĕr	pŭĕr-ī
Acc. pŭĕr-um	pŭĕr-ōs
Gen. pŭĕr-ī	pŭĕr-ōrum
Dat. pŭĕr-ō	pŭĕr-īs
Abl. pŭĕr-ō	pŭĕr-īs

Like **pŭĕr** are declined **sŏcĕr**, *father-in-law;* **gĕnĕr**, *son-in-law;* **Lībĕr**, a name of Bacchus, god of wine; and **lībĕrī** (pl. only), *children.*

Note **sŏcĕr, gĕnĕr, lībĕrī,**
And **Lībĕr**, god of revelry:
Like **pŭĕr**, these retain the **e.**

With these may be classed **vĭr** (m.), *man.* Base, **vĭr-.**

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. **vĭr**	**vĭr-ī**
Voc. **vĭr**	**vĭr-ī**
Acc. **vĭr-um**	**vĭr-ōs**
Gen. **vĭr-ī**	**vĭr-ōrum**
Dat. **vĭr-ō**	**vĭr-īs**
Abl. **vĭr-ō**	**vĭr-īs**

Words declined like **vĭr** are its compounds **trĭumvĭr**, *member of a commission of three;* **dĕcemvĭr**, *member of a commission of ten,* etc.

(3) Example: regnum (n.), *kingdom.* Base, **regn-.**

Singular.	Plural.
N.V.A. **regn-um**	**regn-ă**
Gen. **regn-ī**	**regn-ōrum**
Dat. **regn-ō**	**regn-īs**
Abl. **regn-ō**	**regn-īs**

§ **20.** In the second declension, as in the first, the locative has been displaced by the local ablative, except in the names of towns (singular number); in these words it has the same form as the genitive singular. Thus **Cŏrinthŭs**, *Corinth,* has locative **Cŏrinthī.**

NOTE.—**Hŭmŭs**, *ground*, also has locative **hŭmī.**

For irregularities in the second declension, see §§ 44-47.

For Greek substantives of the second declension, see § 63.

For the gender of substantives of this declension with nom. sing. in **-ŭs**, see § 72.

CHAPTER VI.—THIRD (OR CONSONANT AND I) DECLENSION.

[In this declension the base (*i.e.* the invariable part of the word, to which the suffixes are added) is seldom ascertainable from the form of the nom. sing., and nothing but practice will surmount the difficulty. It is therefore necessary always to learn the gen. sing. as well as the nom. sing. of substantives of the third declension.

Many of the words here given are declined alike, and are inserted as illustrations of the changes which the base undergoes in the nom. sing.]

§ **21.** Substantives of this declension fall into two main classes :—

(I.) Those which have genitive plural ending **in -um** preceded by a consonant (consonant-nouns).

(II.) Those which have genitive plural ending **in -ĭum** (**I**-nouns).

The suffixes in this declension also vary according as the substantive is (*a*) masculine or feminine, or (*b*) neuter.

The examples are arranged as follows :—

I. (*a*) Masculine and feminine consonant-substantives.
(*b*) Neuter " "

II. (*a*) Masculine and feminine **I**-substantives.
(*b*) Neuter " "

I. (*a*) Masculine and Feminine Consonant-Substantives.

These (with the exception of the words mentioned in § 36) are **imparisyllabic,** *i.e.* the number of syllables in the nom. sing. is less than the number of syllables in the gen. sing. (**impār** = *unequal*).

§ 22. The nom. sing. frequently ends in **-s**.

Example: hĭems (f.), *winter*. Base, hĭĕm-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. hĭĕm-s	hĭĕm-ēs
Acc. hĭĕm-em	hĭĕm-ēs
Gen. hĭĕm-ĭs	hĭĕm-um
Dat. hĭĕm-ī	hĭĕm-ĭbŭs
Abl. hĭĕm-ĕ	hĭĕm-ĭbŭs

Often the increase in the number of syllables is accompanied by a change of vowel (ĕ to ĭ).

Example: princeps (c.), *chief*. Base, princĭp-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. princep-s	princĭp-ēs
Acc. princĭp-em	princĭp-ēs
Gen. princĭp-ĭs	princĭp-um
Dat. princĭp-ī	princĭp-ĭbŭs
Abl. princĭp-ĕ	princĭp-ĭbŭs

§ 23. A dental (**d** or **t**) at the end of the base is dropped before the **-s** of the nom. sing.

First Example: lăpĭs (m.), *stone*. Base, lăpĭd-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. lăpĭ-s	lăpĭd-ēs
Acc. lăpĭd-em	lăpĭd-ēs
Gen. lăpĭd-ĭs	lăpĭd-um
Dat. lăpĭd-ī	lăpĭd-ĭbŭs
Abl. lăpĭd-ĕ	lăpĭd-ĭbŭs

Second Example (ā long throughout): aetās (f.), *age*. Base, aetāt-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. aetā-s	aetāt-ēs
Acc. aetāt-em	aetāt-ēs
Gen. aetāt-ĭs	aetāt-um
Dat. aetāt-ī	aetāt-ĭbŭs
Abl. aetāt-ĕ	aetāt-ĭbŭs

NOTE.—An irregular gen. pl. **aetātĭum** is found occasionally. So **cīvĭtās**, *citizenship, state*, has gen. pl. **cīvĭtātĭum**, as also have some other similar substantives.

Third Example (ū long throughout): pălūs (f.), *marsh*. Base, pălūd-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. pălū-s	pălūd-ēs
Acc. pălūd-em	pălūd-ēs
Gen. pălūd-ĭs	pălūd-um
Dat. pălūd-ī	pălūd-ĭbŭs
Abl. pălūd-ĕ	pălūd-ĭbŭs

Fourth Example (with vowel change): mīlĕs (m.), *soldier*. Base, mīlĭt-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. mīlĕ-s	mīlĭt-ēs
Acc. mīlĭt-em	mīlĭt-ēs
Gen. mīlĭt-ĭs	mīlĭt-um
Dat. mīlĭt-ī	mīlĭt-ĭbŭs
Abl. mīlĭt-ĕ	mīlĭt-ĭbŭs

§ 24. A guttural (c or g) followed by the final -s of the nom. sing. becomes -x.

First Example: lex (f.), *law*. Base, lēg-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. lex	lēg-ēs
Acc. lēg-em	lēg-ēs
Gen. lēg-ĭs	lēg-um
Dat. lēg-ī	lēg-ĭbŭs
Abl. lēg-ĕ	lēg-ĭbŭs

Second Example: dux (c.), *leader*. Base, dŭc-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. dux	dŭc-ēs
Acc. dŭc-em	dŭc-ēs
Gen. dŭc-ĭs	dŭc-um
Dat. dŭc-ī	dŭc-ĭbŭs
Abl. dŭc-ĕ	dŭc-ĭbŭs

Third Example (with vowel change): iūdex (c.), *judge*. Base, iūdĭc-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. iūdex	iūdĭc-ēs
Acc. iūdĭc-em	iūdĭc-ēs
Gen. iūdĭc-ĭs	iūdĭc-um
Dat. iūdĭc-ī	iūdĭc-ĭbŭs
Abl. iūdĭc-ĕ	iūdĭc-ĭbŭs

§ 25. Here must be classed a few parisyllabic consonant-substantives (see § 36) with nom. sing. ending in -ēs or -ĭs (one in -x).

First Example: cănĭs (c.), *dog*. Base, căn-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. căn-ĭs	căn-ēs
Acc. căn-em	căn-ēs
Gen. căn-ĭs	căn-um
Dat. căn-ī	căn-ĭbŭs
Abl. căn-ĕ	căn-ĭbŭs

Second Example: sĕnex (c.), *old man*. Bases, sĕnec- and sĕn-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. sĕnex	sĕn-ēs
Acc. sĕn-em	sĕn-ēs
Gen. sĕn-ĭs	sĕn-um
Dat. sĕn-ī	sĕn-ĭbŭs
Abl. sĕn-ĕ	sĕn-ĭbŭs

§ 26. Often n at the end of the base is dropped in the nom. sing.

First Example: lĕō (m.), *lion*. Base, lĕōn-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. lĕō	lĕōn-ēs
Acc. lĕōn-em	lĕōn-ēs
Gen. lĕōn-ĭs	lĕōn-um
Dat. lĕōn-ī	lĕōn-ĭbŭs
Abl. lĕōn-ĕ	lĕōn-ĭbŭs

Second Example (with ō in nom. sing. and ĭ in base): virgō (f.), *maiden*. Base, virgĭn-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. virgō	virgĭn-ēs
Acc. virgĭn-em	virgĭn-ēs
Gen. virgĭn-ĭs	virgĭn-um
Dat. virgĭn-ī	virgĭn-ĭbŭs
Abl. virgĭn-ĕ	virgĭn-ĭbŭs

§ 27. Substantives with base ending in a liquid (l, n, r) often have nom. sing. of the same form as the base.

First Example: consŭl (m.), *consul* (chief civil and military official at Rome). Base, consŭl-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. consŭl	consŭl-ēs
Acc. consŭl-em	consŭl-ēs
Gen. consŭl-ĭs	consŭl-um
Dat. consŭl-ī	consŭl-ĭbŭs
Abl. consŭl-ĕ	consŭl-ĭbŭs

Second Example: ansĕr (m.), *gander*. Base, ansĕr-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. ansĕr	ansĕr-ēs
Acc. ansĕr-em	ansĕr-ēs
Gen. ansĕr-ĭs	ansĕr-um
Dat. ansĕr-ī	ansĕr-ĭbŭs
Abl. ansĕr-ĕ	ansĕr-ĭbŭs

Pătĕr, *father*; mātĕr, *mother*; frātĕr, *brother*; accĭpĭtĕr, *hawk*, have e before r in the nom. and voc. sing. only.

Example: pătĕr (m.), *father*. Base, pătr-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. pătĕr	pătr-ēs
Acc. pătr-em	pătr-ēs
Gen. pătr-ĭs	pătr-um
Dat. pătr-ī	pătr-ĭbŭs
Abl. pătr-ĕ	pătr-ĭbŭs

§ 28. A final **s** (not a suffix, but an integral part of the word) changes to **r** in the base.

Example: flōs (m.), *flower*. Base, flōr-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. flōs	flōr-ēs
Acc. flōr-em	flōr-ēs
Gen. flōr-ĭs	flōr-um
Dat. flōr-ī	flōr-ĭbŭs
Abl. flōr-ĕ	flōr-ĭbŭs

Many such substantives have two forms in the nom. sing., that ending in **r** like the base being the commoner.

Example: arbŏr or arbōs (f.), *tree*. Base, arbŏr-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. arbŏr or arbōs	arbŏr-ēs
Acc. arbŏr-em	arbŏr-ēs
Gen. arbŏr-ĭs	arbŏr-um
Dat. arbŏr-ī	arbŏr-ĭbŭs
Abl. arbŏr-ĕ	arbŏr-ĭbŭs

I. (*b*) Neuter Consonant-Substantives.

§ 29. If the nom. sing. ends in **n** or **t**, the increase in the number of syllables is accompanied by a vowel change in the base.

First Example: nōmĕn (n.), *name*. Base, nōmĭn-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V.A. nōmĕn	nōmĭn-ă
Gen. nōmĭn-ĭs	nōmĭn-um
Dat. nōmĭn-ī	nōmĭn-ĭbŭs
Abl. nōmĭn-ĕ	nōmĭn-ĭbŭs

Second Example: căpŭt (n.), *head*. Base, căpĭt-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V.A. căpŭt	căpĭt-ă
Gen. căpĭt-ĭs	căpĭt-um
Dat. căpĭt-ī	căpĭt-ĭbŭs
Abl. căpĭt-ĕ	căpĭt-ĭbŭs

§ **30.** Final **s** in the nom. sing. changes to **r** in the base.

First Example: crūs (n.), *leg.* Base, **crūr-**.

Singular.		Plural.
N.V.A.	**crūs**	**crūr-ă**
Gen.	**crūr-ĭs**	**crūr-um**
Dat.	**crūr-ī**	**crūr-ĭbŭs**
Abl.	**crūr-ĕ**	**crūr-ĭbŭs**

Second Example (with vowel change): ŏpŭs (n.), *work.* Base, **ŏpĕr-**.

Singular.		Plural.
N.V.A.	**ŏpŭs**	**ŏpĕr-ă**
Gen.	**ŏpĕr-ĭs**	**ŏpĕr-um**
Dat.	**ŏpĕr-ī**	**ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs**
Abl.	**ŏpĕr-ĕ**	**ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs**

Third Example (with vowel change): corpŭs (n.), *body.* Base, **corpŏr-**.

Singular.		Plural.
N.V.A.	**corpŭs**	**corpŏr-ă**
Gen.	**corpŏr-ĭs**	**corpŏr-um**
Dat.	**corpŏr-ī**	**corpŏr-ĭbŭs**
Abl.	**corpŏr-ĕ**	**corpŏr-ĭbŭs**

In a few substantives the nom. sing. ends in **-ŭr**, as does also the base.

Example: fulgŭr (n.), *lightning.* Base, **fulgŭr-**.

Singular.		Plural.
N.V.A.	**fulgŭr**	**fulgŭr-ă**
Gen.	**fulgŭr-ĭs**	**fulgŭr-um**
Dat.	**fulgŭr-ī**	**fulgŭr-ĭbŭs**
Abl.	**fulgŭr-ĕ**	**fulgŭr-ĭbŭs**

II. (*a*) Masculine and Feminine I-Substantives.

To this class belong **parisyllabic** substantives (*i.e.* with an equal number of syllables in the nom. sing. and gen. sing. respectively), and substantives with base ending in two consonants, together with a few others mentioned in § 36.

§ 31. Parisyllabic **I**-substantives add **-ēs** or **-ĭs** to the base in the nom. sing.

First Example: **nūbēs** (f.), *cloud.* Base, **nūb-**.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. **nūb-ēs**	**nūb-ēs**
Acc. **nūb-em**	**nūb-ēs** or **-īs**
Gen. **nūb-ĭs**	**nūb-ĭum**
Dat. **nūb-ī**	**nūb-ĭbŭs**
Abl. **nūb-ĕ**	**nūb-ĭbŭs**

Second Example: **hostĭs** (c.), *enemy.* Base, **host-**.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. **host-ĭs**	**host-ēs**
Acc. **host-em**	**host-ēs** or **-īs**
Gen. **host-ĭs**	**host-ĭum**
Dat. **host-ī**	**host-ĭbŭs**
Abl. **host-ĕ**	**host-ĭbŭs**

Obs. The accusative plural of masculine and feminine **I**-substantives is generally printed with the ending **-ēs**, but the older and more correct ending **-īs** is sometimes used, especially in editions of the poets.

§ 32. A few of these **I**-substantives have an alternative abl. sing. ending in **-i**; some have also an alternative acc. sing. ending in **-im**.

Examples: **nāvĭs** (f.), *ship.* Base, **nāv-**.
imbĕr (m.), *shower.* Base, **imbr-**.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N.V. **nāv-ĭs**	**nāv-ēs**	**imbĕr**	**imbr-ēs**
Acc. **nāv-em** or **-im**	**nāv-ēs** or **-īs**	**imbr-em**	**imbr-ēs** or **-īs**
Gen. **nāv-ĭs**	**nāv-ĭum**	**imbr-ĭs**	**imbr-ĭum**
Dat. **nāv-ī**	**nāv-ĭbŭs**	**imbr-ī**	**imbr-ĭbŭs**
Abl. **nāv-ĕ** or **-ī**	**nāv-ĭbŭs**	**imbr-ĕ** or **-ī**	**imbr-ĭbŭs**

The more important substantives declined like **nāvĭs** are **classĭs**, *fleet;* **puppĭs**, *stern;* **clāvĭs**, *key;* **febrĭs**, *fever;* **messĭs**, *harvest*, **turrĭs**, *tower.* **Sĭtĭs**, *thirst*, and **tussĭs**, *cough*, have only **-im** and **-i** in acc. and abl. sing. respectively.

Cănālĭs, *channel;* **ignĭs**, *fire;* **sĕcūrĭs**, *axe;* and **sŏdālĭs**, *boon-companion*, have abl. in **-i**.

Febrĭs, messĭs, turrĭs, clāvĭs,
Classĭs, puppĭs, are (like **nāvĭs**)
Wont from **im** and **ī** to falter;
Sĭtĭs, tussĭs never alter.
I for **ignĭs** and **cănālĭs,**
With **sĕcūrĭs** and **sŏdālĭs.**

Lintĕr, *boat;* **ūtĕr,** *leather bottle;* and **ventĕr,** *stomach,* are declined like **imbĕr.**

Restĭs, *rope,* has acc. sing. **restim** or **restem,** abl. sing. **restĕ.**

§ 33. Substantives with base ending in two consonants have the suffix **-s** in the nom. sing.

First Example: urbs (f.), *city.* Base, **urb-.**

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. **urb-s**	**urb-ēs**
Acc. **urb-em**	**urb-ēs** or **-īs**
Gen. **urb-ĭs**	**urb-ĭum**
Dat. **urb-ī**	**urb-ĭbŭs**
Abl. **urb-ĕ**	**urb-ĭbŭs**

Second Example (with dental dropped before **-s** in the nom. sing.): dens (m.), *tooth.* Base, **dent-.**

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. **den-s**	**dent-ēs**
Acc. **dent-em**	**dent-ēs** or **īs**
Gen. **dent-ĭs**	**dent-ĭum**
Dat. **dent-ī**	**dent-ĭbŭs**
Abl. **dent-ĕ**	**dent-ĭbŭs**

To these are to be added a few imparisyllabic substantives (see § 36) with base ending in one consonant. In some of these the final **s** of the nom. sing. is an integral part of the word, and changes to **r** in the base.

Example: **mūs** (c.), *mouse.* Base, **mūr-.**

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. **mūs**	**mūr-ēs**
Acc. **mūr-em**	**mūr-ēs** or **-īs**
Gen. **mūr-ĭs**	**mūr-ĭum**
Dat. **mūr-ī**	**mūr-ĭbŭs**
Abl. **mūr-ĕ**	**mūr-ĭbŭs**

II. (*b*) NEUTER I-SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 34. Substantives with nom. sing. ending in -ĕ drop the -ĕ in the base.

Example: mărĕ (n.), *sea*. Base, măr-.

Singular.		Plural.
N.V.A.	măr-ĕ	măr-ĭa
Gen.	măr-ĭs	not in use
Dat.	măr-ī	măr-ībŭs
Abl.	măr-ī	măr-ībŭs

§ 35. In substantives with nom. sing. ending in -ăl or -ăr a final -ĕ has been dropped and the last vowel of the base (if long) shortened.

First Example: ănĭmăl (n.), *animal*. Base, ănĭmāl-.

Singular.		Plural.
N.V.A.	ănĭmăl	ănĭmāl-ĭă
Gen.	ănĭmāl-ĭs	ănĭmāl-ĭum
Dat.	ănĭmāl-ī	ănĭmāl-ībŭs
Abl.	ănĭmāl-ī	ănĭmāl-ībŭs

Second Example: calcăr (n.), *spur*. Base, calcār-.

Singular.		Plural.
N.V.A.	calcăr	calcār-ĭă
Gen.	calcār-ĭs	calcār-ĭum
Dat.	calcār-ī	calcār-ībŭs
Abl.	calcār-ī	calcār-ībŭs

ŏs (n.), *bone* (base, oss-), has gen. pl. ossĭum, but in other respects is a consonant-substantive.

Singular.		Plural.
N.V.A.	ŏs	oss-ă
Gen.	oss-ĭs	oss-ĭum
Dat.	oss-ī	oss-ībŭs
Abl.	oss-ē	oss-ībŭs

§ 36. On looking out a substantive of the third declension in a vocabulary or dictionary, the student will find (1) the nom. sing.; (2) the gen. sing. (whence, by taking off the suffix **ĭs**, the base may be ascertained); (3) the gender. In order to decline the word fully it is necessary also to know whether it is a consonant-substantive or an **I**-substantive, or (in other words) whether the gen. pl. ends in **-um** or **-ĭum**.

This last point may be decided thus in the case of masculine and feminine words:—

Imparisyllabic substantives (*i.e.* those in which the number of syllables in the nom. sing. and the gen. sing. respectively is unequal) **with base ending in a single consonant are consonant-substantives.** (Gen. pl. **-um**.)

Parisyllabic substantives (*i.e.* those in which the number of syllables in the nom. sing. and gen. sing. respectively is equal), **and substantives with base ending in two consonants, are I-substantives.** (Gen. pl. **-ĭum**.)

These rules are subject to some few exceptions.

(*a*) The following parisyllabic words are consonant-substantives: **ambāgēs** (gen. pl. **ambāgum**), *circumlocution;* **cănĭs** (gen. pl. **cănum**), *dog;* **iŭvĕnĭs** (gen. pl. **iŭvĕnum**), *young man;* **sĕnex** (gen. pl. **sĕnum**), *old man;* **vātēs** (gen. pl. **vātum**), *prophet;* **vŏlŭcrĭs** (gen. pl. **vŏlŭcrum**), *bird* (§ 25); **pătĕr** (gen. pl. **pătrum**), *father;* **mātĕr** (gen. pl. **mātrum**), *mother;* **frātĕr** (gen. pl. **frātrum**), *brother;* **accĭpĭtĕr** (gen. pl. **accĭpĭtrum**), *hawk* (§ 27).

(*b*) The following imparisyllabic words are **I**-substantives: **falx** (gen. pl. **falcĭum**), *sickle;* **faux** (gen. pl. **faucĭum**—in sing. only in use in abl. **faucĕ**), *throat;* **glīs** (gen. pl. **glīrĭum**), *dormouse;* **līs** (gen. pl. **lītĭum**), *dispute;* **mās** (gen. pl. **mărĭum**), *male;* **mūs** (gen. pl. **mūrĭum**), *mouse;* **nix** (gen. pl. **nĭvĭum**), *snow;* **vīs** (gen. pl. **vīrĭum**), *force* (§ 33).

In **-ĭum** terminate **glīs, līs,**
Mās, mūs, and **nix, falx, faux,** and **vīs;**
But **-um** ends **iŭvĕnĭs** and **frātĕr,**
Ambāgēs, vātēs, sĕnex, pătĕr,
With **cănĭs, vŏlŭcrĭs,** and **mātĕr.**

Neuters of the third declension **are I-substantives if the nom. sing. ends in -ĕ, -ăl,** or **-ăr;** other neuters are consonant-substantives.

Exception: **ŏs** (gen. pl. **ossĭum**), *bone* (§ 35).

§ 37. The **locative** case is not distinguishable from the ablative in the third declension, except in a very few forms, and those of the singular number; *e.g.* Karthāgō, *Carthage*, has locative Karthāgĭnī.

§ 38. The following is a synoptic view of the suffixes of substantives of the third declension:—

Singular. I. Consonant-Substantives.		Singular. II. I-Substantives.	
(*a*) Masc. or Fem.	(*b*) Neut.	(*a*) Masc. or Fem.	(*b*) Neut.
N. V. -s or none	none	-ēs, -ĭs, or -s	ĕ- or none
Acc. -em	none	-em (rarely -im)	ĕ- or none
Gen. -ĭs		-ĭs	
Dat. -ī		-ī	
Abl. -ĕ		-ĕ (rarely -ī)	-ī

Plural. I. Consonant-Substantives.		Plural. II. I-Substantives.	
(*a*) Masc. or Fem.	(*b*) Neut.	(*a*) Masc. or Fem.	(*b*) Neut.
N. V. -ēs	-ă	-ēs	-ĭă
Acc. -ēs	-ă	-ēs or -īs	-ĭă
Gen. -um		-ĭum	
Dat. -ĭbŭs		-ĭbŭs	
Abl. -ĭbŭs		-ĭbŭs	

For irregularities in the third declension, see §§ 48-50.

For Greek substantives of the third declension, see §§ 64-68.

For the gender of substantives of this declension, see §§ 73-76.

CHAPTER VII.—FOURTH (OR U) DECLENSION.

§ 39. This declension contains substantives of two classes:—

(1) Masculine (and some feminine) words, with nom. sing. ending in -ŭs;

(2) Neuter words, with nom. sing. ending in -ū.

(1) Example: grădŭs (m.), *step*. Base, grăd-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. grăd-ŭs	grăd-ūs
Acc. grăd-um	grăd-ūs
Gen. grăd-ūs	grăd-ŭum
Dat. grăd-ŭī	grăd-ībŭs
Abl. grăd-ū	grăd-ībŭs

(2) Example: gĕnū (n.), *knee*. Base, gĕn-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V.A. gĕn-ū	gĕn-ŭă
Gen. gĕn-ūs	gĕn-ŭum
Dat. gĕn-ū	gĕn-ībŭs
Abl. gĕn-ū	gĕn-ībŭs

For irregularities in the fourth declension, see §§ 51, 52.

For the gender of substantives of this declension with nom. sing. in -ŭs, see § 77.

CHAPTER VIII.—FIFTH (OR E) DECLENSION.

§ 40. Example: dĭēs (m. or f. in sing., m. in pl.), *day*. Base, dĭ-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. dĭ-ēs	dĭ-ēs
Acc. dĭ-em	dĭ-ēs
Gen. dĭ-ēī	dĭ-ĒRum
Dat. dĭ-ēī	dĭ-ēbus
Abl. dĭ-ē	dĭ-ēbus

The substantives of this declension are all feminine, except dĭēs (§ 78).

NOTE.—The rule is that if the last letter of the base is a consonant, the gen. and dat. sing. end in -ĕī (not -ēī); *e.g.* fĭd-ēs, *faith*, has gen. and dat. sing. fĭd-ĕī.

For irregularities in the fifth declension, see §§ 53, 54.

CHAPTER IX.—IRREGULARITIES IN THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

First Declension (§§ 16-18).

§ 41. **Genitive Singular.** (1) In poetry the old suffix **-āī** is sometimes found instead of the ordinary **-ae**; *e.g.* **ăquă**, *water*, occasionally in poetry has genitive **ăquāī**.

(2) **Fămĭlĭă**, *household*, has gen. sing. **fămĭlĭās** when used in connection with **pătĕr, mātĕr, fīlĭŭs** or **fīlĭă**. Thus, **pătĕr fămĭlĭās** or **păterfămĭlĭās**, *master of the house;* **mātĕr fămĭlĭās** or **māterfămĭlĭās**, *mistress of the house.* (In the plural either **pătrēs fămĭlĭās** or **pătrēs fămĭlĭārum** may be used.)

§ 42. **Genitive Plural.** The suffix **-um** (instead of **-arum**) is found in the following words:—

(1) **Patronymics** (§ 279), *e.g.* **Dardănĭdae**, *descendants of Dardanus*, gen. **Dardănĭdum**;

(2) Some names of nations or tribes, *e.g.* **Lăpĭthae**, *the Lapithae* (a Thessalian tribe), gen. **Lăpĭthum**;

(3) Substantives ending in **-cŏlă** (denoting *dweller in*, cp. **cŏlō**, *I cultivate, inhabit*), or **-gĕnă** (denoting *born in*, cp. **gĕnŭs**, *birth*), *e.g.* **caelĭcŏlae**, *dwellers in heaven*, gen. **caelĭcŏlum**; **terrĭgĕnae**, *earth-born people*, gen. **terrĭgĕnum**;

(4) **amphŏră**, *a jar*, gen. pl. **amphŏrum**; **drachmă** (a Greek silver coin, somewhat smaller than a shilling), gen. pl. **drachmum.**

N.B.—Many of these words have also the regular gen. pl. suffix **-ārum.**

§ 43. **Dative and Ablative Plural.** Some feminine substantives of the first declension which correspond to masculines in **-ŭs** of the second declension have dat. and abl. pl. in **-ābŭs.** In classical Latin this form is found only in **dĕă**, *goddess*, which has dat. and abl. pl. **dĕābŭs**, to avoid confusion with **dĕīs**, one form of the dat. and abl. pl. of **dĕŭs**, *god* (§ 47), and **fīlĭă**, *daughter*, which has dat. and abl. pl. **fīlĭābŭs**, the form **filĭīs** being dat. and abl. pl. of **fīlĭŭs**, *son.*

Second Declension (§§ 19, 20).

§ 44. **Vocative Singular.** Proper names ending in **-ĭŭs** have voc. sing. in **-ī** instead of **-ĭĕ**; *e.g.* **Tullĭŭs**, voc. **Tullī**; **Vergĭlĭŭs**, voc. **Vergĭlī.** So too **fīlĭŭs**, *son*, has voc. sing. **fīlī.** These contracted vocatives are, contrary to the rule in § 6, accentuated on the last syllable but one.

§ 45. **Genitive Singular.** Substantives with nom. sing. ending in **-ĭŭs** often contract **-ĭī** to **-ī** in the gen. sing.; *e.g.* **flŭvĭŭs**, *river*, gen. **flŭvī** or **flŭvĭī**; **ingĕnĭum**, *ability*, gen. **ingĕnī** or **ingĕnĭī**. These contracted genitives are accentuated on the last syllable but one.

§ 46. **Genitive Plural.** The suffix **-um** may be used (as an alternative for **-ōrum**) in the gen. pl. of :—

(1) Substantives denoting coins and measures, *e.g.* **dēnārĭŭs** (a silver coin rather larger than a sixpence), gen. pl. **dēnārĭum**; **mŏdĭŭs**, *peck*, gen. pl. **mŏdĭum**; **nummŭs**, *coin*, gen. pl. **nummum**; also **fābĕr**, *artificer*, has gen. pl. **fabrum**;

(2) Some names of nations or tribes (in poetry), *e.g.* **Rŭtŭlī** (an ancient Italian tribe), gen. **Rŭtŭlum**;

(3) Many other words in poetry, especially **dĕŭs**, *god*, gen. pl. **dĕum**; **dīvŭs**, *deity*, gen. pl. **dīvum**; **vĭr**, *man*, gen. pl. **vĭrum**.

§ 47. **Dĕŭs**, *god*, is thus declined :—

Singular.	Plural.
N. V. **dĕŭs**	**dĕī** or **dī**
Acc. **dĕum**	**dĕōs**
Gen. **dĕī**	**dĕōrum** or (in poetry) **dĕum**
Dat. **dĕō**	**dĕīs, dīīs,** or **dīs**
Abl. **dĕō**	**dĕīs, dīīs,** or **dīs**

Obs. The voc. sing. of **dĕŭs** is the same as the nominative.

Vīrŭs, *venom*, and **vulgŭs**, *populace*, are neuter, and therefore have acc. sing. of the same form as the nom. (**Vulgŭs** is also found masculine, and then has acc. sing. **vulgum**.) These substantives have no plural. For **pĕlăgŭs**, see § 68.

Third Declension (§§ 21-38).

§ 48. The following irregular nouns are in common use :—

Bōs (c.), *ox* or *cow*. **Sūs** (c.), *boar* or *sow*.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. V. **bōs**	**bŏvēs**	*N. V.* **sūs**	**sŭēs**
Acc. **bŏvem**	**bŏvēs**	*Acc.* **sŭem**	**sŭēs**
Gen. **bŏvĭs**	**bŏum**	*Gen.* **sŭĭs**	**sŭum**
Dat. **bŏvī**	**būbŭs** or **bōbŭs**	*Dat.* **sŭī**	**sŭĭbŭs** or **sŭbŭs**
Abl. **bŏvĕ**	**būbŭs** or **bōbŭs**	*Abl.* **sŭĕ**	**sŭĭbŭs** or **sŭbŭs**

Iuppĭtĕr (m.), *Jupiter* (a Roman god). **Iūs iūrandum** [frequently written as one word : **iusiūrandum**] (n.), *oath*. (No plural.)

Singular.	Singular.
N. V. **Iuppĭtĕr**	*N. V.* **iūs iūrandum**
Acc. **Iŏvem**	*Acc.* **iūs iūrandum**
Gen. **Iŏvĭs**	*Gen.* **iūrĭs iūrandī**
Dat. **Iŏvī**	*Dat.* **iūrī iūrandō**
Abl. **Iŏvĕ**	*Abl.* **iūrĕ iūrandō**

Obs. 1. Iuppĭtĕr is made up of the base **Iŏv-** and **pĭtĕr** (= **pătĕr**).

Obs. 2. Each part **iusiūrandum** is declined, viz. **iūs** (base **iūr-**), *obligation*, and **iūrandum** (verbal adj. from **iūrō**, *I swear*), *to be sworn.*

NOTE.—**Aethēr**, *the upper air*, and **āēr**, *air*, have Greek acc. sing. (§ 65) **aethĕrā**, **āĕrā**.

§ 49. The following substantives have nom. sing. differing unusually from the base :—

cārō (f.), *flesh*, gen. sing. **carnĭs**.
cŭcŭmĭs (m.), *cucumber*, gen. sing. **cŭcŭmĕrĭs**.
fēmŭr (n.), *thigh*, gen. sing. **fēmŏrĭs** or **fēmĭnĭs**.
iĕcŭr (n.), *liver*, gen. sing. **iĕcŏrĭs** or **iĕcĭnŏrĭs**.
ĭtĕr (n.), *journey*, gen. sing. **ĭtĭnĕrĭs**.
sĕnex (m.), *old man*, gen. sing. **sĕnĭs**.
sŭpellex (f.), *furniture*, gen. sing. **sŭpellectĭlĭs**.

§ 50. The declension of the following substantives is defective:—

(F.) *Aid* (in sing.), *resources* (in pl.).

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	—	ŏpēs
Acc.	ŏpem	ŏpēs
Gen.	ŏpĭs	ŏpum
Dat.	—	ŏpĭbŭs
Abl.	ŏpĕ	ŏpĭbŭs

(F.) *Prayer.*

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	—	prĕcēs
Acc.	prĕcem	prĕcēs
Gen.	—	prĕcum
Dat.	prĕcī	prĕcĭbŭs
Abl.	prĕcĕ	prĕcĭbŭs

(F.) *Alternation.*

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	—	vĭcēs
Acc.	vĭcem	vĭcēs or vĭcīs
Gen.	vĭcĭs	vĭcĭum
Dat.	—	vĭcĭbŭs
Abl.	vĭcĕ	vĭcĭbŭs

(F.) *Force* (in sing.), *strength* (in pl.).

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	vīs	vīrēs
Acc.	vim	vīrēs or vīrīs
Gen.	—	vīrĭum
Dat.	—	vīrĭbŭs
Abl.	vī	vīrĭbŭs

Nēmō (c.), *no one*, has acc. **nēmĭnem** and dat. **nēmĭnī**. The gen. is supplied by **nullĭŭs**, and the abl. by **nullō** or **nullā** (see § 81).

Nom. sing. **fors** (f.), *chance* ; abl. sing. **fortĕ**.

Abl. sing. **spontĕ** (f.), *choice*.

FOURTH DECLENSION (§ 39).

§ 51. **Dative Singular.** This case is sometimes found ending in **-ū** in substantives not of neuter gender ; *e.g.* **mĕtŭs** (m.), *fear*, has occasionally dative **mĕtū**.

§ 52. **Dative and Ablative Plural.** The following generally have dat. and abl. pl. ending in **-ŭbŭs** instead of **-ĭbŭs**: **ăcŭs**, *needle* ; **arcŭs**, *bow* ; **artŭs**, *limb* ; **lăcŭs**, *lake* ; **partŭs**, *birth* ; **trĭbŭs**, *tribe*.

Rhyme:—Six have **ŭbŭs**: **arcŭs**, **ăcŭs**,
artŭs, **partŭs**, **trĭbŭs**, **lăcŭs**

Fifth Declension (§ 40).

§ 53. **Genitive and Dative Singular.** These cases are sometimes found ending in **-ē**; thus **dĭēs**, *day*, sometimes has gen. and dat. sing. **dĭē** instead of **dĭēī**, and similarly **fĭdēs**, *faith*, has **fĭdē** instead of **fĭdēī**.

§ 54. **Dĭēs**, *day*, and **rēs**, *thing*, are the only substantives of this declension that have gen. dat. and abl. plural.

In **respublĭcă** (f.), *commonwealth*, each part of the word is declined, viz. **rēs**, *thing*, and **publĭcă**, fem. of the adjective **publĭcŭs, -ă, -um**, *public*. The plural is rarely used; the singular (sometimes written as two words) is thus declined :—

N. V. **respublĭcă**
Acc. **rempublĭcam**
Gen. **rēīpublĭcae**
Dat. **rēīpublĭcae**
Abl. **rēpublĭcā**

Heteroclite Substantives (*i.e.* Belonging to Two Declensions).

§ 55. The following have singular and plural of different declensions :—

Singular.	Plural.
balnĕ-um, -ī, -ō (n.), (*private*) *bath*.	**balnĕ-ae, -ās, -ārum, -īs** (f.), *public baths*.
dēlĭcĭ-um, -ī, -ō (n.), *delight*.	**dēlĭcĭ-ae, -ās, -ārum, -īs** (f.), (1) *delight*, (2) *pet*.
ĕpŭl-um, -ī, -ō (n.), *banquet*.	ĕpŭl-ae, -ās, -ārum, -īs (f.).
iūgĕr-um, -ī, -ō (n.), *acre*.	iūgĕr-ă, -um, -ĭbŭs.
vās, vās-ĭs, -ī, -ĕ (n.), *vessel*.	vās-ă, -ōrum, -īs.

§ 56. Some substantives (mostly names of trees) belonging to the second declension have also fourth declension forms; *e.g.* **laurŭs**, *bay*, has in the singular gen. **laurī** or **laurūs**, abl. **laurō** or **laurū**; and in the plural nom. **laurī** or **laurūs**, acc. **laurōs** or **laurūs**. **Sĕnātŭs**, *senate*, belongs to the fourth declension, but sometimes has gen. sing. **sĕnātī**.

Dŏmŭs (f.), *house*, belongs to the fourth declension, but prefers second declension forms in abl. sing. (**dŏmō**), acc. pl. (**dŏmōs**), and gen. pl. (**dŏmōrum**), though even there fourth declension forms are occasionally found. The locative is **dŏmī**.

Rhyme :—**Dŏmō** for ablative we see,
Dŏmōs, dŏmōrum commonly;
Bear locative **dŏmī** in mind;
The rest like **grădŭs** is declined.

Some substantives belong to both first and fifth declensions; *e.g.* **luxŭrĭă** or **luxŭrĭēs**, *luxury*; **mātĕrĭă** or **mātĕrĭēs**, *timber*. **Rĕquĭēs** (f.), *rest*, has third and fifth declension forms, and is thus declined in the singular only, the plural not being in use :—

N. V.	**rĕquĭ-ēs**
Acc.	**rĕquĭ-em** or **rĕquĭēt-em**
Gen.	**rĕquĭēt-ĭs**
Dat.	——
Abl.	**rĕquĭ-ē** or **rĕquĭēt-ē**

Plebs, gen. **plēbĭs** (f.), *common people*, sometimes has nom. sing. **plēbēs** and gen. sing. **plēbēī**.

Vespĕr (m.), *evening*, has in the singular acc. **vespĕrum**, gen. **vespĕrī** or **vespĕrĭs**, abl. **vespĕrĕ** or **vespĕrō**, locative **vespĕrī**; the plural is wanting. There is also a first declension form **vespĕră** (f.), which is fully declined in the singular.

Heterogeneous Substantives (*i.e.* with Plural Differing in Gender from the Singular).

§ 57. The following are the more important words of this class:—

Singular.	Plural.
carbăsŭs, -ī (f.), *linen*.	**carbăsă, -ōrum** (n.), *sails*.
dĭēs, -ēī (f. or m.), *a day, set time*.	
dĭēs, -ēī (m.), *a day* (as a division of time).	**dĭēs, -ērum** (m.), *days*.
frēnum, -ī (n.), *bridle*.	**frēnī, -ōrum** (m.). **frēnă, -ōrum** (n.).
iŏcŭs, -ī (m.), *jest*.	**iŏcī, iŏcōrum** (m.). **iŏcă, iŏcōrum** (n.).
lŏcŭs, -ī (m.), *place*.	**lŏcī, -ōrum** (m.), *places*. **lŏcă, -ōrum** (n.), *region*.
rastrum, -ī (n.), *harrow*.	**rastrī, -ōrum** (m.). **rastră, -ōrum** (n.).

Substantives with Special Meanings in the Plural.

§ 58. The following are the more important :—

Singular.	Plural.
aedēs, -ĭs (f.), *temple*.	**aedēs, ĭum**, *house*.
ăquă, -ae (f.), *water*.	**ăquae, -ārum**, *medicinal springs*.
auxĭlĭum, -ī (n.), *help*.	**auxĭlĭă, -ōrum**, *auxiliaries*.
balnĕŭm, -ī (n.), (*private*) *bath*.	**balnĕae, -ārum** (f.), *public baths*.
bŏnum, -ī (n.), *good*.	**bŏnă, -ōrum**, *goods, property*.
carcĕr, -ĕrĭs (m.), *prison*.	**carcĕrēs, -um**, *starting place* (in racecourse).
Castrum, -ī (n.), *Fort* (in names of places).	**castră, -ōrum**, *camp*.

Singular.	Plural.
cŏmĭtĭum, -ī (n.), *place of assembly.*	**cŏmĭtĭă**, -ōrum, *elective assembly, election.*
cōpĭă, -ae (f.), *plenty.*	**cōpĭae**, -ārum, *supplies* or *troops.*
fīnĭs, -ĭs (m.), *end.*	**fīnēs**, -ĭum, *territory.*
fortūnă, -ae (f.), *fortune.*	**fortūnae**, -ārum, *possessions.*
grātĭă, -ae (f.), *favour.*	**grātĭae**, -ārum, *thanks, the Graces.*
hortŭs, -ī (m.), *(kitchen-) garden.*	**hortī**, -ōrum, *pleasure-grounds.*
impĕdīmentum, -ī (n.), *hindrance.*	**impĕdīmentă**, -ōrum, *baggage.*
littĕră, -ae (f.), *letter* (of the alphabet).	**littĕrae**, -ārum, *letter* (*epistle*) or *literature.*
lūdŭs, -ī (m.), *game* or *school.*	**lūdī**, -ōrum, *public games.*
ŏpĕră, -ae (f.), *work.*	**ŏpĕrae**, -ārum, *workmen.*
ŏpem (acc.), -ĭs (f.), *aid.*	**ŏpēs**, -um, *resources.*
pars, -tĭs (f.), *part.*	**partēs**, -ĭum, *a part* (in a play), *party.*
rostrum, -ī (n.), *beak of a ship.*	**rostră**, -ōrum, *platform in the Forum which was adorned with the beaks of ships.*
sāl, -ĭs (m. or n.), *salt.*	**sălēs**, -um (m.), *witticisms.*
tăbŭlă, -ae (f.), *board, picture.*	**tăbŭlae**, -ārum (f.), *writing-tablets.*
vīs (f.), *force.*	**vīrēs**, -ĭum, *strength.*

Substantives Used in the Plural Only.

§ 59. The following are very common :—

armă, -ōrum (n.), *armour.*
dīvĭtĭae, -ārum (f.), *riches.*
indūtĭae, -ārum (f.), *truce.*
lĭbĕrī, -ōrum (m.), *children.*
mānēs, -ĭum (m.), *spirits of the dead.*
moenĭă, -ĭum (n.), *city walls.*
tĕnĕbrae, -ārum (f.), *darkness.*

Many names of towns are plural in form ; *e.g.* **Ăthēnae**, -ārum (f.), *Athens* ; **Găbĭī**, -ōrum (m.), *Gabii* ; **Sўrācūsae**, -ārum (f.), *Syracuse.* Some proper names are singular or plural, as **Pergămum**, -i (n.), or **Pergămă**, -ōrum (n.), *the citadel of Troy.* So **Tartărŭs**, -ī (m.), or **Tartără** -ōrum (n.), *Tartarus, the infernal regions.*

Indeclinable Substantives.

§ 60. The following are of neuter gender, and are used in the nom. and acc. sing. only :—

fās, *right, the dictates of religion.*
instăr, *resemblance.*
mānĕ, *morning.*
nēfās, *sin.*
nĭhĭl or **nīl**, *nothing.*
părum, *too little.*
sătĭs, *enough.*

Note.—**Nĭhĭlum** or **nīlum**, -ī (n.), *nothing*, is declined throughout the singular.

CHAPTER X.—GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 61. Greek proper names and other Greek substantives, when used in Latin, are sometimes declined like Latin words, but often retain the Greek inflexions.

N.B.—**The Latin forms are given here only where no distinctive Greek form exists,** but are in many other instances in use; *e.g.*, **Aenēās** has accusative **Aenēān** or **Aenēam.**

First Declension.

§ 62. (1) Masculines with nom. sing. ending in **-ās** or **-ēs**;
(2) Feminines „ „ „ **-ā** or **-ē.**

Note.—The plurals of words of this class (if used) have Latin suffixes only.

(1) Examples: **Aenēās** (m.), *Aeneas*; **Tȳdīdēs** (m.), *son of Tȳdēūs* (see § 280).

Singular.		Singular
Nom. **Aenē-ās**		*Nom.* **Tȳdīd-ēs**
Voc. **Aenē-ā**		*Voc.* **Tȳdīd-ē** *
Acc. **Aenē-ān**		*Acc.* **Tȳdīd-ēn**
Gen. **Aenē-ae**		*Gen.* **Tȳdīd-ae**
Dat. **Aenē-ae**		*Dat.* **Tȳdīd-ae**
Abl. **Aenē-ā**		*Abl.* **Tȳdīd-ē**

(2) Examples: **Ēlectrā** (f.), *Electra*; **Phoebē** (f.), *Phoebe.*

Singular.		Singular.
N. V. **Ēlectr-ā**		*N. V.* **Phoeb-ē**
Acc. **Ēlectr-ān**		*Acc.* **Phoeb-ēn**
Gen. **Ēlectr-ae**		*Gen.* **Phoeb-ēs**
Dat. **Ēlectr-ae**		*Dat.* **Phoeb-ae**
Abl. **Ēlectr-ā**		*Abl.* **Phoeb-ē**

Second Declension.

§ 63. (1) Masculines and Feminines with nom. sing. ending in **-ŏs**;
(2) Masculines „ „ „ **-ōs**;
(3) Masculines „ „ „ **-ūs**;
(4) Neuters „ „ „ **-ŏn.**

Examples: (1) **Dēlŏs** (f.), *Delos*;
(2) **Andrŏgĕōs** (m.), *Androgeos*;
(3) **Panthūs** (m.), *Panthus*;
(4) **rhŏdŏdendrŏn** (n.), *rhododendron.*

* The vocative may also end in **-ă** or **-ā.**

	Singular.
Nom.	Dēl-ŏs
Voc.	Dēl-ĕ
Acc.	Dēl-ŏn
Gen.	Dēl-ī
D.Abl.	Dēl-ō

	Singular.
Nom.	Andrŏgĕ-ōs
Voc.	Andrŏgĕ-ōs
Acc.	Andrŏgĕ-ōn or -ō
Gen.	Andrŏgĕ-ō
D.Abl.	Andrŏgĕ-ō

	Singular.
Nom.	Panth-ūs
Voc.	Panth-ū
Acc.	Panth-ūm
Gen.	Panth-ī
D.Abl.	Panth-ō

	Singular.
Nom.	rhŏdŏdendr-ŏn
Voc.	rhŏdŏdendr-ŏn
Acc.	rhŏdŏdendr-ŏn
Gen.	rhŏdŏdendr-ī
D.Abl.	rhŏdŏdendr-ō

Greek plural forms of the second declension occur:—

(1) In the nominative of a few masculine and feminine words; *e.g.* **Ădelphōē**, m. (title of a comedy), "*The Brothers*"; **arctōē** (f.), *bears*;

(2) In the genitive of names of books (neuter); *e.g.* **Gĕorgĭcă** (Vergil's treatise on husbandry) has gen. **Gĕorgĭcōn**: **Gĕorgĭcōn lĭbrī**, *the books of the Georgics.*

Third Declension.

§ 64. (1) Imparisyllabic masculines and feminines with base ending in a consonant, **-ō**, or **-ў**;

(2) Feminines (and a few masculines) with nom. sing. ending in **-ĭs**, in some cases declined both as imparisyllabics and as parisyllabics

(3) Parisyllabic feminines with nom. sing. ending in **-ō**.

§ 65. (1) Examples: **lampăs** (f.), *torch*;
Phăĕthōn (m.), *Phaëthon*;
hērōs (m.), *hero*;
Tēthў́s (f.), *Tethys*.

Singular.	Plural.
N. V. lampă-s	lampăd-ĕs
Acc. lampăd-ă	lampăd-ās
Gen. lampăd-ĕs	lampăd-um
Dat. lampăd-ī	lampăd-ĭbŭs
Abl. lampăd-ĕ	lampăd-ĭbŭs

Singular.
N. V. Phăĕthōn
Acc. Phăĕthont-ă
Gen. Phăĕthont-ĭs
Dat. Phăĕthont-ī
Abl. Phăĕthont-ĕ

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. hērō-s	hērō-ĕs
Voc. hērō-s	hērō-ĕs
Acc. hērō-ă	hērō-ās
Gen. hērō-ĭs	hērō-um
Dat. hērō-ī	hērō-ĭbŭs
Abl. hērō-ĕ	hērō-ĭbŭs

Singular.
Nom. Tēthў́-s
Voc. Tēthў́
Acc. Tēthў́-n
Gen. Tēthў́-ŏs
Dat. Tēthў́-ĭ
Abl. Tēthў́-ĕ

§ 66. (2) Example : **tigrĭs** (c.), *tiger*.

Singular.	Plural
N. V. tĭgr-ĭs	tĭgr-ēs
Acc. tĭgr-im	tĭgr-ēs or tĭgrĭd-ās
Gen. tĭgr-ĭs or tĭgrĭd-ĭs	tĭgr-ĭum
Dat. tĭgr-ī or tīgrĭd-ī	tĭgr-ĭbŭs
Abl. tĭgr-ĕ or tĭgrĭd-ĕ	tĭgr-ĭbŭs

§ 67. (3) Example : **ēchō** (f.), *echo*.

	Singular.
N. V. A.	ēch-ō
Gen.	ēch-ūs
Dat.	ēch-ō
Abl.	ēch-ō

NOTE.—**Dīdō** (f.), *Dido*, is declined as above, and has also **Dīdōn-em, -ĭs, -ī, -ĕ**.

SUBSTANTIVES OF THE GREEK THIRD DECLENSION WITH SOME LATIN SECOND DECLENSION FORMS.

§ 68. (1) Masculine proper names with nom. sing. ending in **-ēs** ;
(2) „ „ „ „ „ „ **-ēūs**;
(3) Neuters with nom. sing. in **-ŏs** (one **-ŭs**).

(1) Example : **Sōcrătēs** (m.), *Socrates*.

Singular.
Nom. Sōcrăt-ēs
Voc. Sōcrăt-ē
Acc. Sōcrăt-ēn
Gen. Sōcrăt-ī or -ĭs
Dat. Sōcrăt-ī
Abl. Sōcrăt-ē

(2) Example : **Ătreus** (m.), *Atreus*.

Singular.
Nom. Ătr-ēūs
Voc. Ătr-ĕu
Acc. Ătr-ĕum or -ĕă
Gen. Ătr-ēī or -ĕŏs
Dat. Ătr-ĕō or -ēī
Abl. Ătr-ĕō

(3) Examples : **mĕlŏs** (n.), *song* ; **pĕlăgŭs** (n.), *sea*.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V. A.	mĕl-ŏs	mĕl-ē
Gen.	mĕl-ī	—
Dat.	mĕl-ō	—
Abl.	mĕl-ō	—

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V. A.	pĕlăg-ŭs	pĕlăg-ē
Gen.	pĕlăg-ī	—
Dat.	pĕlăg-ō	—
Abl.	pĕlăg-ō	—

NOTE.—**Pŏēmă** (n.), *poem*, and other such words, have a dat. abl. plural according to the second declension ; *e.g.* **pŏēmătīs**.

CHAPTER XI.—GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.*

§ **69.** The gender of some Latin substantives is determined by their meaning, that of others by the declension to which they belong and the ending of their nominative singular.

Obs. In the following rules and lists of exceptions it is to be understood that **the gender, if determined by the meaning, is not affected by the form** of the word; *e.g.* gĭgās, *giant*, is masculine, though words of the third declension with nom. sing. ending in **-as** are (according to the rule in § 73) feminine.

RULES FOR ASCERTAINING GENDER BY THE MEANING.

§ **70. Masculine.** Words denoting **persons of the male sex** and most names of **rivers.**

Examples: Sullă (name of a man); pŭĕr, *boy*; Mŏsă, *Meuse*; Tĭbĕrĭs, *Tiber*.

Feminine. Words denoting **persons of the female sex** and most names of **countries, islands, cities,** and **trees** and **plants.**

Examples: ănŭs, *old woman*; Ēpīrŭs (the modern *Albania*); Zăcynthŭs, *Zante*; Cŏrīnthŭs, *Corinth*; quercŭs, *oak*.

† Male are rivers; female these:
Countries, islands, cities, trees.

* Of the rhymes here given, only those in large type are to be learnt at first.

† In the rhymes *male* is for convenience used for *masculine*, *female* for *feminine*, and words of which the gender is sometimes masculine sometimes feminine, are called *common*.

Exc. All plural names of towns in **-ī**
Are masculine, as **Thūrīī**;
So are of plants in **-ĕr** a few
Belonging to declension two.
With ending **-um** (declension second)
Both plants and towns are neuter reckoned.

Substantives which denote persons of either sex are said to be of **common** gender; *e.g.* **incŏlă**, *inhabitant*; **testĭs**, *witness*.

NOTE.—The gender of names of animals is, as a rule, determined by their form, but domestic animals are often personified and become masculine or feminine according to sex; *e.g.* **cănĭs**, *dog* or *bitch*; **bōs**, *bull* or *cow*.

RULES FOR ASCERTAINING GENDER BY THE FORM.

FIRST DECLENSION.

§ **71.** All substantives of this declension are feminine, except (1) those denoting persons of the male sex; *e.g.* **naută**, *sailor*, and family or personal names, *e.g.* **Mūrēnă**, **Scaevŏlă**; and (2) most names of rivers (§ 70).

Classed among the males must be
Hădrĭă, *Adriatic Sea*.

SECOND DECLENSION.

§ **72.** Substantives of this declension are masculine if the nom. sing. ends in **-ŭs** or **-ĕr**, neuter if it ends in **-um**.

Obs. The above rule does not apply to such words as are feminine by meaning. See § 70, and the examples there given.

RULE. Masc. in **-ŭs.** *

Exc. Neuters twain * begin our rhyme:
Vulgŭs, *mob*, and **vīrŭs**, *slime*;
Vulgŭs—neuter commonly—
Sometimes masculine may be.

Feminine in **-ŭs** are found
Alvŭs, *paunch*, and **hŭmŭs**, *ground*;

Also **arctŏs**,† **carbăsŭs**, *Constellation of the Bear, linen,*
Cŏlŭs, **vannŭs**, **pampĭnŭs**. *Distaff, winnowing-fan, vine-leaf.*

* For **pĕlăgŭs**, see § 68.

† Greek form; see § 63.

Third Declension.

§ 73. The gender of substantives of this declension is determined according to the ending of the nom. sing. as follows:—

Masculine: Words ending in **-er, -o, -or, -os**; also imparisyllabic words in **-es.**

Feminine: Words ending in **-as, -aus, -is, -x**; **-s** following another consonant; also parisyllabic words in **-es.**

Neuter: Words ending in **-ar, -ur, -us; -l, -a, -n, -c, -e, -t**

Obs. In this as in other declensions the form does not affect a word's gender when the latter is determined by the meaning; *e.g.* **fūr**, *thief*, is masculine, notwithstanding the rule that words ending in **-ur** are neuter.

Rhyme.—The genders of declension three
From each word's ending we may see:
-er, -o, -or, -os are masculine;
-as, -aus, -is, -x are feminine,
-s also after a consonant,
and **-es** that has no increment;
-es otherwise is masculine.
Of neuter endings there are nine:
Note **-ar**, and **-ur**, and **-us**; the rest
By **lancet** are remembered best.

Exceptions.

The exceptions to the above rules are somewhat numerous; they are here arranged in three classes:—

A. Feminine and Neuter Substantives with endings usually characteristic of Masculine Substantives;

B. Masculine and Neuter Substantives with endings usually characteristic of Feminine Substantives;

C. Masculine and Feminine Substantives with endings usually characteristic of Neuter Substantives.

§ 74. A. *Feminine and Neuter Substantives with Masculine Endings.*

RULE. Masc. in **-er.** *Exc.* Feminine is **lintĕr**, *boat*;
Learn these neuters nine by **rote**:
Ītĕr, *journey*, **vēr**, *the spring*,
Verbĕr, *lash*—unpleasant thing!

Sūbĕr, **pĭpĕr**, and **cădāvĕr**, *Cork, pepper, corpse.*
Ăcĕr, **ūbĕr**, and **păpāvĕr**. *Maple, fertility, poppy.*

Masc. in **-o.** *Exc.* Female are words in **-do** and **-go**,
Though **cardō**, *hinge*, and **ordō**, *row*,
Are masculine, with **lĭgō**, *hoe*.
Margō is common. Female call *Border.*
The abstract * nouns in **-ĭō** all.
To **ēchō** give the female gender, *Echo.*
The same to **cărō** (**carnĭs**) render. *Flesh.*

Masc. in **-or.** *Exc.* A feminine is **arbŏr**, *tree*;
As neuter substantives we see
Cŏr (**cordĭs**), *heart*; and **ădŏr**, *grain*;
With **marmŏr**, *marble*; **aequŏr**, *main.*

Masc. in **-os.** *Exc.* Call feminine the *whetstone* **cōs**,
Likewise the woman's *dowry* **dōs**;
Of Latin substantives alone
These neuter are: **ŏs** (**ossĭs**), *bone*,
And eke **ōs** (**ōrĭs**), *mouth*; a few
Greek nouns in **-ŏs** are neuter too.

Masc. imparisyllabic in **-es.** *Exc.* **Aes** (**aerĭs**), *bronze*, has increment,
Yet with the neuter nouns it went.
And **quiēs**, *rest*, with **mercēs**, *pay*,
Are classed as feminine alway;

So also five more—**mergĕs**, **sĕgĕs**, *Sheaf, cornfield.*
With **compēs**, **rēquiēs**, and **tĕgĕs**. *Fetter, repose, mat.*

* An abstract noun is properly the name of a quality, attribute, or circumstance of a thing; often it is transferred to denote a thing with which that quality, etc., is in some way associated; *e.g.* **stătĭō**, *a standing*, commonly means *a standing-place, station.*

§ 75. B. *Masculine and Neuter Substantives with Feminine Endings.*

RULE. Fem. in -as. *Exc.* Ās, *copper coin*, is known as male,
Vās (vădĭs), too, who offers bail; *Surety.*
Vās (vāsĭs), neuter, means a *pail.* *Vessel.*

Fem. in -is. *Exc.* Here such nouns in -is as be
Masculine set forth you see:
Amnĭs, lăpĭs, both from collĭs *Stream, stone, hill.*
Falling; ignĭs blown by follĭs; *Fire, bellows.*
Sanguĭs, *blood*, and *sword-blade* ensĭs;
Orbĭs too, wherein each mensĭs *Circuit, month.*
Year by year recurs; and crīnĭs,
Hair, is male, and (mostly) fīnĭs; *End.*
He who pānĭs, piscĭs spurneth *Bread, fish.*
Soon to cĭnĭs, pulvĭs turneth. *Ash, dust.*

Rarer fascĭs, sentĭs, callĭs, *Fagot, bramble, rough path.*
Axĭs, postĭs, and nātālĭs, *Axle-tree, door-post, birthday.*
Vectĭs, fustĭs, and cănālĭs, *Crow-bar, cudgel, channel.*
Torrĭs, caulĭs, cŭcŭmĭs, *Firebrand, cabbage, cucumber.*
Unguĭs, fūnĭs, vermĭs, glīs. *Finger-* or *toe-nail, rope, worm, dormouse.*

Fem. in -x. *Exc.* Masculine are found in -x,
Ăpex, vertex, shepherd's grex, *Summit, eddy, flock.*

Călix, cortex, thōrax, frŭtex, *Cup, bark of tree, breastplate, shrub.*
Pollex, pūmex, sīlex, cōdex. *Thumb, pumice-stone, flint, book.*

Fem. in -s following another consonant. *Exc.* As masculine count mons, *a mount*;
With pons, *a bridge*, and fons, *a fount*;
So dens, *a tooth*, and bĭdens, *hoe*;
But bĭdens, *sheep*, for female know.
Male, too, are trĭdens, occĭdens, *Trident.*
The *West*, and dawning ŏrĭens, *East.*

With chălybs, hydrops, torrens, rŭdens, *Steel, dropsy, torrent, [rope.*
And gryps and fractions such as trĭens. *Griffin, one-third* of an *as* or other unit.

Fem. parisyllabic in -ēs. *Exc.* Masculine is found in -es
Scimitar ăcīnăcēs.

§ 76. C. *Masculine and Feminine Substantives with Neuter Endings.*

RULE. Neut. in **-ur.** *Exc.* These are masculine in **-ur**:
Vultŭr, turtŭr, and **furfŭr.** *Vulture, turtle-dove, bran.*

Neut. in **-us.** *Exc.* A group of well-known nouns in **-ūs**
Are female: *slavery*, servĭtūs,
And virtūs, *valour*; *safety*, sălūs,
With tellūs, *earth*, and swampy pălūs, *Marsh.*
Iŭventūs, *youth*, sĕnectūs, *eld*
(Throughout these nouns **u** long is held);
So incūs, *anvil*; short **u** keep
In pĕcŭs (pĕcŭdĭs), *a sheep.*
With feminines count long-necked grūs, *Crane.*
But lĕpŭs, *hare*, is male; and mūs,
The mouse, is common; so is sūs. *Pig.*

Neut. n **-l.** *Exc.* Of males in **-l** take note of one
Besides sāl, *salt*: that's sōl, *the sun.*

Neut. in **-n.** *Exc.* Two males in **-n** are **pectĕn**, *comb*,
And **delphīn** in his ocean home. *Dolphin.*

FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 77. Substantives of this declension are masculine if the nom. sing. ends in **-ŭs**, neuter if it ends in **-ū**. (Some in **-ŭs** are feminine in accordance with § 70).

RULE. Masc. in **-ŭs.** *Exc.* Feminine are found in **-ŭs**,
Ăcŭs, *needle*, portĭcŭs, *Portico.*
Mănŭs, *hand*, and dŏmŭs, *home*,
Trībŭs, civil *tribe* at Rome,
Īdūs * (plural word), *the Ides*—
Day on which the month divides.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 78. All words of this declension are feminine, except dĭēs, *day*, and mĕrīdĭēs, *mid-day*, both masculine.

NOTE.—**Dĭēs** is sometimes feminine in the singular, especially when meaning *an appointed day* or *lapse of time*. In the plural **dĭēs** is always masculine.

* **Īdūs** was the name given to the 13th day of some months, to the 15th of others. See *Appendix on the Roman Calendar*, p. 291.

CHAPTER XII.—DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 79. The form of a Latin adjective varies in accordance with the gender, number, and case of the substantive to which it refers, either as attribute or predicate. Thus: we may write tĭmĭdŭs naută, *a timid sailor*, or naută est tĭmĭdŭs, *the sailor is timid;* but if we wish to express in Latin *a timid girl* or *the girl is timid*, tĭmĭdŭs, the masculine form of the adjective, is inadmissible, and we must write tĭmĭdă pŭellă, pŭellă est tĭmĭdă, because the feminine substantive pŭellă requires a feminine form of the adjective. The same holds good with regard to number and case: we say tĭmĭdī nautae, *timid sailors*, tĭmĭdē naută (vocative), *timid sailor!* in each instance changing the suffix of the adjective in accordance with the gender, number, and case of the substantive to which it is applied.

Accordingly, in the declension of an adjective, the form which it assumes in each of the three genders must be given for each case singular and plural.

Adjectives are divided, according to the form of their declension, into two classes:—

I. Adjectives with masculine and neuter like the second declension of substantives, and feminine like the first declension of substantives;

II. Adjectives declined in all genders like the third declension of substantives.

In the declension of adjectives, as in that of substantives, the various **endings are added to the base**; the latter must, therefore, be ascertained before an adjective can be declined.

The base is ascertained by taking away the case-ending of the genitive singular masculine; this is

for adjectives of the first class -ī (-ĭŭs for those in § 81);
„ „ „ second „ -ĭs.

The base of adjectives of the first class with nom. sing. masc. ending in -ŭs may be seen at once on dropping the -ŭs.

I. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST CLASS.

§ 80. This class consists of adjectives with nominative singular ending in the masculine in **-ŭs** or **-ĕr**, in the feminine in **-ă**, and in the neuter in **-um**.

They are declined as follows :—

Masculine : in **-ŭs**, like dŏmĭnŭs, § 19, 1 ; in **-ĕr**, like măgistĕr, § 19, 2 ; with a few retaining **e** before **r** throughout, like pŭĕr, § 19, 2, *Obs.*

Feminine : like mensă, § 16.

Neuter : like regnum, § 19, 3.

Examples : bŏnŭs, bŏnă, bŏnum, *good.* Base, **bŏn-**.
nĭgĕr, nĭgră, nĭgrum, *black.* Base, **nĭgr-**.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	bŏn-ŭs	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Voc.	bŏn-ĕ	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Acc.	bŏn-um	bŏn-am	bŏn-um	bŏn-ōs	bŏn-ās	bŏn-ă
Gen.	bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ī	bŏn-ōrum	bŏn-ārum	bŏn-ōrum
Dat.	bŏn-ō	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ō	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs
Abl.	bŏn-ō	bŏn-ā	bŏn-ō	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs

Obs. In committing the above table to memory, the learner should repeat the form for each of the three genders in the nom. sing., then the three forms for the voc. sing., and so on for each case in the singular, and afterwards similarly for each case in the plural.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.V.	nĭgĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ă
Acc.	nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ă
Gen.	nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
Dat.	nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
Abl.	nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs

NOTE.—Some few adjectives of this class with nom. sing. masc. in **-ĕr** retain **e** before **r** in the base.

Example : tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrum, *tender.* Base, tĕnĕr-.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.V.	tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ă
Acc.	tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-am	tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-ōs	tĕnĕr-ās	tĕnĕr-ă
Gen.	tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ōrum	tĕnĕr-ārum	tĕnĕr-ōrum
Dat.	tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs
Abl.	tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ā	tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs

Like **tĕnĕr**, the following retain **e** before **r** throughout.

(1) Adjectives ending in **-fer**, denoting *bearing* (cp. **fĕrō**, *I bear*), or **-gĕr**, denoting *carrying* (cp. **gĕrō**, *I carry*); *e.g.* **frūgĭfĕr, frūgĭfĕră, frūgĭfĕrum**, *fruit-bearing*; **armĭgĕr, armĭgĕră, armĭgĕrum**, *carrying armour*.

(2) **aspĕr, aspĕră, aspĕrum**, *rough*. **lĭbĕr, lĭbĕră, lĭbĕrum**, *free*.
lăcĕr, lăcĕră, lăcĕrum, *torn*. **mĭsĕr, mĭsĕră, mĭsĕrum**, *wretched*.
prospĕr, prospĕră, prospĕrum, *favourable*.

Dextĕr, *right, on the right hand*, sometimes retains and sometimes drops the **ĕ**, making fem. **dextĕră** or **dextrā**, etc.

Like **tĕnĕr** is declined **sătŭr, sătŭră, sătŭrum**, *sated*.

Rhyme:—**Prospĕr** and compound words in **-fĕr**
Retain the **e**; so those in **-gĕr**;
Add **aspĕr**, *rough*, and **lăcĕr**, *torn*,
With **lĭbĕr**, *free*, and **mĭsĕr**, *lorn*.

§ 81. The following nine adjectives of the first class have genitive singular of all genders ending in **-ĭŭs** (sometimes **-ĭŭs**), and dative singular of all genders ending in **-ī.**

Sōlŭs, sōlă, sōlum, *alone*.
Tōtŭs, tōtă, tōtum, *whole*.
Ūnŭs, ūnă, ūnum, *one*.

Ullŭs, ullă, ullum, *any* (after a negative).
Nullŭs, nullă, nullum, *no, none*.

Ŭter, ŭtră, ŭtrum, *which (of the two)?*
Neutĕr, neutră, neutrum, *neither*.

Altĕr, altĕră, altĕrum, *the one (of two), the other (of two)*.
Ălĭŭs, ălĭă, ălĭŭd, *one (of several), another (of several)*.

Example: **nullŭs, nullă, nullum**, *no, none*. Base, **null-**.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	null-ŭs	null-ă	null-um	null-ī	null ae	null-ă
Acc.	null-um	null-am	null-um	null-ōs	null-ās	null-ă
Gen.	null-ĭŭs	null-ĭŭs	null-ĭŭs	null-ōrum	null-ārum	null-ōrum
Dat.	null-ī	null-ī	null-ī	null-īs	null-īs	null-īs
Abl.	null-ō	null-ā	null-ō	null-īs	null-īs	null-īs

Obs. Ălĭŭs has nom. and acc. sing. neut. ălĭŭd, and gen. sing. ălīŭs; the latter is rarely found, altĕrĭŭs being generally used instead. (The dative singular is ălĭī.)

NOTE 1.—The quantity of **-i** in the gen. sing. ending is, as a rule, long, except in altĕrĭŭs, gen. sing. of altĕr.

NOTE 2.—**Ŭtĕr** has the following compounds, in which the second part is indeclinable, while the former part is declined just as when not compounded :—

Ŭtercumquĕ, utrăcumquĕ, utrumcumquĕ, *whichever (of the two).*
Ŭterlĭbĕt, utrălĭbĕt, utrumlĭbĕt, *which (of the two) you please.*
Ŭterquĕ, utrăquĕ, utrumquĕ, *each (of the two).*
Ŭtervīs, utrăvīs, utrumvīs, *which (of the two) you will.*

Obs. **Lĭbĕt** is an impersonal verb denoting *it pleases* (§ 233); **vīs** means *thou wilt*, and is 2nd person sing. of **vŏlō**, *I will* (§ 211).

In the compound **altĕrŭtĕr**, *the one or the other (of the two)*, the latter member only is, as a rule, declined ; thus the nom. sing. fem. is **altĕrŭtră**, and the dat. sing. for all genders is **altĕrŭtrī**.

§ 82. Some few adjectives of the first class that denote number or quantity have a **locative** case formed by adding **-ī** to the base; *e.g.* ūnī, from ūnŭs, *one;* tantī, from tantŭs, *so great;* parvī, from parvŭs, *small.* The use of these locatives is explained in the Syntax.

§ 83. EXAMPLES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST CLASS DECLINED TOGETHER WITH SUBSTANTIVES.

Lātŭs ăgĕr, *wide field.*

Ăgĕr (m.), like măgistĕr, § 19, 2; lāt-ŭs, **-ă, -um,** like bŏnŭs, § 80.

	Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	lātŭs	ăgĕr	lātī	ăgrī
Voc.	lātĕ	ăgĕr	lātī	ăgrī
Acc.	lātum	ăgrum	lātōs	ăgrōs
Gen.	lātī	ăgrī	lātōrum	ăgrōrum
Dat.	lātō	ăgrō	lātīs	ăgrīs
Abl.	lātō	ăgrō	lātīs	ăgrīs

Magnă rēs, *great matter.*

Rēs (f.), like dĭēs, § 40; magn-ŭs, -ă, -um, like bŏnŭs, § 80.

	Singular.		Plural.	
N.V.	magnă	rēs	magnae	rēs
Acc.	magnam	rem	magnās	rēs
Gen.	magnae	rĕī	magnārum	rērum
Dat.	magnae	rĕī	magnīs	rēbŭs
Abl.	magnā	rē	magnīs	rēbŭs

Curvum lītŭs, *winding shore.*

Lītŭs (n.), base, lītŏr-, like corpŭs, § 30; curv-ŭs, -ă, -um, like bŏnŭs, § 80.

	Singular.		Plural.	
N.V.A.	curvum	lītŭs	curvă	lītŏră
Gen.	curvī	lītŏrĭs	curvōrum	lītŏrum
Dat.	curvō	lītŏrī	curvīs	lītŏrĭbŭs
Abl.	curvō	lītŏrĕ	curvīs	lītŏrĭbŭs

Impĭgĕr naută, *active seaman.*

Naută (m.), like mensă, § 16; impĭgĕr, impĭgră, impĭgrum, like nĭgĕr, § 80.

	Singular.		Plural.	
N.V.	impĭgĕr	naută	impĭgrī	nautae
Acc.	impĭgrum	nautam	impĭgrōs	nautās
Gen.	impĭgrī	nautae	impĭgrōrum	nautārum
Dat.	impĭgrō	nautae	impĭgrīs	nautīs
Abl.	impĭgrō	nautā	impĭgrīs	nautīs

Tōtă nox, *whole night.*

Nox (f.), base, noct-, like urbs, § 33; tōt-ŭs, -ă, -um, like nullŭs, § 81.

	Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	tōtă	nox	tōtae	noctēs
Acc.	tōtam	noctem	tōtās	noctēs or noctīs
Gen.	tōtĭŭs	noctĭs	tōtārum	noctĭum
Dat.	tōtī	noctī	tōtīs	noctĭbŭs
Abl.	tōtā	noctĕ	tōtīs	noctĭbŭs

II. ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS.

§ 84. Adjectives of this class fall into two main divisions:—

(1) Adjectives with genitive plural in **-um**, declined like consonant-substantives of the third declension;

(2) Adjectives with genitive plural in **-ĭum**, declined like I-substantives of the third declension.

Obs. Whenever in the following tables one form only is given for any case, it is to be understood to serve for all genders alike.

(1) Adjectives Declined like Consonant-Substantives.

§ 85. The following are declined like consonant-substantives of the third declension :—

(*a*) Adjectives of the comparative degree;

(*b*) Adjectives having in the nom. sing. one form for all genders alike, and with base ending in a short syllable.

Examples: (*a*) **longĭŏr, longĭŭs**, *longer* (comparative of longŭs, longă, longum, *long*, see § 89). Base, **longĭōr-**.

(*b*) **paupĕr**, *poor*. Base, **paupĕr-**.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	longĭŏr	longĭŭs	longĭōr-ēs	longĭōr-ă
Acc.	longĭōr-em	longĭŭs	longĭōr-ēs	longĭōr-ă
Gen.	longĭōr-ĭs		longĭōr-um	
Dat.	longĭōr-ī		longĭōr-ĭbŭs	
Abl.	longĭōr-ĕ		longĭōr-ĭbŭs	

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N
N.V.	paupĕr		paupĕr-ēs	none
Acc.	paupĕr-em	paupĕr	paupĕr-ēs	none
Gen.	paupĕr-ĭs		paupĕr-um	
Dat.	paupĕr-ī		paupĕr-ĭbŭs	
Abl.	paupĕr-ĕ		paupĕr-ĭbŭs	

NOTE 1.—The following adjectives of this class have abl. sing. ending in **-ī** :—

mĕmŏr	*mindful*	abl. sing.	**mĕmŏrī**
immĕmŏr	*unmindful*	„	**immĕmŏrī**
dēgĕnĕr	*degenerate*	„	**dēgĕnĕrī**
ĭnops	*helpless*	„	**ĭnŏpī**

NOTE 2.—Like the comparatives is declined **vĕtŭs**, *old* (base, **vĕtĕr-**), except that it has **vĕtŭs** for all genders of nom. and voc. sing. and for acc. sing. neut.

NOTE 3.—**Ālĕs**, *winged* (also used as a substantive of common gender denoting *bird*), base **ālĭt-**, has in poetry a lengthened genitive plural **ālĭtŭum**.

(2) ADJECTIVES DECLINED LIKE I-SUBSTANTIVES.

§ **86.** This division consists of :—

(*a*) Adjectives which have three forms in the nom. sing., one for each gender;

(*b*) Adjectives which have two forms in the nom. sing., one for the masculine and feminine, the other for the neuter;

(*c*) Adjectives having in the nom. sing. one form which serves for all genders alike, and with base ending in a long syllable.

Under this last heading all present participles (§ 125) are included; in poetry the genitive plural frequently ends in -um instead of -ĭum.

Examples: (*a*) **ācĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ**, *sharp*. Base, **ācr-**.
(*b*) **tristĭs, tristĕ**, *sad*. „ **trist-**.
(*c*) **fēlix**, *fortunate*. „ **fēlīc-**.
prūdens, *discreet*. „ **prūdent-**.

	Singular.			Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	**ācĕr**	**ācr-ĭs**	**ācr-ĕ**	**ācr-ēs**	**ācr-ĭă**
Acc.	**ācr-em**	**ācr-em**	**ācr-ĕ**	**ācr-ēs** or **-ĭs**	**ācr-ĭă**
Gen.		**ācr-ĭs**		**ācr-ĭum**	
Dat.		**ācr-ī**		**ācr-ĭbŭs**	
Abl.		**ācr-ī**		**ācr-ĭbŭs**	

NOTE 1.—**Cĕlĕr, cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ**, *swift*, alone retains the **e** before **r** throughout; it has genitive plural **cĕlĕrum**.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	trist-ĭs	trist-ĕ	trist-ēs	trist-ĭă
Acc.	trist-em	trist-ĕ	trist-ēs or -īs	trist-ĭă
Gen.	trist-ĭs		trist-ĭum	
Dat.	trist-ī		trist-ĭbŭs	
Abl.	trist-ī		trist-ĭbŭs	

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V	fēlix		fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ĭă
Acc.	fēlīc-em	fēlīx	fēlīc-ēs or -īs	fēlīc-ĭă
Gen.	fēlīc-ĭs		fēlīc-ĭum	
Dat.	fēlīc-ī		fēlīc-ĭbŭs	
Abl.	fēlīc-ī or -ĕ		fēlīc-ĭbŭs	

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	prūdens		prūdent-ēs	prūdent-ĭă
Acc.	prūdent-em	prūdens	prūdent-ēs or -īs	prūdent-ĭă
Gen.	prūdent-ĭs		prūdent-ĭum	
Dat.	prūdent-ī		prūdent-ĭbŭs	
Abl.	prūdent-ī or -ĕ		prūdent-ĭbŭs	

NOTE 2.—The following, though they have one form for all genders in the nom. sing., and have a base ending in a short syllable (see § 85, *b*), are declined like I-substantives, *i.e.* have abl. sing. in **-ī**, nom. and acc. pl. neut. in **-ĭă**, and gen. pl. in **-ĭum** :—

	păr	*equal*	Base, **păr-**
	hĕbĕs	*blunt*	„ **hĕbĕt-**
	tĕrĕs	*rounded*	„ **tĕrĕt-**
	anceps	*wavering*	„ **ancĭpĭt-**
	praeceps	*headlong*	„ **praecĭpĭt-**
with	**simplex**	*simple*	„ **simplĭc-**

and other adjectives ending in **-plex** (§ 106).

Obs. Note that whereas the ablative singular of certain I-substantives only (see § 32) ends in **-ī**, the ablative singular of all adjectives with genitive plural in **-ĭum** may end in **-ī**, and that an alternative form in **-ĕ** is found only in those adjectives whose nom. sing. neut. does not end in **-ĕ**.

§ 87. Examples of Adjectives of the Second Class Declined together with Substantives.

Dīvĕs ĕrŭs, *rich master.*

Ĕrŭs (m.), like dŏmĭnŭs, § 19, 1; dīvĕs (base, dīvĭt-), like paupĕr, § 85.

	Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	dīvĕs	ĕrŭs	dīvĭtēs	ĕrī
Voc.	dīvĕs	ĕrĕ	dīvĭtēs	ĕrī
Acc.	dīvĭtem	ĕrum	dīvĭtēs	ĕrōs
Gen.	dīvĭtĭs	ĕrī	dīvĭtum	ĕrōrum
Dat.	dīvĭtī	ĕrō	dīvĭtĭbŭs	ĕrīs
Abl.	dīvĭtĕ	ĕrō	dīvĭtĭbŭs	ĕrīs

Cĕlĕrĭs săgittă, *swift arrow.*

Săgittă (f.), like mensă, § 16; cĕlĕr, cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ, like ācĕr, § 86, but retaining e before r throughout.

	Singular.		Plural.	
N.V.	cĕlĕrĭs	săgittă	cĕlĕrēs	săgittae
Acc.	cĕlĕrem	săgittam	cĕlĕrēs (or cĕlĕrīs)	săgittās
Gen.	cĕlĕrĭs	săgittae	cĕlĕrum	săgittārum
Dat.	cĕlĕrī	săgittae	cĕlĕrĭbŭs	săgittīs
Abl.	cĕlĕrī	săgittă	cĕlĕrĭbŭs	săgittīs

Brĕvĭs sermō, *short discourse.*

Sermō (m.), base sermōn-, like lĕō, § 26; brĕv-ĭs, -ĕ, like tristĭs, § 86.

	Singular.		Plural.	
N.V.	brĕvĭs	sermō	brĕvēs	sermōnēs
Acc.	brĕvem	sermōnem	brĕvēs (or brĕvīs)	sermōnēs
Gen.	brĕvĭs	sermōnĭs	brĕvĭum	sermōnum
Dat.	brĕvī	sermōnī	brĕvĭbŭs	sermōnĭbŭs
Abl.	brĕvī	sermōnĕ	brĕvĭbŭs	sermōnĭbŭs

Grăvĕ ŏnŭs, *heavy burden.*

Ŏnŭs (n.), base **ŏnĕr-**, like **ŏpŭs**, § 30; **grăv-ĭs, -ĕ**, like **tristĭs**, § 86.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.A.	grăvĕ ŏnŭs	grăvĭă ŏnĕră
Gen.	grăvĭs ŏnĕrĭs	grăvĭum ŏnĕrum
Dat.	grăvī ŏnĕrī	grăvĭbŭs ŏnĕrĭbŭs
Abl.	grăvī ŏnĕrĕ	grăvĭbŭs ŏnĕrĭbŭs

Audax cīvĭs, *daring citizen.*

Cīvĭs (c.), base **cīv-**, like **hostĭs**, § 31; audax, base **audāc-**, like **fēlix**, § 86.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.	audax cīvĭs	audācēs cīvēs
Acc.	audācem cīvem	audācēs (or -īs) cīvēs (or -īs)
Gen.	audācĭs cīvĭs	audācĭum cīvĭum
Dat.	audācī cīvī	audācĭbŭs cīvĭbŭs
Abl.	audācī (or audācĕ) cīvĕ	audācĭbŭs cīvĭbŭs

Ingens spĕcŭs, *enormous cavern.*

Spĕcŭs (m.), like **grădŭs**, § 39; ingens, base **ingent-**, like **prūdens**, § 86.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.	ingens spĕcŭs	ingentēs spĕcūs
Acc.	ingentem spĕcum	ingentēs (or ingentīs) spĕcūs
Gen.	ingentĭs spĕcūs	ingentĭum spĕcŭum
Dat.	ingentī spĕcŭī	ingentĭbŭs spĕcĭbŭs
Abl.	ingentī (or -ĕ) spĕcū	ingentĭbŭs spĕcĭbŭs

INDECLINABLE ADJECTIVES.

§ 88. These are **frūgī**, *of worth* (properly dative singular of **frux**, *fruit*), **nēquam**, *worthless*, **sătĭs**, *sufficient*; also many numeral adjectives (§ 101), and **tŏt**, *so many*, **quŏt**, *how many?* or *as many as*, with their compounds (§ 118).

CHAPTER XIII.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 89. Adjectives have (where their meaning admits of it) in Latin, as in English, three Degrees of Comparison—Positive, Comparative, and Superlative. These degrees are generally in Latin, as often in English, denoted by means of suffixes: *e.g.* longŭs, *long;* longĭŏr, *longer;* longissĭmŭs, *longest.*

There is, however, this difference between the two languages in the use of the Degrees of Comparison, that whereas in English a standard of comparison is always expressed or distinctly understood (*e.g.* "longer than this," "longest of all"), in Latin the comparative may denote that the quality exists to a considerable or to an excessive degree, the superlative that it exists to a high degree; thus longĭŏr sometimes means *somewhat long* or *too long*, and longissĭmŭs often denotes *very long.*

General Rule for the Formation of the Comparative and Superlative.

§ 90. To the base of the Positive add—

-ĭŏr to form the nom. sing. masc. of the Comparative;
-issĭmŭs „ „ „ „ Superlative.

All comparative adjectives are declined like longĭŏr (§ 85), and all superlatives like bŏnŭs (§ 80).

Examples.

Positive. (Nom. Sing. Masc.)		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
longŭs	*long*	long-	long-ĭŏr	long-issĭmŭs
tristĭs	*sad*	trist-	trist-ĭŏr	trist-issĭmŭs
fēlix	*fortunate*	fēlīc-	fēlīc-ĭŏr	fēlīc-issĭmŭs
prūdens	*discreet*	prūdent-	prūdent-ĭŏr	prūdent-issĭmŭs

Classes of Exceptions to the above Rule.

§ **91.** I. The Superlative of adjectives with nom. sing. masc. ending in **-ĕr** is formed by adding **-rĭmŭs** to the nom. sing. masc. (The Comparative is formed by adding **-ĭŏr** *to the base* according to the rule.)

Examples.

Positive. (Nom. Sing. Masc.)		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
pulchĕr	*beautiful*	pulchr-	pulchr-ĭŏr	pulcher-rĭmŭs
tĕnĕr	*tender*	tĕnĕr-	tĕnĕr-ĭŏr	tĕner-rĭmŭs
paupĕr	*poor*	paupĕr-	paupĕr-ĭŏr	pauper-rĭmŭs
ācĕr	*sharp*	ācr-	ācr-ĭŏr	ācer-rĭmŭs
cĕlĕr	*swift*	cĕlĕr-	cĕlĕr-ĭŏr	cĕler-rĭmŭs
Note also—				
vĕtŭs	*old*	vĕtĕr-	(vĕtust-ĭŏr)	vĕter-rĭmŭs

§ **92.** II. Adjectives ending in **-dĭcŭs, -fĭcŭs,** and **-vŏlŭs** form their Comparative and Superlative as if their Positive ended in **-dīcens** (base, **dīcent-**; cp. dīcō, *I say*), **-fĭcens** (base, **fĭcent-**; cp. făcĭō, *I make*), **-vŏlens** (base, **vŏlent-**; cp. vŏlō, *I will*).

Examples.

Positive.	Base from which Comp. and Superl. are formed.	Comparative.	Superlative.
mălĕdĭcŭs *slanderous*	mălĕdīcent-	mălĕdīcent-ĭŏr	mălĕdīcent-issĭmŭs
magnĭfĭcŭs *magnificent*	magnĭfĭcent-	magnĭfĭcent-ĭŏr	magnĭfĭcent-issĭmŭs
bĕnĕvŏlŭs *benevolent*	bĕnĕvŏlent-	bĕnĕvŏlent-ĭŏr	bĕnĕvŏlent-issĭmŭs
Note also—			
ĕgēnŭs *needy*	ĕgent-	ĕgent-ĭŏr	ĕgent-issĭmŭs
prōvĭdŭs *foreseeing*	prōvident-	prōvident-ĭŏr	prōvident-issĭmŭs

§ 93. III. Adjectives with base ending in a vowel (other than **u** in the combination **gu** or **qu**) have no special forms for the Comparative or Superlative; the Comparative is expressed by **măgĭs** and the Superlative by **maxĭmē** preceding the positive.

EXAMPLES.

Positive.		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
pĭŭs	*dutiful*	**pĭ-**	**măgĭs pĭŭs**	**maxĭmē pĭŭs**
arduŭs	*lofty*	**ardŭ-**	**măgĭs ardŭŭs**	**maxĭmē ardŭŭs**
But—				
pinguĭs	*fat*	**pingu-**	**pingu-ĭŏr**	**pingu-issĭmŭs**
antīquŭs	*ancient*	**antīqu-**	**antīqu-ĭŏr**	**antīqu-issĭmŭs**

ADJECTIVES IRREGULARLY COMPARED.

§ 94. I. The following six adjectives form their Superlative by adding **-lĭmŭs** to the base :—

Positive.		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
făcĭlĭs	*easy*	**făcĭl-**	**făcĭl-ĭŏr**	**făcil-lĭmŭs**
difficĭlĭs	*difficult*	**difficĭl-**	**difficĭl-ĭŏr**	**difficil-lĭmŭs**
sĭmĭlĭs	*like*	**sĭmĭl-**	**sĭmĭl-ĭŏr**	**sĭmil-lĭmŭs**
dissĭmĭlĭs	*unlike*	**dissĭmĭl-**	**dissĭmĭl-ĭŏr**	**dissĭmil-lĭmŭs**
grăcĭlĭs	*thin*	**grăcĭl-**	**grăcĭl-ĭŏr**	**grăcil-lĭmŭs**
hŭmĭlĭs	*low*	**hŭmĭl-**	**hŭmĭl-ĭŏr**	**hŭmil-lĭmŭs**

Obs. All other adjectives in **-ĭlĭs** form the Superlative in the ordinary way; *e.g.* **frăgĭlĭs**, *brittle*, **frăgĭlissĭmŭs**.

§ 95. II. Three indeclinable adjectives are thus compared :—

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
frūgī	*of worth*	**frūgālĭŏr**	**frūgālissĭmŭs**
nēquam	*worthless*	**nēquĭŏr**	**nēquissĭmŭs**
sătĭs	*sufficient*	**satĭŭs** (n.), *preferable*	—

§ 96. III. The following adjectives have a Comparative and Superlative not formed from the Positive :—

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
bŏnŭs	*good*	**mĕlĭŏr**	**optĭmŭs**
mălŭs	*bad*	**pēĭŏr**	**pessĭmŭs**
magnŭs	*great*	**māĭŏr**	**maxĭmŭs**
parvŭs	*small*	**mĭnŏr**	**mĭnĭmŭs**
multŭs	*much*	**plūrēs** (pl.)	**plūrĭmŭs**
dīvĕs	*rich*	**dītĭŏr or dīvĭtĭŏr**	**dītissĭmŭs or dīvĭtissĭmŭs**

NOTE.—Plūrēs is thus declined: N. V. Acc. (masc. and fem.) **plūrēs**, (neut.) **plūrĭă**, Gen. (all genders) **plūrĭum**, Dat. Abl. (all genders) **plūrĭbŭs**. The singular **plūs**, Gen. **plūrĭs**, *more*, is a neuter substantive; the Dat. and Abl. are not in use.

§ 97. IV. The following adjectives have no Positives:—

(Cp. iŭvĕnĭs, *young man*)	iūnĭŏr	*younger*	(nātū mĭnĭmŭs)
	ōcĭŏr	*swifter*	ōcissĭmŭs
(Cp. sĕnex, *old man*)	sĕnĭŏr	*older*	(nātū maxĭmŭs)

Obs. **Nātū** is ablative, and is a substantive used only in that case and denoting *birth*. Hence **nātū mĭnĭmŭs, nātū maxĭmŭs**, mean respectively *least* and *greatest by birth*.

§ 98. V. The following adjectives, derived from prepositions, are irregularly compared:—

Preposition.	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
cĭtrā, *on this side*	—	cĭtĕrĭŏr, *nearer*	cĭtĭmŭs
dē, *down from*	—	dētĕrĭŏr, *worse*	dēterrĭmŭs
extrā, *outside*	(extĕrŭs)	extĕrĭŏr, *outer*	extrēmŭs extĭmŭs
infrā, *below*	infĕrŭs, *lower*	infĕrĭŏr	infĭmŭs or īmŭs
intrā, *within*	—	intĕrĭŏr, *inner*	intĭmŭs
post, *after*	(postĕrŭs)	postĕrĭŏr, *later*	postrēmŭs, *last* postŭmŭs, *last*
prae, *before*	—	prĭŏr, *former*	prīmŭs [*born*
prŏpĕ, *near*	—	prŏpĭŏr, *nearer*	proxĭmŭs
sŭprā, *above*	sŭpĕrŭs, *upper*	sŭpĕrĭŏr	sŭprēmŭs, *highest, last* summŭs, *highest*
ultrā, *beyond*	—	ultĕrĭŏr, *farther*	ultĭmŭs, *farthest, last*

NOTE.—**Extĕrŭs** and **postĕrŭs** are regularly declined throughout, all forms except the nom. sing. masc. being in use.

CHAPTER XIV.—THE NUMERALS.

§ 99. The Numerals may conveniently be treated here, though they are not all adjectives.

(1) There is one numeral **substantive**: mīlĭă (n.), *thousands.*

(2) There are three series of numeral **adjectives**:—

(*a*) **Cardinal,** corresponding to the English series *one, two, three,* etc.;

(*b*) **Ordinal,** corresponding to the English series *first, second, third,* etc.;

(*c*) **Distributive,** denoting *one a-piece, two a-piece, three a-piece,* etc.; and also used instead of cardinals in expressions of multiplication, as bĭs bīnă (neut. pl.), *twice two,* and (except singŭlī) with substantives plural in form and singular in meaning (§ 58), as bīnă castră, *two camps,* bīnae aedēs, *two houses.* (But dŭae aedēs, *two temples.*)

(3) There is a series of numeral **adverbs** denoting *once, twice, three times,* etc.

Table of Numerals.

§ 100. In the table on p. 58 a hyphen divides the base from the variable ending of such of the numerals as are declinable. The portions of the table printed in lighter type may be passed over by the beginner.

Variant Spelling.—In some editions of classical Latin writers the ending of the ordinals from 18 upwards is spelt **-ensĭm-ŭs** instead of **-ēsĭm-ŭs,** and that of the adverbials from 5 upwards **-ens** instead of **-ēs**; *e.g.* **vīcensĭm-ŭs, trīcensĭm-ŭs, quinquĭens, sexĭens. Mīl-ĭă** is sometimes (wrongly) spelt mill-ĭă.

	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Adverbs.
1	ūn-ŭs, *one*	prīm-ŭs, *first*	singŭl-ī, *one a-*	sĕmĕl, *once*
2	dŭ-ŏ	sĕcund-ŭs or altĕr *	bīn-ī [*piece*	bĭs
3	tr-ēs	tertĭ-ŭs	tern-ī or trīn-ī †	tĕr
4	quattŭŏr	quart-ŭs	quăttern-ī	quăttĕr
5	quinquĕ	quint-ŭs	quīn-ī	quinquĭēs
6	sex	sext-ŭs	sēn-ī	sexĭēs
7	septem	septĭm-ŭs	septēn-ī	septĭēs
8	octŏ	octāv-ŭs	octōn-ī	octĭēs
9	nŏvem	nōn-ŭs	nŏvēn-ī	nŏvĭēs
10	dĕcem	dĕcĭm-ŭs	dēn-ī	dĕcĭēs
11	undĕcim	undĕcĭm-ŭs	undēn-ī	undĕcĭēs
12	dŭŏdĕcim	duŏdĕcĭm-ŭs	dŭŏdēn-ī	dŭŏdĕcĭēs
13	trĕdĕcim	tertĭ-ŭs dĕcĭm-ŭs	tern-ī dēn-ī	terdĕcĭēs
14	quattŭordĕcim	quart-ŭs dĕcĭm-ŭs	quăttern-ī dēn-ī	quatĕr dĕcĭēs
15	quindĕcim	quint-ŭs dĕcĭm-ŭs	quīn-ī dēn-ī	quindĕcĭēs
16	sēdĕcim	sext-ŭs dĕcĭm-ŭs	sēn-ī dēn-ī	sēdĕcĭēs
17	septemdĕcim	septĭm-ŭs dĕcĭm-ŭs	septēn-ī dēn-ī	septĭēs dĕcĭēs
18	dŭŏdēvīgintī	dŭŏdēvīcēsĭm-ŭs	dŭŏdēvīcēn-ī	dŭŏdēvīcĭēs
19	undēvīgintī	undēvīcēsĭm-ŭs	undēvīcēn-ī	undēvīcĭēs
20	vīgintī	vīcēsĭm-ŭs	vīcēn-ī	vīcĭēs
21	ūn-ŭs ĕt vīgintī or vīgintī ūn-ŭs	ūn-ŭs ĕt vīcēsĭm-ŭs or vīcēsĭm-ŭs prīm-ŭs	vīcēn-ī singŭl-ī	sĕmĕl ĕt vīcĭēs
22	dŭ-ŏ ĕt vīgintī or vīgintī dŭ-ŏ	alt-ĕr ĕt vīcēsĭm-ŭs or vīcēsĭm-ŭs alt-ĕr	vīcēn-ī bīn-ī	bĭs ĕt vīcĭēs
28	dŭŏdētrīgintā	dŭŏdētrīcēsĭm-ŭs	dŭŏdētrīcēn-ī	dŭŏdētrīcĭēs
29	undētrīgintā	undētrīcēsĭm-ŭs	undētrīcēn-ī	undētrīcĭēs
30	trīgintā	trīcēsĭm-ŭs	trīcēn-ī	trīcĭēs
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsĭm-ŭs	quadrāgēn-ī	quadrāgĭēs
50	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsĭm-ŭs	quinquāgēn-ī	quinquāgĭēs
60	sexāgintā	sexāgēsĭm-ŭs	sexāgēn-ī	sexāgĭēs
70	septŭāgintā	septŭāgēsĭm-ŭs	septŭāgēn-ī	septŭāgĭēs
80	octōgintā	octōgēsĭm-ŭs	octōgēn-ī	octōgĭēs
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsĭm-ŭs	nōnāgēn-ī	nōnāgĭēs
100	centum	centēsĭm-ŭs	centēn-ī	centĭēs
200	dŭcent-ī	dŭcentēsĭm-ŭs	dŭcēn-ī	dŭcentĭēs
300	trĕcent-ī	trĕcentēsĭm-ŭs	trĕcēn-ī	trĕcentĭēs
400	quadringent-ī	quadringentēsĭm-ŭs	quadringēn-ī	quadringentĭēs
500	quingent-ī	quingentēsĭm-ŭs	quingēn-ī	quingentĭēs
600	sescent-ī	sescentēsĭm-ŭs	sescēn-ī	sescentĭēs
700	septingent-ī	septingentēsĭm-ŭs	septingēn-ī	septingentĭēs
800	octingent-ī	octingentēsĭm-ŭs	octingēn-ī	octingentĭēs
900	nongent-ī	nongentēsĭm-ŭs	nongēn-ī	nongentĭēs
1000	millĕ	millēsĭm-ŭs	singŭl-ă mīl-ĭă	millĭēs
2000	dŭ-ŏ mīl-ĭă	bĭs millēsĭm-ŭs	bīn-ă mīl-ĭă	bĭs millĭēs

* Altĕr, *second (of two)*; sĕcundŭs, *second (of a larger number than two)*.

† Trīnī (not ternī) is used with substantives plural in form but singular in meaning; *e.g.* trīnae aedēs, *three houses*.

Declension of Numerals.

§ 101. Cardinals.—**Ūnŭs** is declined like **nullŭs** (§ 81). The plural is used with substantives plural in form but singular in meaning (§ 58); *e.g.* **ūnă castră**, *one camp*.

Dŭŏ and **trēs** are thus declined:—

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	**dŭŏ**	**dŭae**	**dŭŏ**	**trēs**	**trĭă**
Acc.	**dŭōs** or **dŭŏ**	**dŭās**	**dŭŏ**	**trēs** or **trīs**	**trĭă**
Gen.	**dŭōrum** or **dŭum**	**dŭārum** or **dŭum**	**dŭōrum** or **dŭum**	**trĭum**	
Dat.	**dŭōbŭs**	**dŭābŭs**	**dŭōbŭs**	**trĭbŭs**	
Abl.	**dŭōbŭs**	**dŭābŭs**	**dŭōbŭs**	**trĭbŭs**	

Note.—**Ambŏ**, *both, the two*, is declined like **dŭŏ**.

The cardinals denoting hundreds from 200 to 900 are declined like the plural of **bŏnŭs**, § 80, except that they usually have genitive plural in **-um**, not in **-ōrum** or **-ārum**; *e.g.* **dŭcentum**.

The other cardinal numerals, *viz.* 4 to 20, the tens up to 100, and **millĕ**, 1000, are indeclinable.

The substantive **mīlĭă** (n.) is declined in the plural only:—

N.V.A.	**mīlĭă**
Gen.	**mīlĭum**
Dat.	**mīlĭbŭs**
Abl.	**mīlĭbŭs**

Obs. A declinable numeral qualifying **mīlĭă** must, of course, be in agreement with it, and the substantive dependent on **mīlĭă** is put in the genitive; *e.g.* **trĭă mīlĭa ĕquĭtum**, 3000 *horsemen*.

§ 102. Ordinals.—These are declined like **bŏnŭs** (§ 80), with the exception of **altĕr**, *second* (*of two*), for which see § 81.

§ 103. Distributives.—These are all declined like **bŏnŭs**, except that the genitive plural generally ends in **-um**, not in **-ōrum** or **-ārum**; *e.g.* **dēnum**. In the singular they are used only in poetry.

On Compounding Numerals.

§ 104. 21 to 99.—As may be inferred from the preceding table, the smaller number follows the larger without **ĕt** or precedes it with **ĕt**; *e.g.* **vīgintī quinquĕ** or **quinquĕ ĕt vīgintī**, just as in English we say *twenty-five* or *five-and-twenty*.

The two numbers preceding each ten are commonly expressed by prefixing **dŭŏdē-, undē-** respectively to it; see 28 and 29 in the table. (**Dē** is a preposition denoting *from*.) Such expressions as **vīgintī octŏ** and **octŏ ĕt vīgintī** occur, but are less usual.

101 and upwards.—The larger number, as a rule, precedes the smaller, and **ĕt** *may* be inserted (except in distributives); *e.g.* **dŭŏ mīlĭă (ĕt) quingentī (ĕt) quadrāgintā ĕquĭtēs** or **ĕquĭtum dŭŏ mīlĭă (ĕt) quingentī (ĕt) quadrāgintā**, 2540 *horsemen*. (Note that the substantive is not put in the genitive if separated from **mīlĭă** by numerals that do not qualify **mīlĭă**.)

Obs. Where **ūnŭs** is used with other numerals it agrees with the substantive in case and gender, but remains singular in number; *e.g.* **fēmĭnīs vīgintī ūnī** or **ūnī ĕt vīgintī fēmĭnis**, 21 *women* (dative); **ūnĭŭs ĕt dŭcentum ĕquĭtum** or **ĕquĭtum dŭcentum ūnĭŭs**, 201 *horsemen* (genitive).

Fractions.

§ 105. (*a*) Fractions with 1 for numerator are denoted by the ordinal corresponding to the denominator in agreement with **pars**, *part*; *e.g.* **dīmĭdĭă pars**, *half*; **tertĭă (pars)**, *one-third*; **quartă (pars)**, *a quarter*. **Pars** may be omitted, except after **dīmĭdĭă**; *half* is also expressed by the neuter **dīmĭdĭum**.

(*b*) In fractions with a numerator greater than 1, the numerator is expressed by a cardinal, the denominator by an ordinal in agreement with **partēs** understood; *e.g.* **trēs septĭmae**, *three-sevenths*; **dŭae nōnae**, *two-ninths*.

(*c*) But if the numerator is only one less than the denominator, the latter is not expressed, and **partēs** is added to the cardinal that denotes the numerator; *e.g.* **dŭae partēs**, *two-thirds*; **trēs partēs**, *three-quarters*; **quattŭŏr partēs**, *four-fifths*.

For the expression of fractions by means of the parts of the **ās**, see *Appendix on Roman Money*.

Multiplicatives.

§ **106.** There is an incomplete series of numeral adjectives with the ending **-plex** (base, **-plĭc-**), *-fold;* the following are in use :—

simplex, *single.*	quădrŭplex, *fourfold.*
dŭplex, *double, twofold.*	septemplex, *sevenfold.*
trĭplex, *triple, threefold.*	dĕcemplex, *tenfold.*

All are declined like fēlix (§ 86), but with ĭ (not ī) in the base; *e.g.* simplex, gen. simplĭcĭs.

Signs for Numerals.

§ **107.** The use of the letters I, V, X, L, C, D, M to represent respectively 1, 5, 10, 50, 100, 500, 1000 (and, in combination, other numbers) has remained unchanged to the present day and is well known to all. It is only necessary to point out that in some editions of the classics $I\text{Ↄ}$ is used instead of D for 500 and $C I\text{Ↄ}$ instead of M for 1000.

CHAPTER XV.—PRONOUNS.

§ 108. Under this heading are included many words which do not "stand in place of a substantive," but are either always or sometimes used adjectivally; *e.g.* **mĕŭs**, *my* (always used adjectivally); **īdem**, *the same* (used either substantivally or adjectivally).

Personal Pronouns.

§ 109. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, **ĕgŏ**, *I*, and **tū**, *thou*, are substantival and of common gender. They are thus declined:—

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	**ĕgŏ**		**nōs**
Acc.	**mē**		**nōs**
Gen.	**mĕī**		**nostrī** **nostrum** (partitive *)
Dat.	**mĭhĭ** or (in poetry) **mī**		**nōbīs**
Abl.	**mē**		**nōbīs**

Singular.		Plural.	
N.V.	**tū**		**vōs**
Acc.	**tē**		**vōs**
Gen.	**tŭī**		**vestrī** **vestrum** (partitive *)
Dat.	**tĭbĭ**		**vōbīs**
Abl.	**tē**		**vōbīs**

Note 1.—To any of the above forms (except **tū**) the particle **-mĕt** may be added for emphasis, *e.g.* **ĕgŏmĕt**; **tū** is lengthened to **tūtĕmĕt**.

Note 2.—**Vōs** is never, like the English *you*, used of a single person. *You*, therefore, must always be rendered by the singular (**tū**, etc.) unless it is clear that more than one person is addressed. **Nōs**, however, sometimes denotes *I*.

* *I.e.* dependent on a word denoting *part*, *e.g.* **multī nostrum**, *many of us*.

There is in Latin no pronoun of the third person exactly corresponding to the English *he, she, it;* but its place can when necessary be supplied by one of the Demonstratives (§ 112).

Personal Pronouns—Reflexives.

§ 110. The personal pronouns of the first and second person are used as reflexives; *e.g.* mē dēfendō, *I defend myself;* tĭbĭ indulgēs, *you are indulgent to yourself.*

For the third person reflexive there is a special form, *viz.* sē, *himself, herself, itself, themselves,* which is thus declined for both numbers and all genders:—

Singular and Plural.

Acc. sē or sēsē
Gen. sŭī
Dat. sĭbĭ
Abl. sē or sēsē

Possessive Adjectives.

§ 111. These are formed from the personal pronouns, singular and plural:—

From Singular Pronouns.

mĕŭs, mĕă, mĕum, *my* (*mine*).
tŭŭs, tŭă, tŭum, *thy* (*thine*).
sŭŭs, sŭă, sŭum, *his, her* (*hers*), *its.*

From Plural Pronouns.

nostĕr, nostră, nostrum, *our* (*ours*).
vestĕr, vestră, vestrum, *your* (*yours*).
sŭŭs, sŭă, sŭum, *their* (*theirs*).

Obs. These adjectives are translated by the English words in brackets when they do not stand as attributes.

Mĕŭs, tŭŭs, and sŭŭs are declined like bŏnŭs (§ 80), except that mĕŭs has voc. sing. masc. mī; nostĕr and vestĕr are declined like nĭgĕr (§ 80).

Note 1.—One or other of the particles **-mĕt, -ptĕ,** may be added for emphasis to the abl. sing. of the possessive adjectives; *e.g.* **mĕōmĕt, nostrāptĕ.**

Note 2.—**Nostĕr** is sometimes used as an equivalent for **mĕŭs,** just as **nōs** is used for **ĕgŏ;** but **vestĕr** never takes the place of **tŭŭs.**

NOTE 3.—**sŭŭs**, being formed from the reflexive **sē**, generally refers (except, of course, in the nominative) to the subject of the sentence. Hence, if *his* in a principal sentence refers to the subject of the sentence, we must use **sŭ-ŭs, -ă, -um**; if it does not refer to the subject, we must use **ēiŭs** (genitive of **ĭs, ĕă, ĭd**, § 112); *e.g.* **Patrem sŭum occīdĭt**, *He kills his (own) father*; **Patrem ēiŭs occīdĭt**, *He kills his (somebody else's) father.*

NOTE 4.—From **nostĕr** and **vestĕr** respectively are formed the adjectives—

nostrās (gen. sing. **nostrātĭs**), *of our country*;
vestrās („ „ **vestrātĭs**), *of your country*;

both declined like **prūdens** (§ 86).

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 112. The Latin demonstrative pronouns are used both substantivally and adjectivally, just as in English we may say either "this (*substantival*) is true," or "this (*adjectival*) statement is true."

The demonstrative pronouns are five in number, as follows:—

(1) **hĭc, haec, hōc**, *this*; used of that which belongs to, or is near, the speaker.

In the paradigm on the next page the forms placed in brackets ( ) are rarely found, and should not be used in translating English into Latin.

(2) **istĕ, istă, istŭd**, *that (of yours)*; used of that which belongs to, or is near, the person spoken to.

The demonstrative particle **-cĕ** (seen in the declension of **hĭc, haec, hōc**) is sometimes added to **istĕ**, which is then declined **istĭc, istaec, istūc**, as shown in the paradigm.

(3) **illĕ, illă, illŭd**, *that (yonder)*; used of that which belongs to, or is near, neither the speaker nor the person spoken to.

(4) **ĭs, ĕă, ĭd**, *that*; used of what has just been mentioned, and (when used substantivally) often to be translated *he, she, it.*

Īdem, ĕădem, ĭdem, *the same*, is formed from **ĭs, ĕă, ĭd**, and the particle **-dem**. Its declension is given in full after that of **ĭs**.

(5) **ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsum**, *self*, or *himself, herself, itself.*

Ipsĕ has a superlative form **ipsissĭm-ŭs, -ă, -um**, *very self* declined like **bŏnŭs** (§ 80).

The demonstratives are thus declined:—

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hĭc	haec	hōc	hī	hae (haec)	haec
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs (hoscĕ)	hās (hascĕ)	haec
Gen.	hūiŭs (hūiuscĕ)			hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic *				hīs (hiscĕ)	
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc		hīs (hiscĕ)	

Obs. The forms in brackets are comparatively rare, and should not be used in translating English into Latin.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	istĕ	istă	istŭd	istī	istae	istă
Acc.	istum	istam	istŭd	istōs	istās	istă
Gen.		istĭŭs		istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.		istī			istīs	
Abl.	istō	istā	istō		istīs	

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	istĭc	istaec	istūc	istīcĕ	istaec	istaec
Acc.	istunc	istanc	istūc	istoscĕ	istascĕ	istaec
Gen.		istīuscĕ		istōrunc	istārunc	istōrunc
Dat.		istī			istiscĕ	
Abl.	istōc	istāc	istōc		istiscĕ	

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	illĕ	illă	illŭd	illī †	illae	illă
Acc.	illum	illam	illŭd	illōs	illās	illă
Gen.		illĭus		illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.		illī †			illīs ‡	
Abl.	illō	illā	illō		illīs ‡	

* In **huic** the vowels **ui** form a diphthong (§ 8). According to the "English" pronunciation **huic** rhymes with "like."

† In poetry also **ollī**. ‡ In poetry also **ollīs**.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ĭs	ĕă	ĭd	ĕī or ĭī	ĕae	ĕă
Acc.	ĕum	ĕam	ĭd	ĕōs	ĕās	ĕă
Gen.		ēiŭs		ĕōrum	ĕārum	ĕōrum
Dat.		ĕī			ĕīs or ĭīs	
Abl.	ĕō	ĕā	ĕō		ĕīs or ĭīs	

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	ĕădem	ĭdem	īdem or ĕīdem	ĕaedem	ĕădem
Acc.	ĕundem	ĕandem	ĭdem	ĕosdem	ĕasdem	ĕădem
Gen.		ēiusdem		ĕōrundem	ĕārundem	ĕōrundem
Dat.		ĕīdem			isdem or ĕisdem	
Abl.	ĕōdem	ĕādem	ĕōdem		isdem or ĕisdem	

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipsĕ	ipsă	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsă
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsă
Gen.		ipsīŭs		ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.		ipsī			ipsīs	
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		ipsīs	

Relative Pronouns.

§ 113. The relative pronouns are three in number, *viz:*—

Quī, quae, quŏd, *who, which, that* (generally substantival);

Quīcumquĕ, quaecumquĕ, quodcumquĕ, *whoever, whatever* (substantival or adjectival);

Quisquīs, quidquīd, *whoever, whatever* (substantival or adjectival).

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quŏd	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quŏd	quōs	quās	quae
Gen.		cūĭŭs		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.		cui *		quĭbŭs (in poetry also quīs)		
Abl.	quō / quī (all genders; rare except in quīcum, § 259)	quā	quō	quĭbŭs (in poetry also quīs)		

* In cui the vowels ui form a diphthong (§ 8). According to the "English" pronunciation cui is sounded like *ki* in *kind*.

In the declension of quīcumquĕ the ending **-cumquĕ** (sometimes spelt **-cunquĕ**) is invariable, and the first part of the word is declined like the simple relative quī, *e.g.*:—

	M.	F.	N.
Sing. nom.	quīcumquĕ	quaecumquĕ	quodcumquĕ
,, acc.	quemcumquĕ	quamcumquĕ	quodcumquĕ
	etc.	etc.	etc.

Of quisquĭs the only forms in common use are:—

Sing. nom. masc. **quisquĭs**, neut. **quidquĭd** or **quicquĭd**
,, abl. masc. and neut. **quōquō**.

NOTE.—From the genitive singular of the relative **quī** an adjective is formed, *viz.* **cūi-ŭs, -ă, -um,** *whose* (declined like **bŏnŭs**, § 80).

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 114. The interrogative pronoun is quĭs, quae, quĭd, *who? which? what?* It is used both substantivally and adjectivally, except in the forms quī (nom. sing. masc.) and quŏd (nom. and acc. sing. neut.), which are adjectival only.

Examples: **Quĭs vĕnĭt?** *Who is coming?* (substantival).
Quī mīlĕs vĕnĭt? *What soldier is coming?* (adjectival).
Quĭd vĭdēs? *What do you see?* (substantival).
Quŏd ănĭmăl vĭdēs? *What animal do you see?* (adjectival).

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quĭs / quī	quae	quĭd / quŏd	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quĭd / quŏd	quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	cūiŭs			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui			quĭbŭs (in poetry also quīs)		
Abl.	quō / quī (only as adverb, *how?*)	quā	quō	quĭbŭs (in poetry also quīs)		

Obs. Except in the forms quĭs, quĭd, the interrogative pronoun is identical with the relative.

Quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, *who, pray? what, pray?* is an emphatic interrogative formed by adding the invariable particle **-nam** to the simple interrogative.

NOTE 1.—*Which (of the two)?* is generally expressed by **ŭtĕr** (§ 81).

NOTE 2.—From the genitive singular of the interrogative **quĭs** two adjectives are formed:—**cūi-ŭs, -ă, -um,** *whose?* (declined like **bŏnŭs,** § 80); **cūi-ās** (gen. sing. **cūiātĭs**), *of what country?* (declined like **prūdens,** § 86); *e.g.* **Cūium est pĕcŭs?** *Whose flock is it?* (**Cūiŭs** belongs to colloquial Latin, but is used by Vergil.)

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 115. The indefinite pronouns are **quĭs, quă, quĭd,** *any,* and its compounds. This indefinite **quĭs** is, generally speaking, used only after **nē,** *lest,* **num,** interrogative particle, **sī,** *if,* **nĭsĭ,** *unless,* and may be written as one word with any of the first three of these words; thus: **nē quĭs** or **nēquĭs,** *lest any one;* **num quĭs** or **numquĭs,** *any one?* (like **ecquĭs,** § 116, 4); **sī quĭs** or **sīquĭs,** *if any one;* **nĭsĭ quĭs,** *unless any one; e.g.* **Sī quĭd** (or **sīquĭd**) **hăbĕt, dăt,** *If he has any thing, he gives it.* Like the interrogative it has the forms **quī** (nom. sing. masc.) and **quŏd** (nom. and acc. sing. neut.), which are adjectival only. These forms appear in some of its compounds even when used substantivally.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	{quĭs / quī}	quă	{quĭd / quŏd}	quī	quae	quă
Acc.	quem	quam	{quĭd / quŏd}	quōs	quās	quă
Gen.	cūiŭs			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui			quĭbŭs (in poetry also quīs)		
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quĭbŭs (in poetry also quīs)		

Obs. Except in the nom. sing. fem. and the nom. and acc. pl. neut. the indefinite pronoun is identical with the interrogative, and even in those cases **quae** is sometimes used instead of **quă**.

§ 116. The compound indefinite pronouns are numerous and somewhat confusing; they are best classified by means of their significations according as they imply—

(1) *all*,
(2) *some* (opposed to *none*),
(3) *any* (with a negative = *none*),
(4) *any?* (i.e. *is there any that . . .?*).

These pronouns are used both substantivally and adjectivally, except that in the nom. and acc. sing. of some of them two forms exist—one substantival, the other adjectival—as shown below.

(1) The indefinite pronouns which imply *all* (though, of course, they are not to be so translated) are:—

quisquĕ, quaequĕ, quidquĕ or quicquĕ (subst.), **quodquĕ** (adj.), *each.*

Ūnŭs quisquĕ, *each one*, is sometimes written as one word, **ūnusquisquĕ**; both parts are declined exactly as if written separately; *e.g.* Nom. **ūnusquisquĕ, ūnăquaequĕ, ūnumquidquĕ** or **ūnumquodquĕ**; Gen. **ūnīuscŭiusquĕ.**

quīlībĕt, quaelībĕt, quidlībĕt (subst.), **quodlībĕt** (adj.), *any you please.*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs (subst.), **quodvīs** (adj.), *any you will.*

Cp. § 81, NOTE 2, on the compounds of **ŭtĕr.**

(2) Under the heading of indefinite pronouns implying *some* come:—

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (subst.), **quoddam** (adj.), *a certain one, a certain;*

ălĭquīs (no feminine), **ălĭquĭd** (subst.), *some one, some thing* (opposed to *no one, nothing*);

ălĭquī, ălĭquă, ălĭquŏd (adj.), *some;*

quispĭam, quaepĭam, quidpĭam or quippĭam (subst.), **quodpĭam** (adj.), *some one, some thing, some.*

(3) With a negative, and in expressions implying a negative, *any* is rendered by the indefinite adjective ullŭs, or (especially where a substantival word is required) by the indefinite pronoun

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or quicquam, *any, any one, any thing.*

Example: **Nĕc quisquam vĕnĭt,** *And no one comes.*

(4) To introduce a question beginning *Is there any that . . ? Are there any who . . .?* numquĭs (§ 115) may be used, or the interrogative-indefinite pronoun

ecquĭs (no feminine), ecquĭd? (subst.), *is there any one that . . .?*

ecquī, ecquae or ecquă, ecquŏd (adj.), *is there any . . . that?*

Examples: **Ecquĭs nōs vĭdĕt?** *Does any one see us?*
Ecquŏd ănĭmăl vĭdēs? *Is there any animal that you see?*

§ 117. The variable portion of the above compound indefinite pronouns is declined like the simple indefinite quĭs or quī, except that (1) the nom. sing. forms are as given above; (2) the nom. and acc. pl. neut. is the same as the nom. sing. fem.; and (3) there is no ablative form quī or quīs.

The endings -quĕ, -lĭbĕt, -vīs, -dam, -pĭam, -quam are invariable. Quīdam is declined below as an example:—

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam / quoddam	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Acc.	quemdam	quamdam	quiddam / quoddam	quosdam	quasdam	quaedam
Gen.		cūiusdam		quōrumdam	quārumdam	quōrumdam
Dat.		cuidam			quĭbusdam	
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam		quĭbusdam	

Obs. In the above declension n is sometimes written instead of m before d; *e.g.* quendam, quandam. Cp. the declension of īdem, § 112.

The Table on the next page is not to be learnt column by column, but across from left to right.

§ 118. Synopsis of Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives (§§ 112—117; also § 81).

Demonstrative.	Relative.	Interrogative.	Indefinite.	
hĭc, *this* **istĕ** (**istīc**), *that (of yours)* **illĕ**, *that (yonder)* **is**, *that*; **īdem**, *the same*; **ipsĕ**, *he himself*	**quī**, *who* **quīcumquĕ**, *whoever* **quisquĭs**, *whoever*	**quĭs**, *who?* **quisnam**, *who, pray?*	**quisquĕ**, *each* **quīlībĕt**, *any you please* **quīvīs**, *any you will*	**quīdam**, *a certain one* **ălĭquĭs** (subst.), *some one* **ălĭquī** (adj.), *some* **quispĭam**, *some one* **quisquam**, **ullŭs** (adj.), with negative, *any one, any* **quŭs** (adj. **quī**), *any* (§ 115)
Referring to *two* objects only (§ 404):—	**ŭtĕr**, *which of two* **ŭtercumquĕ**, *whichever*	**ŭtĕr**, *which of two?*	**ŭterquĕ**, *each* **ŭterlībĕt**, *which you please* **ŭtervīs**, *which you will*	**altĕrŭtĕr**, *the one or the other*
tālĭs, *such*	**quālĭs**, *as* **quāliscumque**, *of what kind soever*	**quālĭs**, *of what kind?*		
tantŭs, *so great* **tantusdem**, *just so great*	**quantŭs**, (*as great*) *as* **quantuscumquĕ**, *how great soever*	**quantŭs**, *how great?*	**quantusvīs**, *as great as you will*	**ălĭquantŭs**, *of a considerable size*
tantŭlŭs, *so small*	**quantŭlŭs**, (*as small*) *as* **quantŭluscumquĕ**, *how small soever*	**quantŭlŭs**, *how small?*		**ălĭquantŭlŭs**, *of a small size*
tŏt, *so many* **tŏtĭdem**, *just so many*	**quŏt**, (*as many*) *as* **quotcumquĕ**, or **quotquŏt**, *how many soever*	**quŏt**, *how many?*		
		***quŏtŭs**, *which (in numerical order)?*		

* **Quŏtŭs** asks a question answered by an ordinal numeral; *e.g.* **Quŏtă pars?** *What part?* (Answer: **Tertĭă**, *one-third*, etc.). It is often used in conjunction with **quisquĕ**, *each*, to signify *how few!* *e.g.* **Quŏtusquisquĕ** (or **quŏtŭs quisquĕ**) **bŏnŭs est!** *How few good men there are!*

CHAPTER XVI.—REMARKS ON VERBS.

The beginner should read this chapter before, and also after, learning the conjugation of **sum** (*Ch. XVII.*) *and the regular verbs* (*Ch. XVIII.*).

§ **119.** Latin Verbs have inflections that indicate (1) voice, (2) mood, (3) tense, (4) person, (5) number.

§ **120.** (1) **Voice.** There are in Latin, as in English, two voices, *viz.* **active** and **passive**: *e.g.* **ămō**, *I love;* **ămŏr**, *I am loved.*

NOTE 1.—The passive of some transitive Latin verbs has a **reflexive** meaning, and may often be rendered by the intransitive use of the corresponding English verb: *e.g.* **mŏvĕō**, *I move, set in motion*, **mŏvĕŏr**, *I move, am in motion;* **pascĭt**, *he feeds, supplies with food;* **pascĭtŭr**, *it (an animal) feeds, takes food.*

NOTE 2.—Some verbs which are conjugated in the passive only are the equivalents of English active verbs; these are called **deponents** (§ 171).

§ **121.** (2) **Mood.** There are, properly speaking, three moods: the **indicative**, the **subjunctive**, and the **imperative**.

The **infinitive**, which is in reality a verbal substantive, is often regarded as a fourth mood.

The rules for the use of these moods belong to syntax; but in order that the student may learn intelligently the tables in the following chapters, the various meanings there assigned to the subjunctive are illustrated here.

The **subjunctive** is used:—

(*a*) To express a **wish** or **command**.

Examples: **Vīvăt rēgīnă!** (*Long*) *live the queen!*
Audĭant omnēs, *Let all hear.*
Ŭtĭnam illĕ ădhūc vīvĕrĕt! *Would that he were still alive!*
Ŭtĭnam vīcissēmŭs! *Would that we had won!*

Obs. In the first of these examples the Latin subjunctive is represented by the same mood in English.

(*b*) In both clauses of some **conditional sentences**.

Examples: **Sī vĕnĭās, gaudĕam,** *If you were to come, I should be glad.*

Sī mē adiŭvārēs, gaudērem, *If you were helping me, I should be glad.*
Sī vēnissem, audīvissem, *If I had come, I should have heard.*

(*c*) To express purpose.

Example: Ĕdĭt ŭt vīvăt, { *He eats that he may live.* / *He eats to live.*

(*d*) To express consequence.

Example: Ĭtă aegĕr est ŭt vix vīvăt, *He is so ill that he scarcely lives.*

(*e*) In clauses introduced by some Latin conjunctions meaning when, although, or since.

Example: Hostēs, cum haec audīvissent, sē ăd proelĭum părāvērunt, *When the enemy had heard this, they made themselves ready for battle.*

The Latin indicative, imperative, and infinitive are, roughly speaking, equivalent to the English forms similarly named.

§ 122. (3) **Tense.** The tenses belonging to the several moods, active and passive, are as follows:—

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imperative.
Present	Present	Present
Imperfect	Imperfect	
Future		Future
* Perfect	* Perfect	
* Pluperfect	* Pluperfect	
* Future-Perfect		

Obs. The tenses marked (*) are in the passive voice formed, similarly to all tenses of the passive in English, from the passive participle and the verb sum, *I am.* The participle, being an adjective, must be in the same gender, number, and case as the substantive to which it refers (§ 79).

Examples: Pŭĕr ămātŭs est, *The boy was loved.*
Pŭellă ămātă est, *The girl was loved.*
Pŭĕrī ămātī sunt, *The boys were loved.*
Pŭellae ămātae sunt, *The girls were loved.*

The infinitive has three tenses: present, perfect, and future.

The meaning of the tenses is given in the tables of the regular verbs. It must be noted that the **perfect** has two meanings: *e.g.* **ămāvī**, *I loved* or *I have loved*. The second meaning is the less common of the two, and is therefore, to save needless repetition, omitted in the tables from the conjugation of the perfect subjunctive.

§ **123.** (4) **Person.** There are in Latin special forms in each tense to be used according as the subject is of the **first, second,** or **third** person. This is to some extent the case in English also (e.g. *I love, thou lovest, he loves*); but the Latin forms not only vary according to the person of the subject: they often **contain the subject in themselves,** especially in the first and second persons, *e.g.* **ămō**, *I love;* **ămās**, *thou lovest;* but the pronouns may be inserted for emphasis, *e.g.* **ĕgŏ ămō, tū nōn ămās**, *I love, thou dost not love.* In the third person the subject is frequently expressed by a substantive, but by no means always; thus we may have **ămăt**, *he loves*, or *she loves*, or *it loves*, according to the context, or **Caesăr ămăt**, *Caesar loves.*

Obs. In English the only part of the verb which contains the subject in itself, and accordingly may form a complete sentence, is the imperative, *e.g.* "Go."

§ **124.** (5) **Number.** The two numbers, **singular** and **plural**, are used as in English, except in two points (cp. § 109, NOTE 2). (i.) The use of plural for singular in the second person, which is common in modern English, never occurs in Latin; e.g. *you love* is **ămās** (singular), never (unless more persons than one are addressed) **ămātĭs** (plural). (ii.) The plural is in Latin occasionally used for the singular in the first person; this usage often indicates an affectation of modesty, thus differing from the "royal" *we* in English.

VERBAL ADJECTIVES (PARTICIPLES).

§ **125.** Verbal adjectives or participles are adjectives implying verbal action, the base of the participle indicating the voice and tense of the action. There are four **participles,** two with active and two with passive meaning, *viz.*:—

Active { Present participle, declined like prūdens, § 86.
Future „ }

Passive { Perfect „
Gerundive (in transitive verbs only) } „ „ bŏnŭs, § 80.

The gerundive has two chief usages: (1) as a verbal adjective denoting fitness to be the object of the active verb, *e.g.* ămandŭs, *fit to be loved, lovable;* (2) as a substitute for the gerund in what is known as the "gerundive attraction," the rules of which will be found in the Syntax.

Verbal Substantives.

§ 126. Certain verbal substantives (*i.e.* substantives implying verbal action) are usually appended to the conjugation of a Latin verb.

These are:—(1) the Gerund;
(2) the Supine;
(3) the Infinitive.

§ 127. (1) The **gerund** is an abstract substantive of neuter gender declined (like regnum, § 19) in the singular only; it expresses the action denoted by the verb, *e.g.* ămandum, *loving*, i.e. *the act of loving*, and corresponds to the English gerund, a verbal noun in *-ing* (*e.g.* "I take exercise by *walking*"), which originally ended in *-ung*, and so was distinct in form from the present participle with which it is now often confounded. The nominative of the gerund is not, as a rule, found except in the case of intransitive verbs; it is therefore included in brackets ( ) in the tables of the regular conjugations.

§ 128. (2) The **supine** is the name given to two cases (accusative and ablative singular) of a masculine verbal substantive (declined like grădŭs, § 39), which is in meaning similar to the gerund, though differently used. The accusative supine is found, after verbs of motion, to denote the purpose or goal of that motion (*e.g.* ĕō audītum, *I go to hear*), just as the English gerund is used *e.g.* in *I go fishing* (formerly *I go a-fishing*). The ablative supine is in common use only in the case of certain verbs, but for the sake of uniformity it is given in all the tables of conjugation.

The other cases of the verbal substantives of which the supine is the accusative and ablative singular exist in many instances, but are never included in the conjugation of the verb; *e.g.* audītŭs (nominative), *hearing, the act* or *sense of hearing.*

§ 129. (3) The **infinitive** is distinguished from the other verbal substantives (*a*) in being indeclinable and (*b*) in possessing forms expressive of voice and tense, as follows:—

	Active.	Passive.
Present.	Special form	Special form
Past.	„ „	Past participle + essĕ (*to be*)
Future.	Future participle + essĕ (*to be*)	Accusative supine + īrī

Note.—**ĭrī**, used in the phrase which serves as the future infinitive passive, is the present infinitive passive of ĕō, *I go* (§ 214), used impersonally, and the supine expresses the act which is the goal of that motion; *e.g.* **Sentĭō rēgīnam ămātum īrī**, *I perceive that it is* (lit. *I perceive it to be*) *being gone about to love the queen*, i.e. *I perceive the queen to be about to be loved.*

The Three Bases of a Verb.

§ 130. In order to conjugate a verb it is necessary, as in the declension of substantives, to ascertain the base to which the inflections are to be added. In a verb these inflections denote voice, mood, tense, person, and number.

§ 131. Latin verbs, except deponent (§ 171) and defective verbs, have **three bases**, from one or other of which all their various parts are formed, *viz.* (1) the present base, (2) the perfect base, (3) the supine base.

The **present base** is found by cutting off the last three letters of the present infinitive active, which are always either **-ārĕ, -ērĕ, -ĕrĕ,** or **-īrĕ**; *e.g.* the present base of ămō, which has present infinitive active ămārĕ, is **ăm-**.

Obs. In a few irregular verbs the infinitive ends otherwise and there is then no single "present base."

To find the **perfect base** cut off the final **-ī** of the first person singular perfect indicative active, and to find the **supine base** cut off the final **-um** of the accusative supine; *e.g.* the perfect base of **ămō** is **ămāv-** and the supine base **ămāt-**, the first person singular perfect indicative active and the accusative supine being respectively **ămāvī** and **ămātum**.

§ **132.** These three forms—

(1) Present infinitive active,
(2) Perfect indicative active (first person singular),
(3) Supine (accusative),

together with the present indicative active (first person singular), are called the **principal parts** of a verb, and must be known before a verb can be conjugated (§ 136).

§ **133.** The following table shows from which of the three bases each part of a Latin verb is formed:—

		Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imperative.	Verbals.
Present Base	Present	Act. & Pass.	Act. & Pass.	Act. & Pass.	Pres. Part.
	Imperfect	,, ,,	,, ,,	——	Gerundive
	Future	,, ,,	——	,, ,,	Pres. Inf. Act. & Pass.
					Gerund
Perfect Base	Perfect	Active	Active	——	Perf. Inf. Act.
	Pluperfect	,,	,,	——	——
	Future Perf.	,,	——	——	——
Supine Base	Perfect	Passive	Passive	——	Perf. Part. (and Inf.) Pass.
	Pluperfect	,,	,,	——	Fut. Part. (and Inf.) Act.
	Future Perf.	,,	——	——	Supine (& Fut. Inf. Pass.)

CHAPTER XVII.—THE VERB *SUM*.

§ 134. The conjugation of this verb, though irregular, is given before that of the regular verbs, as it serves as an auxiliary in the conjugation of the latter.

PRINCIPAL PARTS (§ 132): sum, essĕ, fŭ-ī, (no supine).

* PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: *none.* / FUTURE: fŭtūrŭs, fŭtūră, fŭtūrum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

sum,	*I am*	sŭmŭs,	*we are*
ĕs,	*thou art*	estĭs,	*ye are*
est,	*he is*	sunt,	*they are*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

ĕram,	*I was*	ĕrāmŭs,	*we were*
ĕrās,	*thou wast*	ĕrātĭs,	*ye were*
ĕrăt,	*he was*	ĕrant,	*they were*

FUTURE TENSE.

ĕrō,	*I shall be*	ĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall be*
ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt be*	ĕrĭtĭs,	*ye will be*
ĕrĭt,	*he will be*	ĕrunt,	*they will be*

PERFECT TENSE.

fŭ-ī,	*I was* or *I have been*	fŭ-ĭmŭs,	*we were* or *we have been*
fŭ-istī,	*thou wast* or *thou hast been*	fŭ-istĭs,	*ye were* or *ye have been*
fŭ-ĭt,	*he was* or *he has been*	fŭ-ērunt or fŭ-ērĕ†	*they were* or *they have been*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

fŭ-ĕram,	*I had been*	fŭ-ĕrāmŭs,	*we had been*
fŭ-ĕrās,	*thou hadst been*	fŭ-ĕrātĭs,	*ye had been*
fŭ-ĕrăt,	*he had been*	fŭ-ĕrant,	*they had been*

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

fŭ-ĕrō,	*I shall have been*	fŭ-ĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall have been*
fŭ-ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been*	fŭ-ĕrĭtĭs,	*ye will have been*
fŭ-ĕrĭt,	*he will have been*	fŭ-ĕrint,	*they will have been*

* In this and other tables of the conjugation of verbs the participles are given first, as some parts of the verb are formed by means of a participle and the auxiliary.

† See § 140.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
PRESENT TENSE.		
sim,	*I should be*	(*if*) *I were to be*
sīs,	*thou wouldst be*	(*in order that*) *I may be*
sĭt,	*he would be*	(*so that*) *I am*
sīmŭs,	*we should be*	(*although*) *I am*
sītĭs,	*ye would be*	
sint,	*they would be*	
IMPERFECT TENSE.		
essem or fŏrem,	*I should be*	(*if*) *I were*
essēs or fŏrēs,	*thou wouldst be*	(*in order that*) *I might be*
essĕt or fŏrĕt,	*he would be*	(*so that*) *I was*
essēmŭs or fŏrēmŭs,	*we should be*	(*when, although,* etc.) *I was*
essētĭs or fŏrētĭs.	*ye would be*	
essent or fŏrent,	*they would be*	
PERFECT TENSE.		
fŭ-ĕrim	rare in principal sentences	(*if*) *I were to have been*
fŭ-ĕrĭs		(*so that*) *I was* or *have been*
fŭ-ĕrĭt		(*although*) *I have been*
fŭ-ĕrĭmŭs		
fŭ-ĕrītĭs		
fŭ-ĕrint		
PLUPERFECT TENSE.		
fŭ-issem,	*I should have been*	(*if*) *I had been*
fŭ-issēs,	*thou wouldst have been*	(*when, although,* etc.) *I had been*
fŭ-issĕt,	*he would have been*	
fŭ-issēmŭs,	*we should have been*	
fŭ-issētĭs,	*ye would have been*	
fŭ-issent,	*they would have been*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.			
ĕs,	*be* (*thou*)	estĕ,	*be* (*ye*)
FUTURE TENSE.			
estō,	*thou shalt* or *must be*	estōtĕ,	*ye shall* or *must be*
estō,	*he shall* or *must be*	suntō,	*they shall* or *must be*

INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
PRESENT: essĕ, *to be*	None.
PERFECT: fŭ-issĕ, *to have been*	
FUTURE: fōrĕ or fŭtūr-ŭs essĕ, *to be about to be*	SUPINE. None.

For rare forms of the present subjunctive of **sum**, see § 208, and for its compounds, see §§ 209, 210.

CHAPTER XVIII.—THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

Extent of their Divergence.

§ 135. A Latin verb belongs to one or other of four conjugations, *i.e.* it has *in such parts as are formed from the present base* (§ 133) inflections similar to one of the four model verbs given in this chapter. **In those parts which are formed from the perfect base or the supine base all verbs add the same inflections** to those bases, though the formation of the bases themselves varies.

Obs. A few verbs belonging to the third conjugation have some forms according to the fourth conjugation (§ 170), and a very few are so irregular as not to be usually classed with any one of the four conjugations.

The four conjugations are distinguished by the ending of the present infinitive active, which is

in the first	conjugation	-**Ā**rĕ (**A**	conjugation)
„ second	„	-**Ē**rĕ (**E**	„)
„ third	„	-ĕrĕ (consonant conjugation)	
„ fourth	„	-**Ī**rĕ (**I** conjugation)	

Formation of the Perfect and Supine Bases.

§ 136. From what has been said above (§ 135) it follows that, if the present infinitive active of a regular verb is known, all parts of the verb formed from the present base can be ascertained by reference to one of the model verbs.

To form any other parts of a verb, it is necessary to know the perfect base or the supine base. These bases cannot, in the case of verbs of the third conjugation, be ascertained from the present base by any rule; but the perfect and supine of each verb of this conjugation must be committed to memory. A list is given in §§ 189, 190.

In the case of verbs of the other three conjugations, the perfect and supine bases are, with some exceptions (§§ 187, 188, 191), regularly formed from the present base as follows :—

	Given the **Present Base**, found by cutting off from pres. infin. act.	To find the **Perfect Base**, add to the present base	To find the **Supine Base**, add to the present base
First Conjugation	-ārĕ, as from ăm-ārĕ	-āv-, as in ăm-āv-ī	-āt-, as in ăm-āt-um
Second Conjugation	-ērĕ, „ mŏn-ērĕ	-ŭ-, „ mŏn-ŭ-ī	-ĭt-, „ mŏn-ĭt-um
Fourth Conjugation	-īrĕ, „ aud-īrĕ	-īv-, „ aud-īv-ī	-īt-, „ aud-īt-um

In committing to memory the four regular conjugations the learner should notice the following points :—

Present Indicative and Imperative.

§ **137.** In the present indicative and in the imperative the characteristic vowel (*i.e.* **A** in the first conjugation, **E** in the second, and **I** in the fourth) occurs throughout, after the first person singular. In the third conjugation the place of a characteristic vowel is taken by **ĕ, ĭ,** or **u.**

Imperfect Indicative.

§ **138.** The imperfect indicative ends in **-bam, -bās,** etc., in the active, and in **-băr, -bārĭs,** etc., in the passive, in all four conjugations, though the vowel preceding the **b** varies.

Future Indicative.

§ **139.** The future in the second conjugation resembles that in the first, except in the characteristic vowel; in the third conjugation the future is quite differently formed, and the future of the fourth conjugation resembles that of the third.

Perfect Indicative Active.

§ 140. In the perfect indicative active the third person plural termination -ērĕ is chiefly used in poetry.

Present Subjunctive.

§ 141. In the third and fourth conjugations the present subjunctive is, in the first person singular, the same as the future indicative; in succeeding persons the future indicative has **e**, the present subjunctive **a**.

Imperfect Subjunctive.

§ 142. The imperfect subjunctive (first person singular) may always be found by adding **m** for the active and **r** for the passive to the present infinitive active; and the pluperfect subjunctive active may be found by adding **m** to the perfect infinitive active.

Perfect Subjunctive Active.

§ 143. The perfect subjunctive active is always (except in the first person singular) identical in form with the future-perfect indicative active.

Formation of Passive from Active.

§ 144. The passive (first person singular) of any tense formed from the present base may be found by adding **r** to the active, after the final **m** (if any) of the active has been dropped.

Second Person Singular Passive.

§ 145. The second person singular in tenses of the passive which are formed from the present base ends in -rĕ more commonly than in -rĭs, except in the present indicative; in that tense the ending -rĕ is so rare that it has not been included in the tables. (The preference for -rĭs in the present indicative is due to a desire to avoid confusion with present infinitive active.)

Marks of Quantity.

§ 146. Attention must be paid to the marks of quantity over the terminations. In some instances the quantity is the only difference between two entirely different parts of the verb; *e.g.* rĕgĕrĕ is present infinitive active (*to rule*) or present imperative passive (*be ruled*), whereas rĕgērĕ is future indicative passive (*thou wilt be ruled*).

English Equivalents.

§ 147. (i.) In the English translation of the second-person forms in the tables *thou* and *ye* are used for the sake of distinguishing singular and plural; the natural rendering is, of course, *you* for both numbers.

(ii.) The English renderings given in the following tables are by no means the only ones of which the several tenses admit; *e.g.* mŏnĕō may be rendered either *I advise* or *I am advising;* mŏnĕŏr, *I am advised* or *I am being advised.*

(iii.) Various meanings are assigned to the subjunctive in order that the learner may not be misled into attempting to render this mood into English without regard to the context.

The translations in the paradigm, supplemented by § 121, will suffice until the syntax of the complex sentence is reached, if the following additional renderings in the present subjunctive are borne in mind in the case of each verb:—

ăm-ĕt, *let him love*	**ăm-ēmŭs,** *let us love* **ăm-ent,** *let them love*
am-ētŭr, *let him be loved*	**ăm-ēmŭr,** *let us be loved* **ăm-entŭr,** *let them be loved*

§ 148. FIRST (OR A) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

MODEL: ămō, *I love, I like.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: ăm-ārĕ, ămāv-ī, ămāt-um.

BASES: ăm- (present); ămāv- (perfect); ămāt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: ăm-ans (gen. ămant-ĭs), *loving.* FUTURE: ămāt-ūrŭs, ămāt-ūrā, ămāt-ūrum, *about to love.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

ăm-ō,	*I love*	ăm-āmŭs,	*we love*
ăm-ās,	*thou lovest*	ăm-ātĭs,	*ye love*
ăm-ăt,	*he loves*	ăm-ant,	*they love*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

ăm-ābam,	*I was loving*	ăm-ābāmŭs,	*we were loving*
ăm-ābās,	*thou wast loving*	ăm-ābātĭs,	*ye were loving*
ăm-ābăt,	*he was loving*	ăm-ābant,	*they were loving*

FUTURE TENSE.

ăm-ābō,	*I shall love*	ăm-ābĭmŭs,	*we shall love*
ăm-ābĭs,	*thou wilt love*	ăm-ābĭtĭs,	*ye will love*
ăm-ābĭt,	*he will love*	ăm-ābunt,	*they will love*

PERFECT TENSE.

ămāv-ī,	*I loved* or *have loved*	ămāv-ĭmŭs,	*we loved* or *have loved*
ămāv-istī,	*thou lovedst* or *hast loved*	ămāv-istĭs,	*ye loved* or *have loved*
ămāv-ĭt,	*he loved* or *has loved*	ămāv-ērunt or ămāv-ērĕ,	*they loved* or *have loved*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

ămāv-ĕram,	*I had loved*	ămāv-ĕrāmŭs,	*we had loved*
ămāv-ĕrās,	*thou hadst loved*	ămāv-ĕrātĭs,	*ye had loved*
ămāv-ĕrăt,	*he had loved*	ămāv-ĕrant,	*they had loved*

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

ămāv-ĕrō,	*I shall have loved*	ămāv-ĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall have loved*
ămāv-ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have loved*	ămāv-ĕrĭtĭs,	*ye will have loved*
ămāv-ĕrĭt,	*he will have loved*	ămāv-ĕrint,	*they will have loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
ăm-em,	*I should love*	(*if*) *I were to love*
ăm-ēs,	*thou wouldst love*	(*in order that*) *I may love*
ăm-ĕt,	*he would love*	(*so that*) *I love*
ăm-ēmŭs,	*we should love*	(*although*) *I love*
ăm-ētĭs,	*ye would love*	
ăm-ent,	*they would love*	
	IMPERFECT TENSE.	
ăm-ārem,	*I should be loving*	(*if*) *I were loving*
ăm-ārēs,	*thou wouldst be loving*	(*in order that*) *I might love*
ăm-ārĕt,	*he would be loving*	(*so that*) *I loved*
ăm-ārēmŭs,	*we should be loving*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I was loving*
ăm-ārētĭs,	*ye would be loving*	
ăm-ārent,	*they would be loving*	
	PERFECT TENSE.	
ămāv-ĕrim ămāv-ĕrĭs ămāv-ĕrĭt ămāv-ĕrĭmŭs ămāv-ĕrĭtĭs ămāv-ĕrint	rare in principal sentences	(*if*) *I were to have loved* (*so that*) *I loved* or *have loved* (*although*) *I have loved*
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
ămāv-issem,	*I should have loved*	(*if*) *I had loved*
ămāv-issēs,	*thou wouldst have loved*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I had loved*
ămāv-issĕt,	*he would have loved*	
ămāv-issēmŭs,	*we should have loved*	
ămāv-issētĭs,	*ye would have loved*	
ămāv-issent,	*they would have loved*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT TENSE.		
ăm-ā,	*love* (*thou*)	ăm-ātĕ,	*love* (*ye*)
	FUTURE TENSE.		
ăm-ātō,	*thou shalt* or *must love*	ăm-ātōtĕ,	*ye shall* or *must love*
ăm-ātō,	*he shall* or *must love*	ăm-antō,	*they shall* or *must love*

INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
PRESENT: ăm-ārĕ, *to love*	(*Nom.* ăm-andum)
PERFECT: ămāv-issĕ, *to have loved*	*Acc.* ăm-andum, *loving*
FUTURE: ămātūr-ŭs essĕ, *to be about to love*	*Gen.* ăm-andī
	Dat. ăm-andō
	Abl. ăm-andō

SUPINE.

Acc. ămāt-um, *to love*	*Abl.* ămāt-ū, *in loving*

§ 149. SECOND (OR E) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

MODEL: mŏnĕō, *I advise.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: mŏn-ērĕ, mŏnŭ-ī, mŏnĭt-um.

BASES: mŏn- (present); mŏnŭ- (perfect); mŏnĭt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: mŏn-ens (gen. mŏnent-ĭs), *advising.* FUTURE: mŏnĭt-ūrŭs, mŏnĭt-ūră, mŏnĭt-ūrum, *about to advise.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mŏn-ĕō,	*I advise*	mŏn-ēmŭs,	*we advise*
mŏn-ēs,	*thou advisest*	mŏn-ētĭs,	*ye advise*
mŏn-ĕt,	*he advises*	mŏn-ent,	*they advise*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mŏn-ēbam,	*I was advising*	mŏn-ēbāmŭs,	*we were advising*
mŏn-ēbās,	*thou wast advising*	mŏn-ēbātĭs,	*ye were advising*
mŏn-ēbăt,	*he was advising*	mŏn-ēbant,	*they were advising*

FUTURE TENSE.

mŏn-ēbō,	*I shall advise*	mŏn-ēbĭmŭs,	*we shall advise*
mŏn-ēbĭs,	*thou wilt advise*	mŏn-ēbĭtĭs,	*ye will advise*
mŏn-ēbĭt,	*he will advise*	mŏn-ēbunt,	*they will advise*

PERFECT TENSE.

mŏnŭ-ī,	*I advised* or *have advised*	mŏnŭ-ĭmŭs,	*we advised* or *have advised*
mŏnŭ-istī,	*thou advisedst* or *hast advised*	mŏnŭ-istĭs,	*ye advised* or *have advised*
mŏnŭ-ĭt,	*he advised* or *has advised*	mŏnŭ-ērunt or mŏnŭ-ērĕ,	*they advised* or *have advised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

mŏnŭ-ĕram,	*I had advised*	mŏnŭ-ĕrāmŭs,	*we had advised*
mŏnŭ-ĕrās,	*thou hadst advised*	mŏnŭ-ĕrātĭs,	*ye had advised*
mŏnŭ-ĕrăt,	*he had advised*	mŏnŭ-ĕrant,	*they had advised*

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

mŏnŭ-ĕrō,	*I shall have advised*	mŏnŭ-ĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall* } *have*
mŏnŭ-ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have advised*	mŏnŭ-ĕrĭtĭs,	*ye will* } *advised*
mŏnŭ-ĕrĭt,	*he will have advised*	mŏnŭ-ĕrint,	*they will* }

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. (*See* §§ 121, 147.)

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
mŏn-ĕam,	*I should advise*	(*if*) *I were to advise*
mŏn-ĕās,	*thou wouldst advise*	(*in order that*) *I may advise*
mŏn-ĕăt,	*he would advise*	(*so that*) *I advise*
mŏn-ĕāmŭs,	*we should advise*	(*although*) *I advise*
mŏn-ĕātĭs,	*ye would advise*	
mŏn-ĕant,	*they would advise*	
	IMPERFECT TENSE.	
mŏn-ērem,	*I should be advising*	(*if*) *I were advising*
mŏn-ērēs,	*thou wouldst be advising*	(*in order that*) *I might advise*
mŏn-ērĕt,	*he would be advising*	(*so that*) *I advised*
mŏn-ērēmŭs,	*we should be advising*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I was advising*
mŏn-ērētĭs,	*ye would be advising*	
mŏn-ērent,	*they would be advising*	
	PERFECT TENSE.	
mŏnŭ-ĕrim mŏnŭ-ĕrĭs mŏnŭ-ĕrĭt mŏnŭ-ĕrĭmŭs mŏnŭ-ĕrĭtĭs mŏnŭ-ĕrint	rare in principal sentences	(*if*) *I were to have advised* (*so that*) *I advised* or *have advised* (*although*) *I have advised*
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
mŏnŭ-issem,	*I should have advised*	(*if*) *I had advised*
mŏnŭ-issēs,	*thou wouldst have advised*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I had advised*
mŏnŭ-issĕt,	*he would have advised*	
mŏnŭ-issēmŭs,	*we should have advised*	
mŏnŭ-issētĭs,	*ye would have advised*	
mŏnŭ-issent,	*they would have advised*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT TENSE.		
mŏn-ē,	*advise* (*thou*)	mŏn-ētĕ,	*advise* (*ye*)
	FUTURE TENSE.		
mŏn-ētō,	*thou shalt* or *must advise*	mŏn-ētōtĕ,	*ye shall* or *must advise*
mŏn-ētō,	*he shall* or *must advise*	mŏn-entō,	*they shall* or *must advise*

INFINITIVE:	GERUND.
PRESENT: mŏn-ērĕ, *to advise*	(*Nom.* mŏn-endum)
PERFECT: mŏnŭ-issĕ, *to have advised*	*Acc.* mŏn-endum, *advising*
FUTURE: mŏnĭtūr-ŭs essĕ, *to be about to advise*	*Gen.* mŏn-endī
	Dat. mŏn-endō
	Abl. mŏn-endō

SUPINE.

Acc. mŏnĭt-um, *to advise* | *Abl.* mŏnĭt-ū *in advising*

§ 150. THIRD (OR CONSONANT) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

MODEL: rĕgō, *I rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: rĕg-ĕrĕ, rex-ī, rect-um.

BASES: rĕg- (present); rex- (perfect); rect- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: rĕg-ens (gen. rĕgent-ĭs), *ruling.*
FUTURE: rect-ūrŭs, rect-ūrā, rect-ūrum, *about to rule.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

rĕg-ō,	*I rule*	rĕg-ĭmŭs,	*we rule*
rĕg-ĭs,	*thou rulest*	rĕg-ĭtĭs,	*ye rule*
rĕg-ĭt,	*he rules*	rĕg-unt,	*they rule*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

rĕg-ēbam,	*I was ruling*	rĕg-ēbāmŭs,	*we were ruling*
rĕg-ēbās,	*thou wast ruling*	rĕg-ēbātĭs,	*ye were ruling*
rĕg-ēbăt,	*he was ruling*	rĕg-ēbant,	*they were ruling*

FUTURE TENSE.

rĕg-am,	*I shall rule*	rĕg-ēmŭs,	*we shall rule*
rĕg-ēs,	*thou wilt rule*	rĕg-ētĭs,	*ye will rule*
rĕg-ĕt,	*he will rule*	rĕg-ent,	*they will rule*

PERFECT TENSE.

rex-ī,	*I ruled* or *have ruled*	rex-ĭmŭs,	*we ruled* or *have ruled*
rex-istī,	*thou ruledst* or *hast ruled*	rex-istĭs,	*ye ruled* or *have ruled*
rex-ĭt,	*he ruled* or *has ruled*	rex-ērunt or rex-ērĕ,	*they ruled* or *have ruled*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rex-ĕram,	*I had ruled*	rex-ĕrāmŭs,	*we had ruled*
rex-ĕrās,	*thou hadst ruled*	rex-ĕrātĭs,	*ye had ruled*
rex-ĕrăt,	*he had ruled*	rex-ĕrant,	*they had ruled*

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

rex-ĕrō,	*I shall have ruled*	rex-ĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall have ruled*
rex-ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have ruled*	rex-ĕrĭtĭs,	*ye will have ruled*
rex-ĕrĭt,	*he will have ruled*	rex-ĕrint,	*they will have ruled*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
rĕg-am,	*I should rule*	(*if*) *I were to rule*
rĕg-ās,	*thou wouldst rule*	(*in order that*) *I may rule*
rĕg-ăt,	*he would rule*	(*so that*) *I rule*
rĕg-āmŭs,	*we should rule*	(*although*) *I rule*
rĕg-ātĭs,	*ye would rule*	
rĕg-ant,	*they would rule*	
	IMPERFECT TENSE.	
rĕg-ĕrem,	*I should be ruling*	(*if*) *I were ruling*
rĕg-ĕrēs,	*thou wouldst be ruling*	(*in order that*) *I might rule*
rĕg-ĕrĕt,	*he would be ruling*	(*so that*) *I ruled*
rĕg-ĕrēmŭs,	*we should be ruling*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I was ruling*
rĕg-ĕrētĭs,	*ye would be ruling*	
rĕg-ĕrent,	*they would be ruling*	
	PERFECT TENSE.	
rex-ĕrim	rare in principal sentences	(*if*) *I were to have ruled*
rex-ĕrĭs		(*so that*) *I ruled* or *have ruled*
rex-ĕrĭt		(*although*) *I have ruled*
rex-ĕrĭmŭs		
rex-ĕrĭtĭs		
rex-ĕrint		
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
rex-issem,	*I should have ruled*	(*if*) *I had ruled*
rex-issēs,	*thou wouldst have ruled*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I had ruled*
rex-issĕt,	*he would have ruled*	
rex-issēmŭs,	*we should have ruled*	
rex-issētĭs,	*ye would have ruled*	
rex-issent,	*they would have ruled*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

rĕg-ĕ,	*rule* (*thou*)	rĕg-ĭtĕ,	*rule* (*ye*)

FUTURE TENSE.

rĕg-ĭtō,	*thou shalt* or *must rule*	rĕg-ĭtōtĕ,	*ye shall* or *must rule*
rĕg-ĭtō,	*he shall* or *must rule*	rĕg-untō,	*they shall* or *must rule*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: rĕg-ĕrĕ, *to rule*
PERFECT: rex-issĕ, *to have ruled*
FUTURE: rectūr-ŭs essĕ, *to be about to rule*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* rĕg-endum)
Acc. rĕg-endum, *ruling*
Gen. rĕg-endī
Dat. rĕg-endō
Abl. rĕg-endō

SUPINE.

Acc. rect-um, *to rule* | *Abl.* rect-ū, *in ruling*

§ 151. FOURTH (OR I) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

MODEL: audĭō, *I hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: aud-īrĕ, audīv-ī, audīt-um.

BASES: aud- (present); audīv- (perfect); audīt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: aud-ĭens (gen. audĭent-ĭs), *hearing.* FUTURE: audīt-ūrŭs, audīt-ūrā, audīt-ūrum, *about to hear.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-ĭō,	*I hear*	aud-īmŭs,	*we hear*
aud-īs,	*thou hearest*	aud-ītĭs,	*ye hear*
aud-ĭt,	*he hears*	aud-ĭunt,	*they hear*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-ĭēbam,	*I was hearing*	aud-ĭēbāmŭs,	*we were hearing*
aud-ĭēbās,	*thou wast hearing*	aud-ĭēbātĭs,	*ye were hearing*
aud-ĭēbăt,	*he was hearing*	aud-ĭēbant,	*they were hearing*

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-ĭam,	*I shall hear*	aud-ĭēmŭs,	*we shall hear*
aud-ĭēs,	*thou wilt hear*	aud-ĭētĭs,	*ye will hear*
aud-ĭēt,	*he will hear*	aud-ĭent,	*they will hear*

PERFECT TENSE.

audīv-ī,	*I heard* or *have heard*	audīv-ĭmŭs,	*we heard* or *have heard*
audīv-istī,	*thou heardst* or *hast heard*	audīv-istĭs,	*ye heard* or *have heard*
audīv-ĭt,	*he heard* or *has heard*	audīv-ērunt or audīv-ērĕ,	*they heard* or *have heard*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audīv-ĕram,	*I had heard*	audīv-ĕrāmŭs,	*we had heard*
audīv-ĕrās,	*thou hadst heard*	audīv-ĕrātĭs,	*ye had heard*
audīv-ĕrăt,	*he had heard*	audīv-ĕrant,	*they had heard*

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

audīv-ĕrō,	*I shall have heard*	audīv-ĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall have heard*
audīv-ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have heard*	audīv-ĕrĭtĭs,	*ye will have heard*
audīv-ĕrĭt,	*he will have heard*	audīv-ĕrint,	*they will have heard*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
PRESENT TENSE.		
aud-ĭam,	*I should hear*	(*if*) *I were to hear*
aud-ĭās,	*thou wouldst hear*	(*in order that*) *I may hear*
aud-ĭăt,	*he would hear*	(*so that*) *I hear*
aud-ĭāmŭs,	*we should hear*	(*although*) *I hear*
aud-ĭātĭs,	*ye would hear*	
aud-ĭant,	*they would hear*	
IMPERFECT TENSE.		
aud-īrem,	*I should be hearing*	(*if*) *I were hearing*
aud-īrēs,	*thou wouldst be hearing*	(*in order that*) *I might hear*
aud-īrĕt,	*he would be hearing*	(*so that*) *I heard*
aud-īrēmŭs,	*we should be hearing*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I was hearing*
aud-īrētĭs,	*ye would be hearing*	
aud-īrent,	*they would be hearing*	
PERFECT TENSE.		
audīv-ĕrim audīv-ĕrĭs audīv-ĕrĭt audīv-ĕrĭmŭs audīv-ĕrĭtĭs audīv-ĕrint	rare in principal sentences	(*if*) *I were to have heard* (*so that*) *I heard* or *have heard* (*although*) *I have heard*
PLUPERFECT TENSE.		
audīv-issem,	*I should have heard*	(*if*) *I had heard*
audīv-issēs,	*thou wouldst have heard*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I had heard*
audīv-issĕt,	*he would have heard*	
audīv-issēmŭs,	*we should have heard*	
audīv-issētĭs,	*ye would have heard*	
audīv-issent,	*they would have heard*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-ī,	***hear*** (***thou***)	aud-ītĕ,	*hear* (*ye*)

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-ītō,	*thou shalt* or *must hear*	aud-ītōtĕ,	*ye shall* or *must hear*
aud-ītō,	*he shall* or *must hear*	aud-ĭuntō,	*they shall* or *must hear*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: aud-īrĕ, *to hear*
PERFECT: audīv-issĕ, *to have heard*
FUTURE: audītūr-ŭs essĕ, *to be about to hear*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* aud-ĭendum)
Acc. aud-ĭendum, *hearing*
Gen. aud-ĭendī
Dat. aud-ĭendō
Abl. aud-ĭendō

SUPINE.

Acc. audīt-um, *to hear* | *Abl.* audīt-ū, *in hearing*

Alternative Forms of Verbs (Active).

§ 152. *Imperfect Indicative.*—In the fourth conjugation **ī** is occasionally found instead of **ĭē** before the **b**; *e.g.* **audībant** is sometimes used for the ordinary form **audiēbant.**

§ 153. *Tenses formed from the Perfect Base.*—Most verbs of which the perfect base ends in **v** have also a shorter form of their perfect tenses without the **v.** In such forms the absence of **v** leads (except in the case of **ie**, and sometimes of **ii**) to a contraction of vowels in which the latter vowel disappears; *e.g.*—

		First Conjugation.		*Fourth Conjugation.*	
		Longer Form.	Shorter Form.	Longer Form.	Shorter Form.
Indic.	Perf.	**ămāvistī**	**ămastī**	**audīvistī**	**audiistī** **audistī**
,,	,,	——	——	**audīvĭt**	**audiĭt**
,,	,,	**ămāvistĭs**	**ămastĭs**	**audīvistĭs**	**audiistĭs** **audistĭs**
,,	,,	**ămāvērunt**	**ămārunt**	**audīvērunt**	**audiērunt**
,,	,,	——	——	**audīvērĕ**	**audiērĕ**
,,	Plupf.	**ămāvēram**	**ămāram**	**audīvēram**	**audiēram**
,,	Fut.-Perf.	**ămāvērō**	**ămārō**	**audīvērō**	**audiērō**
Subj.	Perf.	**ămāvērim**	**ămārim**	**audīvērim**	**audiērim**
,,	Plupf.	**ămāvissem**	**ămassem**	**audīvissem**	**audiissem** **audissem**
Inf.	Perf.	**ămāvissĕ**	**ămassĕ**	**audīvissĕ**	**audiissĕ** **audissĕ**

Obs. 1. The shorter forms are hardly ever found in the perfect indicative (1) in the first person, singular or plural, (2) in the third person singular of the first conjugation, (3) in the third person plural ending in **-rĕ** in the first conjugation, as a form such as **ămārĕ** (for **ămāvērĕ**) would not be distinguishable from the present infinitive. In other tenses the shorter forms occur in all three persons both singular and plural.

Obs. 2. Where no contraction of vowels takes place in the shorter forms, *i.e.* with **ie** and sometimes with **ii**, the former vowel is short; *e.g.* **audĭērĕ** (longer form **audīvērĕ**), **audĭĭt** (longer form **audīvĭt**).

§ 154. *Future-Perfect Indicative and Perfect Subjunctive.*—In the first person plural and the second person singular and plural of these tenses the **i** following the **r** in the suffix is in the tables marked short (*e.g.* **audīvērĭmŭs, audīvērĭs, audīvērĭtĭs**), and it is usually so pronounced. This **i** is, however, occasionally found long; *e.g.* from **audĭō** we have in one passage **audĭērīs** (= **audīvērīs**), and in other places forms occur corresponding to **audīvērīmŭs, audīvērītĭs.**

§ 155. *Gerund.*—For the ending **-undum**, see § 161.

Additional Tenses of Verbs (Active).

§ 156. The future participle of any verb may be used with the indicative or subjunctive or the infinitive (present or perfect) of the verb **sum**, *I am*, as shown below.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

With the Present Tense.

ămātūr-ŭs sum, *I am about to love*	**ămātūr-ī sŭmŭs**, *we are about to love*
ămātūr-ŭs ĕs, *thou art about to love*	**ămātūr-ī estĭs**, *ye are about to love*
ămātūr-ŭs est, *he is about to love*	**ămātūr-ī sunt**, *they are about to love*

With the Imperfect Tense.

ămātūr-ŭs ĕram, *I was about to love.* etc. etc.

With the Future Tense.

ămātūr-ŭs ĕrō, *I shall be about to love.* etc. etc.

With the Perfect Tense.

ămātūr-ŭs fŭī, *I was* or *have been about to love.* etc. etc.

With the Pluperfect Tense.

ămātūr-ŭs fŭĕram, *I had been about to love.* etc. etc.

With the Future-Perfect Tense.

ămātūr-ŭs fŭĕrō, *I shall have been about to love.* etc. etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

With the Present Tense.

ămātūr-ŭs sim.

With the Imperfect Tense.

ămātūr-ŭs essem (or **fŏrem**).

With the Perfect Tense.

ămātūr-ŭs fŭĕrim.

With the Pluperfect Tense.

ămātūr-ŭs fŭissem.

INFINITIVE.

With the Present Tense: **ămātūr-ŭs essĕ**, *to be about to love.*

" " Perfect " **ămātūr-ŭs fŭissĕ**, *to have been about to love.*

Obs. The future participle, being an adjective, must be in the same gender, number, and case as the substantive to which it refers: *e.g.* **rex ămātūrŭs est**, *the king is about to love;* **rēgīnă ămātūră est**, *the queen is about to love.* Cp. § 122, *Obs.*

§ 157. FIRST (OR A) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL: ămō, *I love, I like.*

BASES: ăm- (present); ămāv- (perfect); ămāt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT: ămāt-ŭs, ămāt-ă, ămāt-um, *loved* or *having been loved.* / GERUNDIVE: ăm-andŭs, ăm-andă, ăm-andum, *fit to be loved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

ăm-ŏr,	*I am loved*	ăm-āmŭr,	*we are loved*
ăm-ārĭs,	*thou art loved*	ăm-āmĭnī,	*ye are loved*
ăm-ātŭr,	*he is loved*	ăm-antŭr,	*they are loved*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

ăm-ābăr,	*I was being loved*	ăm-ābāmŭr,	*we were being loved*
ăm-ābārĭs or ăm-ābārĕ,	*thou wast being loved*	ăm-ābāmĭnī,	*ye were being loved*
ăm-ābātŭr,	*he was being loved*	ăm-ābantŭr,	*they were being loved*

FUTURE TENSE.

ăm-ābŏr,	*I shall be loved*	ăm-ābĭmŭr,	*we shall be loved*
ăm-ābĕrĭs or ăm-ābĕrĕ,	*thou wilt be loved*	ăm-ābĭmĭnī,	*ye will be loved*
ăm-ābĭtŭr,	*he will be loved*	ăm-ābuntŭr,	*they will be loved*

PERFECT TENSE.

ămāt-ŭs sum,	*I was* or *have been loved*	ămāt-ī sŭmŭs,	*we were* or *have been loved*
ămāt-ŭs ĕs,	*thou wast* or *hast been loved*	ămāt-ī estĭs,	*ye were* or *have been loved*
ămāt-ŭs est,	*he was* or *has been loved*	ămāt-ī sunt,	*they were* or *have been loved*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

ămāt-ŭs ĕram,	*I had*	ămāt-ī ĕrāmŭs,	*we had*
ămāt-ŭs ĕrās,	*thou hadst*	ămāt-ī ĕrātĭs,	*ye had*
ămāt-ŭs ĕrăt,	*he had*	ămāt-ī ĕrant,	*they had*
	} *been loved*		} *been loved*

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

ămāt-ŭs ĕrō,	*I shall*	ămāt-ī ĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall*
ămāt-ŭs ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt*	ămāt-ī ĕrĭtĭs,	*ye will*
ămāt-ŭs ĕrĭt,	*he will*	ămāt-ī ĕrunt,	*they will*
	} *have been loved*		} *have been loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
ăm-ĕr,	*I should be loved*	(*if*) *I were to be loved*
ăm-ērĭs or ăm-ērĕ,	*thou wouldst be loved*	(*in order that*) *I may be loved*
ăm-ētŭr,	*he would be loved*	(*so that*) *I am loved*
ăm-ēmŭr,	*we should be loved*	(*although*) *I am loved*
ăm-ēmĭnī,	*ye would be loved*	
ăm-entŭr,	*they would be loved*	
	IMPERFECT TENSE.	
ăm-ārĕr,	*I should be loved*	(*if*) *I were being loved*
ăm-ārērĭs or ăm-ārērĕ,	*thou wouldst be loved*	(*in order that*) *I might be loved*
ăm-ārētŭr,	*he would be loved*	(*so that*) *I was loved*
ăm-ārēmŭr,	*we should be loved*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I was being loved*
ăm-ārēmĭnī,	*ye would be loved*	
ăm-ārentŭr,	*they would be loved*	
	PERFECT TENSE.	
ămāt-ŭs sim ămāt-ŭs sīs ămāt-ŭs sĭt ămāt-ī sīmŭs ămāt-ī sītĭs ămāt-ī sint	rare in principal sentences	(*if*) *I were to have been loved* (*so that*) *I was loved* or *have been loved* (*although*) *I have been loved*
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
ămāt-ŭs essem,	*I should have been loved*	(*if*) *I had been loved*
ămāt-ŭs essēs,	*thou wouldst have been loved*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I had been loved*
ămāt-ŭs essĕt,	*he would have been loved*	
ămāt-ī essēmŭs,	*we should have been loved*	
ămāt-ī essētĭs,	*ye would have been loved*	
ămāt-ī essent,	*they would have been loved*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

ăm-ārĕ,	*be* (*thou*) *loved*	ăm-āmĭnī,	*be* (*ye*) *loved*

FUTURE TENSE.

ăm-ātŏr,	*thou shalt* or *must be loved*	ăm-antŏr,	*they shall* or *must be loved*
ăm-ātŏr,	*he shall* or *must be loved*		

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: ăm-ārī, *to be loved*
PERFECT: ămāt-ŭs essĕ, *to have been loved*
FUTURE: ămātum īrī *to be about to be loved*

§ 158. SECOND (OR E) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL : mŏnĕō, *I advise.*

BASES : mŏn- (present) ; mŏnŭ- (perfect) ; mŏnĭt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT : mŏnĭt-ŭs, mŏnĭt-ă, mŏnĭt-um, *advised* or *having been advised.*
GERUNDIVE : mŏn-endŭs, mŏn-endă, mŏn-endum, *fit to be advised.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mŏn-ĕŏr,	*I am advised*	mŏn-ēmŭr,	*we are advised*
mŏn-ērĭs,	*thou art advised*	mŏn-ēmĭnī,	*ye are advised*
mŏn-ētŭr,	*he is advised*	mŏn-entŭr,	*they are advised*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mŏn ēbăr,	*I was being advised*	mŏn-ēbāmŭr,	*we were being advised*
mŏn-ēbārĭs or mŏn-ēbārē,	*thou wast being advised*	mŏn-ēbāmĭnī,	*ye were being advised*
mŏn-ēbātŭr,	*he was being advised*	mŏn-ēbantŭr,	*they were being advised*

FUTURE TENSE.

mŏn-ēbŏr,	*I shall be advised*	mŏn-ēbĭmŭr,	*we shall be advised*
mŏn-ēbĕrĭs or mŏn-ēbĕrē,	*thou wilt be advised*	mŏn-ēbĭmĭnī,	*ye will be advised*
mŏn-ēbĭtŭr,	*he will be advised*	mŏn-ēbuntŭr,	*they will be advised*

PERFECT TENSE.

mŏnĭt-ŭs sum,	*I was* or *have been advised*	mŏnĭt-ī sŭmŭs,	*we were* or *have been advised*
mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕs,	*thou wast* or *hast been advised*	mŏnĭt-ī estĭs,	*ye were* or *have been advised*
mŏnĭt-ŭs est,	*he was* or *has been advised*	mŏnĭt-ī sunt,	*they were* or *have been advised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕram,	*I had been advised*	mŏnĭt-ī ĕrāmŭs,	*we had been advised*
mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrās,	*thou hadst been advised*	mŏnĭt-ī ĕrātĭs,	*ye had been advised*
mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrăt,	*he had been advised*	mŏnĭt-ī ĕrant,	*they had been advised*

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrō,	*I shall have been advised*	mŏnĭt-ī ĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall have been advised*
mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been advised*	mŏnĭt-ī ĕrĭtĭs,	*ye will have been advised*
mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrĭt,	*he will have been advised*	mŏnĭt-ī ĕrunt,	*they will have been advised*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
mŏn-ĕăr,	*I should be advised*	(*if*) *I were to be advised* (*in order that*) *I may be advised* (*so that*) *I am advised* (*although*) *I am advised*
mŏn-ĕārĭs or **mŏn-ĕārĕ,**	*thou wouldst be advised*	
mŏn-ĕātŭr,	*he would be advised*	
mŏn-ĕāmŭr,	*we should be advised*	
mŏn-ĕāmĭnī,	*ye would be advised*	
mŏn-ĕantŭr,	*they would be advised*	
	IMPERFECT TENSE.	
mŏn-ērĕr,	*I should be advised*	(*if*) *I were being advised* (*in order that*) *I might be advised* (*so that*) *I was advised* (*when, although,* etc.) *I was being advised*
mŏn-ērērĭs or **mŏn-ērērĕ,**	*thou wouldst be advised*	
mŏn-ērētŭr,	*he would be advised*	
mŏn-ērēmŭr,	*we should be advised*	
mŏn-ērēmĭnī,	*ye would be advised*	
mŏn-ērentŭr,	*they would be advised*	
	PERFECT TENSE.	
mŏnĭt-ŭs sim **mŏnĭt-ŭs sīs** **mŏnĭt-ŭs sĭt** **mŏnĭt-ī sīmŭs** **mŏnĭt-ī sītĭs** **mŏnĭt-ī sint**	rare in principal sentences	(*if*) *I were to have been advised* (*so that*) *I was advised* or *have been advised* (*although*) *I have been advised*
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
mŏnĭt-ŭs essem,	*I should have been advised*	(*if*) *I had been advised* (*when, although,* etc.) *I had been advised*
mŏnĭt-ŭs essēs,	*thou wouldst have been advised*	
mŏnĭt-ŭs essĕt,	*he would have been advised*	
mŏnĭt-ī essēmŭs,	*we should have been advised*	
mŏnĭt-ī essētĭs,	*ye would have been advised*	
mŏnĭt-ī essent,	*they would have been advised*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mŏn-ērĕ, *be (thou) advised* | **mŏn-ēmĭnī,** *be (ye) advised*

FUTURE TENSE.

mŏn-ētŏr, *thou must be advised*
mŏn-ētŏr, *he must be advised* | **mŏn-entŏr,** *they must be advised*

INFINITIVE:

PRESENT: **mŏn-ērī,** *to be advised*
PERFECT: **mŏnĭt-ŭs essĕ,** *to have been advised*
FUTURE: **mŏnĭtum īrī,** *to be about to be advised*

§ 159. THIRD (OR CONSONANT) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL: rĕgō, *I rule.*

BASES: rĕg- (present); rex- (perfect); rect- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT: rect-ŭs, rect-ă, rect-um, *ruled* or *having been ruled.* / GERUNDIVE: rĕg-endŭs, rĕg-endă, rĕg-endum, *fit to be ruled.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

rĕg-ŏr,	*I am ruled*	rĕg-ĭmŭr,	*we are ruled*
rĕg-ĕrĭs,	*thou art ruled*	rĕg-ĭmĭnī,	*ye are ruled*
rĕg-ĭtŭr,	*he is ruled*	rĕg-untŭr,	*they are ruled*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

rĕg-ēbăr,	*I was being ruled*	rĕg-ēbāmŭr,	*we were being ruled*
rĕg-ēbārĭs or rĕg-ēbārĕ,	*thou wast being ruled*	rĕg-ēbāmĭnī,	*ye were being ruled*
rĕg-ēbātŭr,	*he was being ruled*	rĕg-ēbantŭr,	*they were being ruled*

FUTURE TENSE.

rĕg-ăr,	*I shall be ruled*	rĕg-ēmŭr,	*we shall be ruled*
rĕg-ērĭs or rĕg-ērĕ	*thou wilt be ruled*	rĕg-ēmĭnī,	*ye will be ruled*
rĕg-ētŭr,	*he will be ruled*	rĕg-entŭr,	*they will be ruled*

PERFECT TENSE.

rect-ŭs sum,	*I was* or *have been ruled*	rect-ī sŭmŭs,	*we were* or *have been ruled*
rect-ŭs ĕs,	*thou wast* or *hast been ruled*	rect-ī estĭs,	*ye were* or *have been ruled*
rect-ŭs est,	*he was* or *has been ruled*	rect-ī sunt,	*they were* or *have been ruled*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rect-ŭs ĕram,	*I had*	rect-ī ĕrāmŭs,	*we had*
rect-ŭs ĕrās,	*thou hadst*	rect-ī ĕrātĭs,	*ye had*
rect-ŭs ĕrăt,	*he had*	rect-ī ĕrant,	*they had*

been ruled

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

rect-ŭs ĕrō,	*I shall*	rect-ī ĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall*
rect-ŭs ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt*	rect-ī ĕrĭtĭs,	*ye will*
rect-ŭs ĕrĭt,	*he will*	rect-ī ĕrunt,	*they will*

have been ruled

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
PRESENT TENSE.		
rĕg-ăr,	*I should be ruled*	(*if*) *I were to be ruled*
rĕg-ārĭs or rĕg-ārĕ,	*thou wouldst be ruled*	(*in order that*) *I may be ruled*
rĕg-ātŭr,	*he would be ruled*	(*so that*) *I am ruled*
rĕg-āmŭr,	*we should be ruled*	(*although*) *I am ruled*
rĕg-āmĭnī,	*ye would be ruled*	
rĕg-antŭr,	*they would be ruled*	
IMPERFECT TENSE.		
rĕg-ĕrĕr,	*I should be ruled*	(*if*) *I were being ruled*
rĕg-ĕrērĭs or rĕg-ĕrērĕ,	*thou wouldst be ruled*	(*in order that*) *I might be ruled*
rĕg-ĕrētŭr,	*he would be ruled*	(*so that*) *I was ruled*
rĕg-ĕrēmŭr,	*we should be ruled*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I was being ruled*
rĕg-ĕrēmĭnī,	*ye would be ruled*	
rĕg-ĕrentŭr,	*they would be ruled*	
PERFECT TENSE.		
rect-ŭs sim rect-ŭs sīs rect-ŭs sĭt rect-ī sīmŭs rect-ī sītĭs rect-ī sint	rare in principal sentences	(*if*) *I were to have been ruled* (*so that*) *I was ruled* or *have been ruled* (*although*) *I have been ruled*
PLUPERFECT TENSE.		
rect-ŭs essem,	*I should have been ruled*	(*if*) *I had been ruled*
rect-ŭs essēs,	*thou wouldst have been ruled*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I had been ruled*
rect-ŭs essĕt,	*he would have been ruled*	
rect-ī essēmŭs,	*we should have been ruled*	
rect-ī essētĭs,	*ye would have been ruled*	
rect-ī essent,	*they would have been ruled*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

rĕg-ĕrĕ,	*be (thou) ruled*	**rĕg-ĭmĭnī,**	*be (ye) ruled*

FUTURE TENSE.

rĕg-ĭtŏr,	*thou must be ruled*		
rĕg-ĭtŏr,	*he must be ruled*	**rĕg-untŏr,**	*they must be ruled*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **rĕg-ī,** *to be ruled*
PERFECT: **rect-ŭs essĕ,** *to have been ruled*
FUTURE: **rectum īrī,** *to be about to be ruled*

§ 160. FOURTH (OR I) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL: audĭō, *I hear.*

BASES: aud- (present); audīv- (perfect); audīt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT: audīt-ŭs, audīt-ă, audīt-um, *heard* or *having been heard*
GERUNDIVE: aud-ĭendŭs, aud-ĭendă, aud-ĭendum, *fit to be heard*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-ĭŏr,	*I am heard*	aud-īmŭr,	*we are heard*
aud-īrĭs,	*thou art heard*	aud-īmĭnī,	*ye are heard*
aud-ītŭr,	*he is heard*	aud-ĭuntŭr,	*they are heard*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-ĭēbăr,	*I was being heard*	aud-ĭēbāmŭr,	*we were being heard*
aud-ĭēbārĭs or aud-ĭēbārĕ,	*thou wast being heard*	aud-ĭēbāmĭnī,	*ye were being heard*
aud-ĭēbātŭr,	*he was being heard*	aud-ĭēbantŭr,	*they were being heard*

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-ĭăr,	*I shall be heard*	aud-ĭēmŭr,	*we shall be heard*
aud-ĭērĭs or aud-ĭērĕ,	*thou wilt be heard*	aud-ĭēmĭnī,	*ye will be heard*
aud-ĭētŭr,	*he will be heard*	aud-ĭentŭr,	*they will be heard*

PERFECT TENSE.

audīt-ŭs sum,	*I was* or *have been heard*	audīt-ī sŭmŭs,	*we were* or *have been heard*
audīt-ŭs ĕs,	*thou wast* or *hast been heard*	audīt-ī estĭs,	*ye were* or *have been heard*
audīt-ŭs est,	*he was* or *has been heard*	audīt-ī sunt,	*they were* or *have been heard*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audīt-ŭs ĕram,	*I had*	audīt-ī ĕrāmŭs,	*we had*
audīt-ŭs ĕrās,	*thou hadst*	audīt-ī ĕrātĭs,	*ye had*
audīt-ŭs ĕrăt,	*he had*	audīt-ī ĕrant,	*they had*

been heard

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

audīt-ŭs ĕrō,	*I shall*	audīt-ī ĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall*
audīt-ŭs ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt*	audīt-ī ĕrĭtĭs,	*ye will*
audīt-ŭs ĕrĭt,	*he will*	audīt-ī ĕrunt,	*they will*

have been heard

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
PRESENT TENSE.		
aud-ĭār,	*I should be heard*	(*if*) *I were to be heard* (*in order that*) *I may be heard* (*so that*) *I am heard* (*although*) *I am heard*
aud-īārĭs or **aud-īārĕ,**	*thou wouldst be heard*	
aud-īātŭr,	*he would be heard*	
aud-īāmŭr,	*we should be heard*	
aud-īāmĭnī,	*ye would be heard*	
aud-ĭantŭr,	*they would be heard*	
IMPERFECT TENSE.		
aud-īrĕr,	*I should be heard*	(*if*) *I were being heard* (*in order that*) *I might be heard* (*so that*) *I was heard* (*when, although*, etc.) *I was being heard*
aud-īrērĭs or **aud-īrērĕ,**	*thou wouldst be heard*	
aud-īrētŭr,	*he would be heard*	
aud-īrēmŭr,	*we should be heard*	
aud-īrēmĭnī,	*ye would be heard*	
aud-īrentŭr,	*they would be heard*	
PERFECT TENSE.		
audīt-ŭs sim **audīt-ŭs sīs** **audīt-ŭs sĭt** **audīt-ī sīmŭs** **audīt-ī sītĭs** **audīt-ī sint**	rare in principal sentences	(*if*) *I were to have been heard* (*so that*) *I was heard* or *have been heard* (*although*) *I have been heard*
PLUPERFECT TENSE.		
audīt-ŭs essem,	*I should have been heard*	(*if*) *I had been heard* (*when, although*, etc.) *I had been heard*
audīt-ŭs essēs,	*thou wouldst have been heard*	
audīt-ŭs essĕt,	*he would have been heard*	
audīt-ī essēmŭs,	*we should have been heard*	
audīt-ī essētĭs,	*ye would have been heard*	
audīt-ī essent,	*they would have been heard*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-īrĕ, *be (thou) heard* | **aud-īmĭnī,** *be (ye) heard*

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-ītŏr, *thou must be heard*
aud-ītŏr, *he must be heard* | **aud-ĭuntŏr,** *they must be heard*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **aud-īrī,** *to be heard*
PERFECT: **audīt-ŭs essĕ,** *to have been heard*
FUTURE: **audītum īrī,** *to be about to be heard*

Alternative Forms of Verbs (Passive).

§ 161. *Gerundive.* In the third and fourth conjugations the terminations -und-ŭs, -ĭund-ŭs, are sometimes used instead of -end-ŭs, -ĭend-ŭs; thus we find rĕgundŭs for the more usual rĕgendŭs, and forms corresponding to audĭundŭs instead of to audĭendŭs.

[A similar variation is found in the gerund; *e.g.* pĕtundī (genitive), from pĕtō, *I seek;* vĕnĭundum (nominative), from vĕnĭō, *I come.*]

§ 162. *Pluperfect Subjunctive.*—This tense consists of the perfect participle of the verb and the imperfect subjunctive of sum. On reference to § 134 it will be seen that the latter has two forms, essem and fŏrem, essēs and fŏrēs, etc. Either of these may be used in the formation of the pluperfect subjunctive, though only the more usual form (essem, etc.) is, to save space, given in the preceding tables.

Thus, the pluperfect subjunctive passive of ămō may be conjugated as follows:—

ămāt-ŭs fŏrem, *I should have been loved*	ămāt-ī fŏrēmŭs, *we should have been loved*
ămāt-ŭs fŏrēs, *thou wouldst have been loved*	ămāt-ī fŏrētĭs, *ye would have been loved*
ămāt-ŭs fŏrĕt, *he would have been loved*	ămāt-ī fŏrent, *they would have been loved*

§ 163. *Present Infinitive.*—A longer form, common in early Latin, is occasionally found in the poetry of the classical age; it consists of the ordinary present infinitive passive (of which the final ī is shortened) and the syllable -ĕr. The following are examples:—

	Present Indic. Act.		Pres. Inf. Pass.	Pres. Inf. Pass. (old form).
First Conjugation	cūr-ō,	*I care for*	cūr-ārī	cūr-ārĭĕr
	laud-ō,	*I praise*	laud-ārī	laud-ārĭĕr
Second Conjugation	immisc-ĕō,	*I mingle*	immisc-ērī	immisc-ērĭĕr
	torqu-ĕō,	*I twist*	torqu-ērī	torqu-ērĭĕr
Third Conjugation	admitt-ō,	*I admit*	admitt-ī	admitt-ĭĕr
	dēfend-ō,	*I defend*	dēfend-ī	dēfend-ĭĕr
Fourth Conjugation	moll-ĭō,	*I soften*	moll-īrī	moll-īrĭĕr
	rĕpĕr-ĭō,	*I find*	rĕpĕr-īrī	rĕpĕr-īrĭĕr

Additional Tenses of Verbs (Passive).

§ 164. The perfect participle is frequently found in combination with one or other of those portions of the verb **sum**, *I am*, which are formed from the perfect base, as shown below. To illustrate the exact meaning of these tenses (to which no special names have been given), it will be convenient to take, instead of one of the model verbs conjugated in this chapter, the verb

păr-ō, păr-ārĕ, părāv-ī, părāt-um, *I make ready*,

which has perfect participle părāt-ŭs, *ready* or *made ready*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

With the Perfect Tense.

părāt-ŭs fŭī, *I was ready*	**părāt-ī fŭĭmŭs**, *we were ready*
părāt-ŭs fŭistī, *thou wast ready*	**părāt-ī fŭistĭs**, *ye were ready*
părāt-ŭs fŭĭt, *he was ready*	**părāt-ī fŭērunt** or **fŭērĕ**, *they were ready*

With the Pluperfect Tense.

părāt-ŭs fŭĕram, *I had been ready*. etc. etc.

With the Future-Perfect Tense.

părāt-ŭs fŭĕrō, *I shall have been ready*. etc. etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

With the Perfect Tense.

părāt-ŭs fŭĕrim.

With the Pluperfect Tense.

părāt-ŭs fŭissem, *I should have been ready*.

INFINITIVE.

With the Perfect Tense : **părāt-ŭs fŭissĕ**, *to have been ready*.

Obs. The perfect participle with perfect indicative of **sum** is never used by the best writers as the equivalent of the perfect participle with the present indicative of **sum**, *e.g.* **părātŭs fŭī** means *I was ready*, never (like **părātŭs sum**) *I was made ready* or *I have been made ready*.

But the other tenses given above, though they have the assigned meanings where the sense admits it, are often respectively equivalent to the forms given in the tables (§§ 157—160), *e.g.* :—

ămātŭs fŭĕram = **ămātŭs ĕram**	**ămātŭs fŭĕrim** = **ămātŭs sim**
ămātŭs fŭĕrō = **ămātŭs ĕrō**	**ămātŭs fŭissem** = **ămātŭs essem**
ămātŭs fŭissĕ = **ămātŭs essĕ**.	

§ 165. *Future-Perfect Infinitive.* — This consists of the perfect participle followed by **fŏrĕ** (future infinitive of **sum**) ; *e.g.* **ămāt-ŭs fŏrĕ**, *to be about to have been loved*.

§ 166 PARADIGM OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—PRESENT BASE (ACTIVE).

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
ăm-ans mŏn- rĕg- aud-ĭ- } -ens	ăm-ārĕ mŏn-ērĕ rĕg-ĕrĕ aud-īrĕ	ăm-and-um mŏn- rĕg- aud-ĭ- } -end-um

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE	ăm-ō, -ās, -ăt, mŏn-ĕō, -ēs, -ĕt, rĕg-ō, -ĭs, -ĭt, aud-ĭō, -īs, -ĭt,	-āmŭs, -ātĭs, -ant -ēmŭs, -ētĭs, -ent -ĭmŭs, -ĭtĭs, -unt -īmus, -ītĭs, -ĭunt
IMPERFECT TENSE	ăm-ā- mŏn-ē- rĕg-ē- aud-ĭē- } -bam, -bās, -băt,	-bāmŭs, -bātĭs, -bant
FUTURE TENSE	ăm-ā- mŏn-ē- } -bō, -bĭs, -bĭt, rĕg- aud-ĭ- } -am, -ēs, -ĕt,	-bĭmŭs, -bĭtĭs, -bunt, -ēmŭs, -ētĭs, -ent

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE	ăm-em, -ēs, -ĕt, mŏn-ĕ- rĕg- aud-ĭ- } -am, -ās, -ăt,	-ēmŭs, -ētĭs, -ent -āmŭs, -ātĭs, -ant
IMPERFECT TENSE	ăm-ā- mŏn-ē- rĕg-ĕ- aud-ī- } -rem, -rēs, -rĕt,	-rēmŭs, -rētĭs, -rent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.	
ăm-ā, -ātĕ mŏn-ē, -ētĕ rĕg-ĕ, -ĭtĕ aud-ī, -ītĕ	ăm-ātō, -ātō, mŏn-ētō, -ētō, rĕg-ītō, -ĭtō, aud-ītō, -ītō,	-ātōtĕ, -antō -ētōtĕ, -entō -ĭtōtĕ, -untō -ītōtĕ, -ĭuntō

§ 167. Paradigm of the Four Conjugations.—Present Base (Passive).

Gerundive.	Present Infinitive.
ăm-and-ŭs mŏn- rĕg- aud-ĭ- } -end-ŭs	ăm-ārī mŏn-ērī rĕg-ī aud-īrī

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense	ăm-ŏr, -ārĭs, -ātŭr, mŏn-ĕŏr, -ērĭs, -ētŭr, rĕg-ŏr, -ĕrĭs, -ĭtŭr, aud-ĭŏr, -īrĭs, -ītŭr,	-āmŭr, -āmĭnī, -antŭr -ēmŭr, -ēmĭnī, -entŭr -ĭmŭr, -ĭmĭnī, -untŭr -īmŭr, -īmĭnī, -ĭuntŭr
Imperfect Tense	ăm-ā- mŏn-ē- rĕg-ē- aud-ĭē- } -băr, { -bārĭs, -bārĕ, } -bātŭr, -bāmŭr, -bāmĭnī, -bantŭr	
Future Tense	ăm-ā- mŏn-ē- } -bŏr, { -bĕrĭs, -bĕrĕ, } -bĭtŭr, -bĭmŭr, -bĭmĭnī, -buntŭr rĕg- aud-ĭ- } -ăr, { -ērĭs, -ērĕ, } -ētŭr, -ēmŭr, -ēmĭnī, -entŭr	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense	ăm-ĕr, -erĭs or -ērĕ, -ētŭr, mŏn-ĕ- rĕg- aud-ĭ- } -ăr, { -ārĭs, -ārĕ, } -ātŭr,	-ēmŭr, -ēmĭnī, -entŭr -āmŭr, -āmĭnī, -antŭr
Imperfect Tense	ăm-ā- mŏn-ē- rĕg-ĕ- aud-ī- } -rĕr, { -rērĭs, -rērĕ, } -rētŭr, -rēmŭr, -rēmĭnī, -rentŭr	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.	Future.
ăm-ārĕ, -āmĭnī mŏn-ērĕ, -ēmĭnī rĕg-ĕrĕ, -ĭmĭnī aud-īrĕ, -īmĭnī	ăm-ātŏr, -ātŏr, -antŏr mŏn-ētŏr, -ētŏr, -entŏr rĕg-ĭtŏr, -ĭtŏr, -untŏr aud-ītŏr, -ītŏr, -ĭuntŏr

§ 168. Paradigm of the Four Conjugations.—Perfect Base.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect Tense	ămāv- mŏnŭ- rex- audīv-	-ī, -istī, -ĭt, -ĭmŭs, -istĭs, -ērunt or -ērĕ
Pluperfect Tense	ămāv- mŏnŭ- rex- audīv-	-ĕram, -ĕrās, -ĕrăt, -ĕrāmŭs, -ĕrātĭs, -ĕrant
Future-Perfect Tense	ămāv- mŏnŭ- rex- audīv-	-ĕrō, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĭt, -ĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrĭtĭs, -ĕrint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perfect Tense	ămāv- mŏnŭ- rex- audīv-	-ĕrim, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĭt, -ĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrĭtĭs, -ĕrint
Pluperfect Tense	ămāv- mŏn-ŭ- rex- audīv-	-issem, -issēs, -issĕt, -issēmŭs, -issētĭs, -issent

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Perfect Tense	ămav- mŏnŭ- rex- audīv-	-issĕ

§ 169. Paradigm of the Four Conjugations.—Supine Base.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Future Participle.	Future Infinitive.	Supine.
ămāt- mŏnĭt- rect- audīt- } -ūr-ŭs	ămāt- mŏnĭt- rect- audīt- } -ūr-ŭs essĕ	ămāt- mŏnĭt- rect- audīt- } -um, -ū

PASSIVE VOICE.

Perfect Participle.	Perfect Infinitive.	Future Infinitive.
ămāt- mŏnĭt- rect- audīt- } -ŭs	ămāt- mŏnĭt- rect- audīt- } -ŭs essĕ	ămāt- mŏnĭt- rect- audīt- } -um īrī

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect Tense	ămāt- mŏnĭt- rect- audīt- } -ŭs sum, ĕs, est,	-ī sŭmŭs, estĭs, sunt
Pluperfect Tense	ămāt- mŏnĭt- rect- audīt- } -ŭs ĕram, ĕrās, ĕrăt,	-ī ĕrāmŭs, ĕrātĭs, ĕrant
Future-Perfect Tense	ămāt- mŏnĭt- rect- audīt- } -ŭs ĕrō, ĕrĭs, ĕrĭt,	-ī ĕrĭmŭs, ĕrĭtĭs, ĕrunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perfect Tense	ămāt- mŏnĭt- rect- audīt- } -ŭs sim, sīs, sĭt,	-ī sīmŭs, sītĭs, sint
Pluperfect Tense	ămāt- mŏnĭt- rect- audīt- } -ŭs essem, essēs, essĕt,	-ī essēmŭs, essētĭs, essent

CHAPTER XIX.—THIRD CONJUGATION, WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

§ 170. MODEL: căpĭō, *I take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: căp-ĭō, cēp-ī, capt-um.

BASES: căp- (present); cēp- (perfect); capt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: căp-ĭens (gen. căpĭent-ĭs), *taking.*
FUTURE: capt-ūrŭs, capt-ūră, capt-ūrum, *about to take.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I take.*)

căp-ĭō	căp-ĭmŭs
căp-ĭs	căp-ĭtĭs
căp-ĭt	căp-ĭunt

IMPERFECT. (*I was taking.*)

căp-ĭēbam	căp-ĭēbāmŭs
căp-ĭēbās	căp-ĭēbātĭs
căp-ĭēbăt	căp-ĭēbant

FUTURE. (*I shall take.*)

căp-ĭam	căp-ĭēmŭs
căp-ĭēs	căp-ĭētĭs
căp-ĭĕt	căp-ĭent

PERFECT. (*I took* or *have taken.*)

cēp-ī	cēp-ĭmŭs
cēp-istī	cēp-istĭs
cēp-ĭt	cēp-ērunt or cēp-ērĕ

PLUPERFECT. (*I had taken.*)

cēp-ĕram	cēp-ĕrāmŭs
cēp-ĕrās	cēp-ĕrātĭs
cēp-ĕrăt	cēp-ĕrant

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have taken.*)

cēp-ĕrō	cēp-ĕrĭmŭs
cēp-ĕrĭs	cēp-ĕrĭtĭs
cēp-ĕrĭt	cēp-ĕrint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should take.*)

căp-ĭam	căp-ĭāmŭs
căp-ĭās	căp-ĭātĭs
căp-ĭăt	căp-ĭant

IMPERFECT. (*I should be taking.*)

căp-ĕrem	căp-ĕrēmŭs
căp-ĕrēs	căp-ĕrētĭs
căp-ĕrĕt	căp-ĕrent

PERFECT.

cēp-ĕrim	cēp-ĕrĭmŭs
cēp-ĕrĭs	cēp-ĕrĭtĭs
cēp-ĕrĭt	cēp-ĕrint

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have taken.*)

cēp-issem	cēp-issēmŭs
cēp-issēs	cēp-issētĭs
cēp-issĕt	cēp-issent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Take.*)

căp-ĕ	căp-ĭtĕ

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must take.*)

căp-ĭtō	căp-ĭtōtĕ
căp-ĭtō	căp-ĭuntō

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: căp-ĕrĕ, *to take*
PERFECT: cēp-issĕ, *to have taken*
FUTURE: captūr-ŭs essĕ, *to be about to take*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* căp-ĭendum)
Acc. căp-ĭendum, *taking*
Gen. căp-ĭendī
Dat. căp-ĭendō
Abl. căp-ĭendō

SUPINE.

Acc. capt-um, *to take*
Abl. capt-ū, *in taking*

PASSIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT: **capt-ŭs, capt-ă, capt-um**, *taken* or *having been taken.* GERUNDIVE: **căp-ĭendŭs, căp-ĭendă, căp-ĭendum**, *fit to be taken.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am taken.*)

căp-ĭŏr	**căp-ĭmŭr**
căp-ĕrĭs	**căp-ĭmĭnī**
căp-ĭtŭr	**căp-ĭuntŭr**

IMPERFECT. (*I was being taken.*)

căp-ĭēbăr	**căp-ĭēbāmŭr**
căp-ĭēbārĭs or **căp-ĭēbārĕ**	**căp-ĭēbāmĭnī**
căp-ĭēbātŭr	**căp-ĭēbantŭr**

FUTURE. (*I shall be taken.*)

căp-ĭăr	**căp-ĭēmŭr**
căp-ĭērĭs or **căp-ĭērĕ**	**căp-ĭēmĭnī**
căp-ĭētŭr	**căp-ĭentŭr**

PERFECT. (*I was taken* or *have been taken.*)

capt-ŭs sum	**capt-ī sŭmŭs**
capt-ŭs ĕs	**capt-ī estĭs**
capt-ŭs est	**capt-ī sunt**

PLUPERFECT. (*I had been taken.*)

capt-ŭs ĕram	**capt-ī ĕrāmŭs**
capt-ŭs ĕrās	**capt-ī ĕrātĭs**
capt-ŭs ĕrăt	**capt-ī ĕrant**

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have been taken.*)

capt-ŭs ĕrō	**capt-ī ĕrĭmŭs**
capt-ŭs ĕrĭs	**capt-ī ĕrĭtĭs**
capt-ŭs ĕrĭt	**capt-ī ĕrunt**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am* or *may be taken.*)

căp-ĭăr	**căp-ĭāmŭr**
căp-ĭārĭs or **căp-ĭārĕ**	**căp-ĭāmĭnī**
căp-ĭātŭr	**căp-ĭantŭr**

IMPERFECT. (*I was* or *might be taken.*)

căp-ĕrĕr	**căp-ĕrēmŭr**
căp-ĕrērĭs or **căp-ĕrērĕ**	**căp-ĕrēmĭnī**
căp-ĕrētŭr	**căp-ĕrentŭr**

PERFECT.

capt-ŭs sim	**capt-ī sīmŭs**
capt-ŭs sīs	**capt-ī sītĭs**
capt-ŭs sĭt	**capt-ī sint**

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have been taken.*)

capt-ŭs essem	**capt-ī essēmŭs**
capt-ŭs essēs	**capt-ī essētĭs**
capt-ŭs essĕt	**capt-ī essent**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Be taken.*)

căp-ĕrĕ	**căp-ĭmĭnī**

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must be taken.*)

căp-ĭtŏr	
căp-ĭtŏr	**căp-ĭuntŏr**

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **căp-ī**, *to be taken.*
PERFECT: **capt-ŭs essĕ**, *to have been taken.*
FUTURE: **captum īrī**, *to be about to be taken.*

All verbs of the third conjugation (*i.e.* with pres. inf. act. ending in **-ĕrĕ**) which in the pres. indic. act. end in **-ĭō** are conjugated like **căpĭō**, as also are deponents of the third conjugation ending in **-ĭŏr**. A list of these verbs is given in §§ 190, 195.

Obs. **Căpĭō** is conjugated like **audĭō** in those parts in which the **i** of **audĭō** is followed by a vowel, *i.e.* in which the **i** is short (**ĭ**); in other parts **căpĭō** is conjugated like **rĕgō**.

CHAPTER XX.—DEPONENT VERBS.

§ **171.** As already stated (§ 120, NOTE 2), some Latin verbs which are conjugated in the passive only are the equivalents of English active verbs; such verbs are called *deponents*, because they were considered by the old grammarians to *lay aside* (dēpōnĕrĕ) their passive meaning.

It is not in all cases clear what was originally the force of the passive form in these verbs, but in many of them it was evidently reflexive, *e.g.* amplectŏr, *I embrace*, i.e. *twine myself around* (from plectō, *I plait*, and the prefix ambĭ-, *around*), glōrĭŏr, *I boast*, i.e. *glorify myself*.

But whatever the origin of the deponent verbs may have been, they are for all practical purposes equivalent both in force and in usage to active verbs, either transitive (as amplectŏr) or intransitive (as glōrĭŏr).

§ **172.** The existence in early Latin of an active form of many verbs which were deponent in classical times accounts for the first and second at least of the following non-deponent parts which belong to all deponent verbs:—

(1) Present Participle
(2) Future Participle (and consequently Future Infinitive)
(3) Gerund
(4) Supine
(5) Gerundive

(1)–(4) active in form.
(5) passive in meaning.

For examples, see §§ 178—181.

NOTE.—In some deponent verbs the perfect participle is sometimes passive in meaning; *e.g.* vĕnĕrŏr, *I worship*, has perfect participle vĕnĕrātŭs, *worshipped* (passive), or *having worshipped* (deponent).

§ **173.** There are four conjugations of deponent verbs resembling those of regular passive verbs (§§ 157—160, § 163), with the addition of the aforesaid forms from the corresponding active conjugations. Models are given in §§ 178—181.

Three deponent verbs and their compounds (§ 195) are conjugated like căpĭŏr (§ 170).

§ 174. Deponent verbs have no perfect tenses active in form, and consequently no perfect base; all their tenses are formed from the present and supine bases in the same way as the tenses of the passive voice of regular verbs (see § 133). The supine base of deponent verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations is formed from the present base in accordance with rules given in § 136 for active verbs, except in the case of the deponents enumerated in §§ 193, 196. The supine bases of deponents of the third conjugation must be learned from §§ 194, 195.

§ 175. The alternative forms and additional tenses of passive verbs mentioned in §§ 161—164 are found also in deponent verbs.

§ 176. Semi-Deponents.

Four verbs are deponent in their perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses only (including perfect infinitive and perfect participle), viz.:—

	Pres. Indic.		Pres. Inf.	Perf. Indic.
Second Conjugation	**aud-ĕō,**	*I dare*	**aud-ērĕ**	**aus-ŭs sum**
	gaud-ĕō,	*I rejoice*	**gaud-ērĕ**	**gāvīs-ŭs sum**
	sŏl-ĕō,	*I am accustomed*	**sŏl-ērĕ**	**sŏlĭt-ŭs sum**
Third Conj.	**fīd-ō,**	*I trust*	**fīd-ĕrĕ**	**fīs-ŭs sum**

So also the compounds **confīdō**, *I trust*, and **diffīdō**, *I distrust*.

§ 177. Perfect Participles with Active Meaning.

	Pres. Indic.		Pres. Inf.	Perf. Part.	
First Conj.	**cēn-ō,**	*I dine*	**cēn-ārĕ**	**cēnāt-ŭs,**	*having dined*
	iūr-ō,	*I swear*	**iūr-ārĕ**	**iūrāt-ŭs,**	*having sworn*
	pōt-ō,	*I drink*	**pōt-ārĕ**	**pōt-ŭs,**	*drunk* (act. or pass.)
Second Conj.	**plăc-ĕō,**	*I am pleasing*	**plăc-ērĕ**	**plăcĭt-ŭs,**	*having pleased*
	prand-ĕō,	*I lunch*	**prand-ērĕ**	**prans-ŭs,**	*having lunched*
Third Conj.	**cresc-ō,**	*I grow*	**cresc-ĕrĕ**	**crēt-ŭs,**	*sprung*
	suesc-ō,*	*I become accustomed*	**suesc-ĕrĕ**	**suēt-ŭs,**	*accustomed*

And some others, from intransitive verbs; *e.g.* **ădultŭs**, *grown up*, from **ădŏlescō**, *I grow up;* **nuptă**, *married*, from **nūbō**, *I am married (to a man)*.

Obs. It is only the perfect participle of these verbs that is deponent; the perfect tenses of the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive are active in form as well as meaning, *e.g.* **cēnāvī, iūrāvī.**

* **Su** is in this verb pronounced as *sw* in *sweet*. See § 8.

§ 178. DEPONENT VERBS.—FIRST CONJUGATION.

MODEL: hortŏr, *I exhort.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: hort-ārī, hortāt-ŭs sum.

BASES: hort- (present); hortāt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES
- PRESENT: hort-ans (gen. hortant-ĭs), *exhorting.*
- FUTURE: hortāt-ūrŭs, hortāt-ūrā, hortāt-ūrum, *about to exhort.*
- PERFECT: hortāt-ŭs, hortāt-ă, hortāt-um, *having exhorted.*
- GERUNDIVE: hort-andŭs, hort-andă, hort-andum, *fit to be exhorted.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I exhort.*)

hort-ŏr	hort-āmŭr
hort-ārĭs or -ārĕ	hort-āmĭnī
hort-ātŭr	hort-antŭr

IMPERFECT. (*I was exhorting.*)

hort-ābăr	hort-ābāmŭr
hort-ābārĭs or hort-ābārĕ	hort-ābāmĭnī
hort-ābātŭr	hort-ābantŭr

FUTURE. (*I shall exhort.*)

hort-ābŏr	hort-ābĭmŭr
hort-ābĕrĭs or hort-ābĕrĕ	hort-ābĭmĭnī
hort-ābĭtŭr	hort-ābuntŭr

PERFECT. (*I exhorted* or *have exhorted.*)

hortāt-ŭs sum	hortāt-ī sŭmŭs
hortāt-ŭs ĕs	hortāt-ī estĭs
hortāt-ŭs est	hortāt-ī sunt

PLUPERFECT. (*I had exhorted.*)

hortāt-ŭs ĕram	hortāt-ī ĕrāmŭs
hortāt-ŭs ĕrās	hortāt-ī ĕrātĭs
hortāt-ŭs ĕrăt	hortāt-ī ĕrant

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have exhorted.*)

hortāt-ŭs ĕrō	hortāt-ī ĕrĭmŭs
hortāt-ŭs ĕrĭs	hortāt-ī ĕrĭtĭs
hortāt-ŭs ĕrĭt	hortāt-ī ĕrunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should exhort.*)

hort-ĕr	hort-ēmŭr
hort-ērĭs or hort-ērĕ	hort-ēmĭnī
hort-ētŭr	hort-entŭr

IMPERFECT. (*I should be exhorting.*)

hort-ārĕr	hort-ārēmŭr
hort-ārērĭs or hort-ārērĕ	hort-ārēmĭnī
hort-ārētŭr	hort-ārentŭr

PERFECT.

hortāt-ŭs sim	hortāt-ī sīmŭs
hortāt-ŭs sīs	hortāt-ī sītĭs
hortāt-ŭs sĭt	hortāt-ī sint

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have exhorted.*)

hortāt-ŭs essem	hortāt-ī essēmŭs
hortāt-ŭs essēs	hortāt-ī essētĭs
hortāt-ŭs essĕt	hortāt-ī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Exhort.*)

hort-ārĕ	hort-āmĭnī

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must exhort.*)

hort-ātŏr	
hort-ātŏr	hort-antŏr

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: hort-ārī, *to exhort*

PERFECT: hortāt-ŭs essĕ, *to have exhorted*

FUTURE: hortātūr-ŭs essĕ, *to be about to exhort*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* hort-andum)
Acc. hort-andum, *exhorting*
Gen. hort-andī
Dat. hort-andō
Abl. hort-andō

SUPINE.

Acc. hortāt-um, *to exhort*
Abl. hortāt-ū, *in exhorting*

§179. DEPONENT VERBS.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

MODEL: vĕrĕŏr, *I fear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: vĕr-ērī, vĕrĭt-ŭs sum.

BASES: vĕr- (present); vĕrĭt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT: vĕr-ens (gen. vĕrent-ĭs), *fearing.*
FUTURE: vĕrĭt-ūrŭs, vĕrĭt-ūrā, vĕrĭt-ūrum, *about to fear.*
PERFECT: vĕrĭt-ŭs, vĕrĭt-ă, vĕrĭt-um, *having feared.*
GERUNDIVE: vĕr-endŭs, vĕr-endă, vĕr-endum, *fit to be feared.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I fear.*)

vĕr-ĕŏr	vĕr-ēmŭr
vĕr-ērĭs or vĕr-ērĕ	vĕr-ēmĭnī
vĕr-ētŭr	vĕr-entŭr

IMPERFECT. (*I was fearing.*)

vĕr-ēbăr	vĕr-ēbāmŭr
vĕr-ēbārĭs or vĕr-ēbārĕ	vĕr-ēbāmĭnī
vĕr-ēbātŭr	vĕr-ēbantŭr

FUTURE. (*I shall fear.*)

vĕr-ēbŏr	vĕr-ēbĭmŭr
vĕr-ēbĕrĭs or vĕr-ēbĕrĕ	vĕr-ēbĭmĭnī
vĕr-ēbĭtŭr	vĕr-ēbuntŭr

PERFECT. (*I feared* or *have feared.*)

vĕrĭt-ŭs sum	vĕrĭt-ī sŭmŭs
vĕrĭt-ŭs ĕs	vĕrĭt-ī estĭs
vĕrĭt-ŭs est	vĕrĭt-ī sunt

PLUPERFECT. (*I had feared.*)

vĕrĭt-ŭs ĕram	vĕrĭt-ī ĕrāmŭs
vĕrĭt-ŭs ĕrās	vĕrĭt-ī ĕrātĭs
vĕrĭt-ŭs ĕrăt	vĕrĭt-ī ĕrant

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have feared.*)

vĕrĭt-ŭs ĕrō	vĕrĭt-ī ĕrĭmŭs
vĕrĭt-ŭs ĕrĭs	vĕrĭt-ī ĕrĭtĭs
vĕrĭt-ŭs ĕrĭt	vĕrĭt-ī ĕrunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should fear.*)

vĕr-ĕăr	vĕr-ĕāmŭr
vĕr-ĕārĭs or vĕr-ĕārĕ	vĕr-ĕāmĭnī
vĕr-ĕātŭr	vĕr-ĕantŭr

IMPERFECT. (*I should be fearing.*)

vĕr-ērĕr	vĕr-ērēmŭr
vĕr-ērērĭs or vĕr-ērērĕ	vĕr-ērēmĭnī
vĕr-ērētŭr	vĕr-ērentŭr

PERFECT.

vĕrĭt-ŭs sim	vĕrĭt-ī sīmŭs
vĕrĭt-ŭs sīs	vĕrĭt-ī sītĭs
vĕrĭt-ŭs sĭt	vĕrĭt-ī sint

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have feared.*)

vĕrĭt-ŭs essem	vĕrĭt-ī essēmŭs
vĕrĭt-ŭs essēs	vĕrĭt-ī essētĭs
vĕrĭt-ŭs essĕt	vĕrĭt-ī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Fear.*)

vĕr-ērĕ	vĕr-ēmĭnī

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must fear.*)

vĕr-ētŏr	
vĕr-ētŏr	vĕr-entŏr

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: vĕr-ērī, *to fear*
PERFECT: vĕrĭt-ŭs essĕ, *to have feared*
FUTURE: vĕrĭtūr-ŭs essĕ, *to be about to fear*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* vĕr-endum)
Acc. vĕr-endum, *fearing*
Gen. vĕr-endī
Dat. vĕr-endō
Abl. vĕr-endō

SUPINE.

Acc. vĕrĭt-um, *to fear*
Abl. vĕrĭt-ū, *in fearing*

§180. DEPONENT VERBS.—THIRD CONJUGATION

MODEL: lŏquŏr, *I speak.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: lŏquī, lŏcūt-ŭs sum.

BASES: lŏqu- (present); lŏcūt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES
- PRESENT: lŏqu-ens (gen. lŏquent-ĭs), *speaking.*
- FUTURE: lŏcūt-ūrŭs, lŏcūt-ūrā, lŏcūt-ūrum, *about to speak.*
- PERFECT: lŏcūt-ŭs, lŏcūt-ă, lŏcūt-um, *having spoken.*
- GERUNDIVE: lŏqu-endŭs, lŏqu-endă, lŏqu-endum, *fit to be spoken.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I speak.*)

lŏqu-ŏr	lŏqu-ĭmŭr
lŏqu-ĕrĭs or lŏqu-ĕrĕ	lŏqu-ĭmĭnī
lŏqu-ĭtŭr	lŏqu-untŭr

IMPERFECT. (*I was speaking.*)

lŏqu-ēbăr	lŏqu-ēbāmŭr
lŏqu-ēbārĭs or lŏqu-ēbārĕ	lŏqu-ēbāmĭnī
lŏqu-ēbātŭr	lŏqu-ēbantŭr

FUTURE. (*I shall speak.*)

lŏqu-ăr	lŏqu-ēmŭr
lŏqu-ērĭs or lŏqu-ērĕ	lŏqu-ēmĭnī
lŏqu-ētŭr	lŏqu-entŭr

PERFECT. (*I spoke* or *have spoken.*)

lŏcūt-ŭs sum	lŏcūt-ī sŭmŭs
lŏcūt-ŭs ĕs	lŏcūt-ī estĭs
lŏcūt-ŭs est	lŏcūt-ī sunt

PLUPERFECT. (*I had spoken.*)

lŏcūt-ŭs ĕram	lŏcūt-ī ĕrāmŭs
lŏcūt-ŭs ĕrās	lŏcūt-ī ĕrātĭs
lŏcūt-ŭs ĕrăt	lŏcūt-ī ĕrant

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have spoken.*)

lŏcūt-ŭs ĕrō	lŏcūt-ī ĕrĭmŭs
lŏcūt-ŭs ĕrĭs	lŏcūt-ī ĕrĭtĭs
lŏcūt-ŭs ĕrĭt	lŏcūt-ī ĕrunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should speak.*)

lŏqu-ăr	lŏqu-āmŭr
lŏqu-ārĭs or lŏqu-ārĕ	lŏqu-āmĭnī
lŏqu-ātŭr	lŏqu-antŭr

IMPERFECT. (*I should be speaking.*)

lŏqu-ĕrĕr	lŏqu-ĕrēmŭr
lŏqu-ĕrērĭs or lŏqu-ĕrērĕ	lŏqu-ĕrēmĭnī
lŏqu-ĕrētŭr	lŏqu-ĕrentŭr

PERFECT.

lŏcūt-ŭs sim	lŏcūt-ī sīmŭs
lŏcūt-ŭs sīs	lŏcūt-ī sītĭs
lŏcūt-ŭs sĭt	lŏcūt-ī sint

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have spoken.*)

lŏcūt-ŭs essem	lŏcūt-ī essēmŭs
lŏcūt-ŭs essēs	lŏcūt-ī essētĭs
lŏcūt-ŭs essĕt	lŏcūt-ī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Speak.*)

lŏqu-ĕrĕ	lŏqu-ĭmĭnī

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must speak.*)

lŏqu-ĭtŏr	
lŏqu-ĭtŏr	lŏqu-untŏr

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. lŏqu-ī, *to speak*

PERFECT: lŏcūt-ŭs essĕ, *to have spoken*

FUTURE: lŏcūtūr-ŭs essĕ, *to be about to speak*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* lŏqu-endum)

Acc. lŏqu-endum, *speaking*

Gen. lŏqu-endī

Dat. lŏqu-endō

Abl. lŏqu-endō

SUPINE.

Acc. lŏcūt-um, *to speak*

Abl. lŏcūt-ū, *in speaking*

§ 181. DEPONENT VERBS.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

MODEL: partĭŏr, *I divide.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: part-īrī, partīt-ŭs sum.

BASES: part- (present); partīt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES:
PRESENT: part-ĭens (gen. partĭent-ĭs), *dividing.*
FUTURE: partīt-ūrŭs, partīt-ūră, partīt-ūrum, *about to divide.*
PERFECT: partīt-ŭs, partīt-ă, partīt-um, *having divided.*
GERUNDIVE: part-ĭendŭs, part-ĭendă, part-ĭendum, *fit to be divided.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I divide.*)

part-ĭŏr	part-īmŭr
part-īrĭs or part-īrĕ	part-īmĭnī
part-ītŭr	part-ĭuntŭr

IMPERFECT. (*I was dividing.*)

part-ĭēbăr	part-ĭēbāmŭr
part-ĭēbārĭs or part-ĭēbārĕ	part-ĭēbāmĭnī
part-ĭēbātŭr	part-ĭēbantŭr

FUTURE. (*I shall divide.*)

part-ĭăr	part-ĭēmŭr
part-ĭērĭs or part-ĭērĕ	part-ĭēmĭnī
part-ĭētŭr	part-ĭentŭr

PERFECT. (*I divided* or *have divided.*)

partīt-ŭs sum	partīt-ī sŭmŭs
partīt-ŭs ĕs	partīt-ī estĭs
partīt-ŭs est	partīt-ī sunt

PLUPERFECT. (*I had divided.*)

partīt-ŭs ĕram	partīt-ī ĕrāmŭs
partīt-ŭs ĕrās	partīt-ī ĕrātĭs
partīt-ŭs ĕrăt	partīt-ī ĕrant

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have divided.*)

partīt-ŭs ĕrō	partīt-ī ĕrĭmŭs
partīt-ŭs ĕrĭs	partīt-ī ĕrĭtĭs
partīt-ŭs ĕrĭt	partīt-ī ĕrunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should divide.*)

part-ĭăr	part-ĭāmŭr
part-ĭārĭs or part-ĭārĕ	part-ĭāmĭnī
part-ĭātŭr	part-ĭantŭr

IMPERFECT. (*I should be dividing.*)

part-īrĕr	part-īrēmŭr
part-īrērĭs or part-īrērĕ	part-īrēmĭnī
part-īrētŭr	part-īrentŭr

PERFECT.

partīt-ŭs sim	partīt-ī sīmŭs
partīt-ŭs sīs	partīt-ī sītĭs
partīt-ŭs sĭt	partīt-ī sint

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have divided.*)

partīt-ŭs essem	partīt-ī essēmŭs
partīt-ŭs essēs	partīt-ī essētĭs
partīt-ŭs essĕt	partīt-ī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Divide.*)

part-īrĕ	part-īmĭnī

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must divide.*)

part-ītŏr	
part-ītŏr	part-ĭuntŏr

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: part-īrī, *to divide*
PERFECT: partīt-ŭs essĕ, *to have divided*
FUTURE: partītūr-ŭs essĕ, *to be about to divide*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* part-ĭendum)
Acc. part-ĭendum, *dividing*
Gen. part-ĭendī
Dat. part-ĭendō
Abl. part-ĭendō

SUPINE.

Acc partīt-um, *to divide* | *Abl.* partīt-ū, *in dividing*

CHAPTER XXI.—PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS.

§ 182. In order to conjugate a Latin verb, it is necessary to know (1) to which conjugation it belongs, and (2) its present, perfect, and supine bases. The conjugation is shown by the ending of the present infinitive active (§ 135), and the three bases are ascertained from (*a*) the present infinitive active, (*b*) the perfect indicative active, (*c*) the accusative supine (§ 131). It is also necessary, in order to distinguish verbs conjugated like **căpĭō** (§ 170) from other verbs of the third conjugation, to know the present indicative active (first person singular).

Deponent verbs have, as explained in § 174, present and supine bases only.

§ 183. The **perfect base** is formed from the verbal stem * in six different ways, viz. :—

A.—By reduplication, *i.e.* by means of a prefix consisting of the first consonant of the verb and a short vowel (the vowel being **e** or that of the first syllable of the verb) ;

B.—By vowel-lengthening (**ă** becoming **ē**, unless **v** follows) ;

C.—By the addition of **s**, which combines with a preceding **c** or **g** into **x** ;

D.—By the addition of **v** preceded by a long vowel ;

E.—By the addition of **ŭ**.

F.—The remaining form of the perfect base is that in which it is identical with the present base, or (§ 189, F.) with the verbal stem.

* The verbal stem is often, but by no mean always, identical with the present base. Thus the verbal stem of **frangō** (§ 189, B) is **frăg-**, from which are formed the present base **frang-**, the perfect base **frēg-**, and (by change of **g** to **c** before **t**), the supine base **fract-**. This " verbal stem " is of no practical importance to the learner, but its existence affords an explanation of forms otherwise unintelligible.

§ 184. **The supine base** is formed from the verbal stem by the addition of (1) **t** (sometimes **ĭt**) or (2) **s**; the latter combines with a preceding **c** or **g** into **x**. The more usual ending of the supine base is **t**; **s** is, generally speaking, found when the verbal stem ends in **d** or **t**. (The supine may often be remembered by the help of an English derivative; *e.g.* "caution," "motion," "vote," from **căvĕō, mŏvĕō, vŏvĕō** respectively, § 188, B.)

§ 185. The following list contains all common verbs of the third conjugation, and those verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations which form their perfect and supine differently from **ămō, mŏnĕō,** and **audĭō** respectively; except—

(*a*) Inceptive verbs formed from simple verbs which are in use (§ 284), the perfect and supine of these, if they exist, being the same as the perfect and supine of the simple verb;

(*b*) Compound verbs which contain the simple verb unchanged in form, but drop the reduplication (if any) in the perfect, *e.g.*—

Simple verb:	dūc-ŏ	-ĕrĕ	dux-ī	duct-um	*lead*
Compound verb:	abdūc-ō	-ĕrĕ	abdux-ī	abduct-um	*lead away*
Simple verb:	pell-ō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpŭl-ī	puls-um	*drive*
Compound verb:	impell-ō	-ĕrĕ	impŭl-ī	impuls-um	*drive on*

But one compound at least is given of verbs which when compounded change in form or retain the reduplication in the perfect. Compound verbs of which the simple forms are not in use, *e.g.* **abnŭō**, *I refuse*, are also given.

For the changes undergone by prepositions in composition, see § 292; for vowel change in compound verbs, see § 293.

§ 186. In this list the verbs of each conjugation are classed according to the formation of their perfect base, and in each class the verbs with supine base ending in **s** (if any) follow those with supine base ending in **t**.

The student should learn the principal parts as here arranged, and later on test his knowledge by the alphabetical list in Ch. XXVI. Beginners may confine their attention to verbs printed in dark type

§ 187. First Conjugation.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect	Supine.	
d-ō* (§§ 222, 223)	-ārĕ	dĕd-ī	dăt-um	*give*
Compounds belong to 3rd conj. (§ 189, A.), except				
circumd-ō (§ 224)	-ārĕ	circumdĕd-ī	circumdăt-um	*put round*
st-ō	-ārĕ	stĕt-ī	stătum	*stand*
Compounds (few having sup.) as				
praest-ō	-ārĕ	praestĭt-ī	praestāt-um / praestĭt-um	*excel*
Except				
circumst-ō	-ārĕ	circumstĕt-ī	——	*stand around*

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

iŭv-ō (§ 204)	-ārĕ	iūv-ī	iūt-um	*help, delight*
lăv-ō (§ 199)	-ārĕ	lāv-ī (perf. part.)	lăvāt-um / laut-ŭs / lōt-ŭs	*wash*

C.—Perfect formed by S: *none.*

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel (A).

This is the way in which the perfect base of ămō and of other verbs of the first conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is irregular in—

pōt-ō (§ 177)	-ārĕ	pōtāv-ī	pōt-um *or* pōtāt-um	*drink*

E.—Perfect formed by Ŭ.

crĕp-ō	-ārĕ	crĕpŭ-ī	crĕpĭt-um	*rattle*
cŭb-ō	-ārĕ	cŭbŭ-ī	cŭbĭt-um	*lie down*
dŏm-ō	-ārĕ	dŏmŭ-ī	dŏmĭt-um	*tame*
ēnĭc-ō	-ārĕ	ēnĭcŭ-ī	ēnect-um	*wear to death*
frĭc-ō	-ārĕ	frĭcŭ-ī	fric-um *or* frĭcāt-um	*rub*
plĭc-ō	-ārĕ	plĭcāv-ī / plĭcŭ-ī	plĭcāt-um / plĭcĭt-um	*fold*
sĕc-ō	-ārĕ	sĕcŭ-ī	sect-um	*cut*

* Dō is, properly speaking, an irregular verb; but as it diverges from the first conjugation in quantity only, it is included in this list.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
sŏn-ō (§ 204)	**-ārĕ**	**sŏnŭ-ī**	**sŏnĭt-um**	*sound*
tŏn-ō	-ārĕ	tŏnŭ-ī	tŏnĭt-um	*thunder*
vĕt-ō	**-ārĕ**	**vĕtŭ-ī**	**vĕtĭt-um**	*forbid*
mĭc-ō	-ārĕ	mĭcŭ-ī	——	*vibrate*
So comp., except				
dīmĭc-ō	-ārĕ	dīmĭcāv-ī	dīmĭcāt-um	*fight*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base : *none.*

§ 188. Second Conjugation.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

mord-ĕō	-ērĕ	**mŏmord-ī**	**mors-um**	*bite*
pend-ĕō	-ērĕ	**pĕpend-ī**	——	*be suspended*
spond-ĕō	-ērĕ	**spŏpond-ī**	**spons-um**	*promise*
tond-ĕō	-ērĕ	tŏtond-ī	tons-um	*clip*

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

căv-ĕō	-ērĕ	**cāv-ī**	**caut-um**	*beware of*
făv-ĕō	-ērĕ	**fāv-ī**	**faut-um**	*be favourable*
fŏv-ĕō	-ērĕ	fōv-ī	fōt-um	*cherish*
mŏv-ĕō	-ērĕ	**mōv-ī**	**mōt-um**	*set in motion*
vŏv-ĕō	-ērĕ	**vōv-ī**	**vōt-um**	*vow*
sĕd-ĕō	-ērĕ	**sēd-ī**	**sess-um**	*sit*
Compounds as				
possĭd-ĕō	-ērĕ	**possēd-ī**	**possess-um**	*possess*
Except				
circumsĕd-ĕō	-ērĕ	circumsēd-ī	circumsess-um	*besiege*
sŭpersĕd-ĕō	-ērĕ	sŭpersēd-ī	sŭpersess-um	*forbear*
vĭd-ĕō	-ērĕ	**vīd-ī**	**vīs-um**	*see*
păv-ĕō	-ērĕ	pāv-ī	——	*tremble*

C.—Perfect formed by S.

alg-ĕō	-ērĕ	als-ī	——	*feel cold*
fulg-ĕō (§ 199)	-ērĕ	fuls-ī	——	*gleam*
indulg-ĕō	-ērĕ	**induls-ī**	——	*be indulgent*
urg-ĕō	-ērĕ	urs-ī	——	*press*
frīg-ĕō	-ērĕ	frix-ī	——	*be cold*
lūc-ĕō	-ērĕ	lux-ī	——	*shine*
torqu-ĕō	-ērĕ	**tors-ī**	**tort-um**	*twist*
aug-ĕō	-ērĕ	**aux-ī**	**auct-um**	*augment*
lūg-ĕō	-ērĕ	lux-ī	luct-um	*mourn for*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ard-ĕō	-ērĕ	ars-ī	ars-um	*be on fire*
haer-ĕō	-ērĕ	haes-ī	haes-um	*stick*
iŭb-ĕō	-ērĕ	iuss-ī	iuss-um	*command*
măn-ĕō	-ērĕ	mans-ī	mans-um	*remain*
mulc-ĕō	-ērĕ	muls-ī	muls-um	*caress*
mulg-ĕō	-ērĕ	muls-ī	mulct-um / muls-um	*milk*
rīd-ĕō	-ērĕ	rīs-ī	rīs-um	*laugh*
suād-ĕō (§ 8)	-ērĕ	suās-ī	suās-um	*recommend*
terg-ĕō	-ērĕ	ters-ī	ters-um	*wipe*

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel.

ăbŏl-ĕō	-ērĕ	ăbŏlēv-ī	ăbŏlĭt-um	*abolish*
cĭ-ĕō (§ 199)	-ērĕ	cīv-ī	cĭt-um	*arouse*
dēl-ĕō	-ērĕ	dēlēv-ī	dēlēt-um	*abolish*
fl-ĕō	-ērĕ	flēv-ī	flēt-um	*weep*
n-ĕō	-ērĕ	nēv-ī	nēt-um	*spin*
compl-ĕō	-ērĕ	complēv-ī	complēt-um	*fill up*
expl-ĕō	-ērĕ	explēv-ī	explēt-um	*fill up*
impl-ĕō	-ērĕ	implēv-ī	implēt-um	*fill*
rĕpl-ĕō	-ērĕ	rĕplēv-ī	rĕplēt-um	*refill*
suppl-ĕō	-ērĕ	supplēv-ī	supplēt-um	*fill up*

E.—Perfect formed by Ŭ.

This is the way in which the perfect base of mŏnĕō and of other verbs of the second conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is wanting in many verbs of this conjugation, and is irregular in—

dŏc-ĕō	-ērĕ	dŏcŭ-ī	doct-um	*teach*
misc-ĕō	-ērĕ	miscŭ-ī	mixt-um	*mix*
tĕn-ĕō	-ērĕ	tĕnŭ-ī	tent-um	*hold*
Comp. as rĕtĭn-ĕō	-ērĕ	rĕtĭnŭ-ī	rĕtent-um	*hold back*
torr-ĕō	-ērĕ	torrŭ-ī	tost-um.	*scorch*
cens-ĕō	-ērĕ	censŭ-ī	cens-um	*count*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

prand-ĕō (§ 177)	-ērĕ	prand-ī	prans-um	*lunch*
ferv-ĕō (§ 199)	-ērĕ	ferv-ī (*or* ferbŭ-ī)	——	*be boiling*
strīd-ĕō (§ 199)	-ērĕ	strīd-ī	——	*creak*

§ 189. THIRD CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
căn-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cĕcĭn-ī**	**cant-um**	*sing*
Compounds as praecĭn-ŏ (§189, E.)				
Compounds of **dō**, except **circumd-ō** (§187, A.), as **ēd-ō** *	**-ĕrĕ**	**ēdĭd-ī**	**ēdĭt-um**	*give out*
Including ·				
crēd-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	crēdĭd-ī	crēdĭt-um	*trust*
perd-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	perdĭd-ī	perdĭt-um	*destroy*
vend-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	vendĭd-ī	vendĭt-um	*sell*
pung-ō	-ĕrĕ	pŭpŭg-ī	punct-um	*prick*
Compounds as compung-ō (§189, C.)				
sist-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**stĭt-ī**	**stăt-um**	*make to stand*
Comp. as **consist-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**constĭt-ī**	**constĭt-um**	*stand still*
Except circumsist-ō	-ĕrĕ	circumstĕt-ī	——	*stand around*
tang-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**tĕtĭg-ī**	**tact-um**	*touch*
Comp. as **atting-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**attĭg-ī**	**attact-um**	*touch*
tend-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**tĕtend-ī**	**tent-um**	*stretch*
căd-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cĕcĭd-ī**	**cās-um**	*fall*
Comp. as **concĭd-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**concĭd-ī**	——	*fall*
Supine stem in **occĭd-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**occĭd-ī**	**occās-um**	*fall, set*
rĕcĭd-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**reccĭd-ī**	**rĕcās-um**	*fall back*
caed-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cĕcīd-ī**	**caes-um**	*cut*
Comp. as **occīd-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**occīd-ī**	**occīs-um**	*kill*
curr-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cŭcurr-ī**	**curs-um**	*run*
Compounds as **accurr-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**accŭcurr-ī** or **accurr-ī**	**accurs um**	*run to*
fall-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**fĕfell-ī**	**fals-um**	*deceive*
Comp.: rĕfell-ō	-ĕrĕ	rĕfell-ī	——	*disprove*

* Some of these are compounds of **dō**, *I give*, others of a verb **-dō**, *I put*, of which the simple form is not in use. No distinction is here attempted, as it is in many cases impossible to ascertain from which simple verb the compound is formed.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
pell-ō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpŭl-ī	puls-um	*drive*
pend-ō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpend-ī	pens-um	*weigh out, pay*
tund-ō	-ĕrĕ	tŭtŭd-ī	{tuns-um / tūs-um}	*beat*
disc-ō	-ĕrĕ	dĭdĭc-ī	——	*learn*
Comp. as addisc-ō	-ĕrĕ	addĭdĭc-ī	——	*learn besides*
parc-ō (§ 204)	-ĕrĕ	pĕperc-ī	pars-ūrŭs	*be sparing*
posc-ō	-ĕrĕ	pŏposc-ī	——	*demand*
Comp. as dēposc-ō	-ĕrĕ	dēpŏposc-ī	——	*demand*

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

ăg-ō	-ĕrĕ	ēg-ī	act-um	*drive*
Comp. as ăbĭg-ō	-ĕrĕ	ăbēg-ī	ăbact-um	*drive away*
Except circŭmăg-ō	-ĕrĕ	circŭmēg-ī	circŭmact-um	*drive around*
cōg-ō	-ĕrĕ	cŏēg-ī	cŏact-um	*drive together, compel*
dēg-ō	-ĕrĕ	dēg-ī	——	*pass (time)*
pĕrăg-ō	-ĕrĕ	pĕrēg-ī	pĕract-um	*accomplish*
ĕm-ō	-ĕrĕ	ēm-ī	empt-um	*buy*
Comp. as ădĭm-ō	-ĕrĕ	ădēm-ī	ădempt-um	*take away*
Except cŏĕm-ō	-ĕrĕ	cŏēm-ī	cŏempt-um	*buy up*
See also § 189,C.				
frang-ō	-ĕrĕ	frēg-ī	fract-um	*break*
Compounds as confring-ō	-ĕrĕ	confrēg-ī	confract-um	*break*
lĕg-ō	-ĕrĕ	lēg-ī	lect-um	*pick, read*
Comp. as collĭg-ō	-ĕrĕ	collēg-ī	collect-um	*collect*
But e remains in perlĕg-ō	-ĕrĕ	perlēg-ī	perlect-um	*read through*
rĕlĕg-ō	-ĕrĕ	rĕlēg-ī	rĕlect-um	*again go over*
Perf. differs in dīlĭg-ō, intellĕg-ō, neglĕg-ō (§189,C.)				
linqu-ō	-ĕrĕ	līqu-ī	——	*leave*
Comp. as rĕlinqu-ō	-ĕrĕ	rĕlīqu-ī	rĕlict-um	*leave*
pang-ō	-ĕrĕ	pēg-ī or pĕpĭg-ī	pact-um	*fasten*
Comp.: comping-ō	-ĕrĕ	compēg-ī	compact-um	*join together*
rump-ō	-ĕrĕ	rūp-ī	rupt-um	*break*
vinc-ō	-ĕrĕ	vīc-ī	vict-um	*conquer*
ĕd-ō (§ 220)	-ĕrĕ	ēd-ī	ēs-um	*eat*
fund-ō	-ĕrĕ	fūd-ī	fūs-um	*pour*

C.—Perfect formed by **S**.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
carp-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**carps-ī**	**carpt-um**	*pluck*
Comp. as dēcerp-ō	-ĕrĕ	dēcerps-ī	dēcerpt-um	*pluck off*
Four compounds of **ĕm-ō** (§ 189, B.) :				
cōm-ō	-ĕrĕ	comps-ī	compt-um	*deck*
dēm-ō	-ĕrĕ	demps-ī	dempt-um	*take off*
prōm-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**promps-ī**	**prompt-um**	*bring out*
sūm-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**sumps-ī**	**sumpt-um**	*take up*
gĕr-ō	-ĕrĕ	gess-ī	gest-um	*carry*
nūb-ō (§ 177)	-ĕrĕ	nups-ī	nupt-um	*put on the bridal veil*, i.e. *be married*
rēp-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**reps-ī**	**rept-um**	*creep*
scalp-ō	-ĕrĕ	scalps-ī	scalpt-um	*carve*
scrīb-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**scrips-ī**	**script-um**	*write*
sculp-ō	-ĕrĕ	sculps-ī	sculpt-um	*carve*
serp-ō	-ĕrĕ	serps-ī	serpt-um	*crawl*
temn-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**temps-ī**	**tempt-um**	*despise*
ūr-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**uss-ī**	**ust-um**	*burn, inflame*
Comp. : **combūr-ō**	-ĕrĕ	**combuss-ī**	**combust-um**	*burn up*
cing-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cinx-ī**	**cinct-um**	*gird*
cŏqu-ō	-ĕrĕ	cox-ī	coct-um	*cook*
dīc-ō (§ 203)	-ĕrĕ	**dix-ī**	**dict-um**	*say*
dūc-ō (§ 203)	-ĕrĕ	**dux-ī**	**duct-um**	*lead*
fing-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**finx-ī**	**fict-um**	*form*
affīg-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**afflix-ī**	**afflict-um**	*strike against*
conflīg-ō	-ĕrĕ	conflix-ī	conflict-um	*contend*
inflīg-ō	-ĕrĕ	inflix-ī	inflict-um	*strike on*
iung-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**iunx-ī**	**iunct-um**	*join*
Three compounds of **lĕg-ō** (§189, B.):				
dīlĭg-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**dīlex-ī**	**dīlect-um**	*love*
intellĕg-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**intellex-ī**	**intellect-um**	*understand*
neglĕg-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**neglex-ī**	**neglect-um**	*neglect*
ping-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**pinx-ī**	**pict-um**	*paint*
plang-ō	-ĕrĕ	planx-ī	planct-um	*beat*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Compounds of pung-ō (§ 189, A.), as				
compung-ō	-ĕrĕ	compunx-ī	compunct-um	*sting*
rĕg-ō	-ĕrĕ	rex-ī	rect-um	*rule*
Comp. as corrĭg-ō	-ĕrĕ	correx-ī	correct-um	*correct*
Except perg-ō	-ĕrĕ	perrex-ī	perrect-um	*continue*
surg-ō	-ĕrĕ	surrex-ī	surrect-um	*rise*
distingu-ō	-ĕrĕ	distinx-ī	distinct-um	*distinguish*
exstingu-ō	-ĕrĕ	exstinx-ī	exstinct-um	*extinguish*
restingu-ō	-ĕrĕ	restinx-ī	restinct-um	*extinguish*
string-ō	-ĕrĕ	strinx-ī	strict-um	*strip*
strŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	strux-ī	struct-um	*pile*
sūg-ō	-ĕrĕ	sux-ī	suct-um	*suck*
tĕg-ō	-ĕrĕ	tex-ī	tect-um	*cover*
ting-ō *or* tingu-ō	-ĕrĕ	tinx-ī	tinct-um	*steep*
trăh-ō	-ĕrĕ	trax-ī	tract-um	*draw*
ung-ō *or* ungu-ō	-ĕrĕ	unx-ī	unct-um	*anoint*
vĕh-ō	-ĕrĕ	vex-ī	vect-um	*carry*
vīv-ō	-ĕrĕ	vix-ī	vict-um	*live*
cēd-ō	-ĕrĕ	cess-ī	cess-um	*yield*
claud-ō	-ĕrĕ	claus-ī	claus-um	*shut*
Comp. as conclūd-ō	-ĕrĕ	conclūs-ī	conclūs-um	*confine*
dīvĭd-ō	-ĕrĕ	dīvīs-ī	dīvīs-um	*divide*
laed-ō	-ĕrĕ	laes-ī	laes-um	*hurt*
Comp. as collīd-ō	-ĕrĕ	collīs-ī	collīs-um	*clash*
lūd-ō	-ĕrĕ	lūs-ī	lūs-um	*play*
merg-ō	-ĕrĕ	mers-ī	mers-um	*dip*
mitt-ō	-ĕrĕ	mīs-ī	miss-um	*send*
plaud-ō	-ĕrĕ	plaus-ī	plaus-um	*clap*
Comp. : explōd-ō	-ĕrĕ	explōs-ī	explōs-um	*hiss off*
prĕm-ō	-ĕrĕ	press-ī	press-um	*press*
Compounds as comprĭm-ō	-ĕrĕ	compress-ī	compress-um	*restrain*
rād-ō	-ĕrĕ	rās-ī	rās-um	*scrape*
rōd-ō	-ĕrĕ	rōs-ī	rōs-um	*gnaw*
sparg-ō	-ĕrĕ	spars-ī	spars-um	*scatter*
Comp. as asperg-ō	-ĕrĕ	aspers-ī	aspers-um	*sprinkle*
trūd-ō	-ĕrĕ	trūs-ī	trūs-um	*thrust*
vād-ō	-ĕrĕ	——	——	*go*
Comp. as ēvād-ō	-ĕrĕ	ēvās-ī	ēvās-um	*go forth*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
fīg-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**fix-ī**	**fix-um**	*fix*
flect-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**flex-ī**	**flex-um**	*bend*
flŭ-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**flux-ī**	**flux-um**	*flow*
nect-ō	-ĕrĕ	nex-ī	nex-um	*bind*
ning-ĭt *or* ningu-ĭt	-ĕrĕ	ninx-ĭt	——	*snow*

D.—Perfect formed by **V** preceded by long vowel.

cern-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**crēv-ī**	**crēt-um**	*discern*
lĭn-ō	-ĕrĕ	lēv-ī	lĭt-um	*besmear*
N.B.—Comp. :				
oblĭn-ō	-ĕrĕ	oblēv-ī	oblĭt-um	*besmear*
pĕt-ō (§ 201)	**-ĕrĕ**	**pĕtīv-ī** or **pĕtĭ-ī**	**pĕtīt-um**	*seek*
quaer-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**quaesīv-ī**	**quaesīt-um**	*seek*
Comp. as exquīr-ō	-ĕrĕ	exquīsīv-ī	exquīsīt-um	*seek out*
sĕr-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**sēv-ī**	**sătum**	*sow*
Comp. as **insĕr-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**insēv-ī**	**insĭt-um**	*ingraft*
sĭn-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**sīv-ī**	**sĭt-um**	*allow*
spern-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**sprēv-ī**	**sprēt-um**	*despise*
stern-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**strāv-ī**	**strāt-um**	*spread*
tĕr-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**trīv-ī**	**trīt-um**	*rub*
arcess-ō *or* accers-ō	-ĕrĕ	arcessīv-ī	arcessīt-um	*send for*
căpess-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**căpessīv-ī**	**căpessīt-um**	*take in hand*
lăcess-ō	-ĕrĕ	lăcessīv-ī	lăcessīt-um	*provoke*
incess-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**incessīv-ī**	——	*assault*

The present base of the following is inceptive (§ 284) in form :—

ădŏlesc-ō (§ 177)	**-ĕrĕ**	**ădŏlēv-ī**	**ădult-um**	*grow up*
cresc-ō (§ 177)	**-ĕrĕ**	**crēv-ī**	**crēt-um**	*grow*
nosc-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**nōv-ī**	**nōt-um**	*get to know*
Comp. (**noscō** has lost an initial **g**):				
agnosc-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**agnōv-ī**	**agnĭt-um**	*recognise*
cognosc-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cognōv-ī**	**cognĭt-um**	*ascertain*
ignosc-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**ignōv-ī**	**ignōt-um**	*overlook*
obsŏlesc-ō	-ĕrĕ	obsŏlēv-ī	obsŏlēt-um	*decay*
pasc-ō	-ĕrĕ	pāv-ī	past-um	*pasture*
quĭesc-ō	-ĕrĕ	quĭēv-ī	quĭēt-um	*rest*
scisc-ō	-ĕrĕ	scīv-ī	scīt-um	*enact*
suesc-ō (§§ 8, 177)	**-ĕrĕ**	**suēv-ī**	**suēt-um**	*become accustomed*

E.—Perfect formed by Ŭ.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ăl-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**ălŭ-ī**	**alt-um**	*nourish*
Compounds of căn-ō (§ 189, A.), as				
praecĭn-ō	-ĕrĕ	praecĭnŭ-ī	praecent-um	*sing before*
cŏl-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cŏlŭ-ī**	**cult-um**	*cultivate*
accumb-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**accŭbŭ-ī**	**accŭbĭt-um**	*recline at table*
incumb-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**incŭbŭ-ī**	**incŭbĭt-um**	*lean*
occumb-ō	-ĕrĕ	occŭbŭ-ī	occŭbĭt-um	*sink*
prōcumb-ō	-ĕrĕ	prōcŭbŭ-ī	prōcŭbĭt-um	*bend down*
rĕcumb-ō	-ĕrĕ	rĕcŭbŭ-ī	rĕcŭbĭt-um	*recline*
succumb-ō	-ĕrĕ	succŭbŭ-ī	succŭbĭt-um	*submit*
consŭl-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**consŭlŭ-ī**	**consult-um**	*consult*
frĕm-ō	-ĕrĕ	frĕmŭ-ī	frĕmĭt-um	*roar*
gĕm-ō	-ĕrĕ	gĕmŭ-ī	gĕmĭt-um	*groan*
gign-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**gĕnŭ-ī**	**gĕnĭt-um**	*produce*
occŭl-ō	-ĕrĕ	occŭlŭ-ī	occult-um	*hide*
pōn-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**pŏsŭ-ī**	**pŏsĭt-um**	*place*
sĕr-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	——	**sert-um**	*join*
Comp. as **conser-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**conserŭ-ī**	**consert-um**	*join*
tex-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**texŭ-ī**	**text-um**	*weave*
vŏm-ō	-ĕrĕ	vŏmŭ-ī	vŏmĭt-um	*vomit*
mĕt-ō	-ĕrĕ	(messem fēcī)	mess-um	*reap*
compesc-ō	-ĕrĕ	compescŭ-ī	——	*check*
strĕp-ō	-ĕrĕ	strĕpŭ-ī	——	*resound*
trĕm-ō	-ĕrĕ	trĕmŭ-ī	——	*tremble*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

ăcŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	ăcŭ-ī	ăcūt-um	*sharpen*
argŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	argŭ-ī	argūt-um	*accuse*
dīlŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	dīlŭ-ī	dīlūt-um	*wash out*
exŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	exŭ-ī	exūt-um	*strip off*
imbŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	imbŭ-ī	imbūt-um	*steep*
indŭ-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**indŭ-ī**	**indūt-um**	*put on*
mĭnŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	mĭnŭ-ī	mĭnūt-um	*lessen*
abnŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	abnŭ-ī	abnūt-um	*refuse*
annŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	annŭ-ī	annūt-um	*assent*
pollŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	pollŭ-ī	pollūt-um	*defile*
stătŭ-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**stătŭ-ī**	**stătūt-um**	*settle*
Compounds as **constĭtŭ-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**constĭtŭ-ī**	**constĭtūt-um**	*settle*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
sŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	sŭ-ī	sūt-um	*stitch*
trĭbŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	trĭbŭ-ī	trĭbūt-um	*assign*
rŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	rŭ-ī	rūt-um	*rush down*
Comp. as dīrŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	dīrŭ-ī	dīrŭt-um	*demolish*
mĕtŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	mĕtŭ-ī	——	*fear*
congrŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	congrŭ-ī	——	*agree*
lŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	lŭ-ī	——	*pay*
plŭ-ĭt	-ĕrĕ	plŭ-ĭt (*or* plūv-ĭt)	——	*rain*
solv-ō	-ĕrĕ	solv-ī	sŏlūt-um	*loose*
volv-ō	-ĕrĕ	volv-ī	vŏlūt-um	*roll*
făcess-ō	-ĕrĕ	făcess-ī	făcessīt-um	*accomplish*
accend-ō	-ĕrĕ	accend-ī	accens-um	*kindle*
incend-ō	-ĕrĕ	incend-ī	incens-um	*set on fire*
succend-ō	-ĕrĕ	succend-ī	succens-um	*kindle below*
dēfend-ō	-ĕrĕ	dēfend-ī	dēfens-um	*defend*
offend-ō	-ĕrĕ	offend-ī	offens-um	*stumble*
mand-ō	-ĕrĕ	mand-ī	mans-um	*chew*
pand-ō	-ĕrĕ	pand-ī	pass-um	*spread open*
prĕhend-ō	-ĕrĕ	prĕhend-ī	prĕhens-um	*seize*
scand-ō	-ĕrĕ	scand-ī	scans-um	*climb*
Comp. as ascend-ō	-ĕrĕ	ascend-ī	ascens-um	*climb up*
sīd-ō	-ĕrĕ	sīd-ī	——	*settle down*
Comp. as consīd-ō	-ĕrĕ	consēd-ī	consess-um	*settle down*
vell-ō	-ĕrĕ	vell-ī	vuls-um	*pluck*
verr-ō	-ĕrĕ	verr-ī	vers-um	*sweep*
vert-ō	-ĕrĕ	vert-ī	vers-um	*turn*
bĭb-ō	-ĕrĕ	bĭb-ī	——	*drink*
excūd-ō	-ĕrĕ	excūd-ī	excūs-um	*hammer out*
strīd-ō (§ 199)	-ĕrĕ	strīd-ī	——	*creak*
vīs-ō	-ĕrĕ	vīs-ī	——	*visit*

In the following the perfect base is identical with the verbal stem :—

find-ō	-ĕrĕ	fĭd-ī	fiss-um	*cleave*
scind-ō	-ĕrĕ	scĭd-ī	sciss-um	*rend*
percell-ō	-ĕrĕ	percŭl-ī	perculs-um	*overturn*

§ 190. Third Conjugation, with the Short-I Forms of the Fourth.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

păr-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpĕr-ī	part-um	*produce*

Compounds (4th conj.): compĕr-ĭō and rĕpĕr-ĭō (§ 191, F.)

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
căp-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cēp-ī**	**capt-um**	*take*
Comp. as **accĭp-ĭō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**accēp-ī**	**accept-um**	*receive*
făc-ĭō (§§ 200, 203)	**-ĕrĕ**	**fēc-ī**	**fact-um**	*make, do*
Comp. (§ 219) as **sătisfăc-ĭō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**sătisfēc-ī**	**sătisfact-um**	*satisfy*
,, with preps. as **affĭc-ĭō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**affēc-ī**	**affect-um**	*affect*
fŭg-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	**fūg-ī**	**fŭgĭt-um**	*flee*
iăc-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	**iēc-ī**	**iact-um**	*throw*
Comp. as **abĭc-ĭō***	**-ĕrĕ**	**abiēc-ī**	**abiect-um**	*throw away*
fŏd-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	**fōd-ī**	**foss-um**	*dig*

C.—Perfect formed by **S**.

allĭc-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	**allex-ī**	**allect-um**	*attract*
illĭc-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	**illex-ī**	**illect-um**	*entice*
pellĭc-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	**pellex-ī**	**pellect-um**	*entice*
spĕc-ĭō { (in old Lat. only) }	**-ĕrĕ**	**spex-ī**	——	*look*
Comp. as **aspĭc-ĭō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**aspex-ī**	**aspect-um**	*look at*
quăt-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	——	**quass-um**	*shake, agitate*
Comp. as **concŭt-ĭō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**concuss-ī**	**concuss-um**	*shake, agitate*

D.—Perfect formed by **V** preceded by long vowel (**I**).

cŭp-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cŭpīv-ī**	**cŭpīt-um**	*desire*
săp-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	**săpīv-ī**	——	*have taste, know*

E.—Perfect formed by **Ŭ**.

ēlĭc-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	**ēlĭcŭ-ī**	**ēlĭcĭt-um**	*lure forth*
răp-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	**răpŭ-ī**	**rapt-um**	*seize*
Comp. as **abrĭp-ĭō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**abrĭpŭ-ī**	**abrept-um**	*carry off*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

coep-ĭō { (pres. not classical) }	**-ĕrĕ**	**coep-ī** (§ 228)	**coept-um**	*begin*

* In compounds of **iăcĭō** the consonantal **i** is omitted in tenses formed from the present base, but the syllable of the prefix preceding the **i** is nevertheless counted long by position (§ 636, 3).

§ 191. Fourth Conjugation.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication: *none.*

B.—Perfect formed by vowel lengthening.

vĕn-ĭō	-īrĕ	vēn-ī	vent-um	*come*

C.—Perfect formed by **S.**

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
farc-ĭō	-īrĕ	fars-ī	fart-um	*stuff*
Comp. as rĕferc-ĭō	-īrĕ	rĕfers-ī	rĕfert-um	*stuff*
fulc-ĭō	-īrĕ	fuls-ī	fult-um	*prop*
haur-ĭō (§ 204)	-īrĕ	haus-ī	haust-um	*drain*
saep-ĭō	-īrĕ	saeps-ī	saept-um	*fence in*
sanc-ĭō	-īrĕ	sanx-ī	sanct-um *or* sancīt-um	*ratify*
sarc-ĭō	-īrĕ	sars-ī	sart-um	*patch*
vinc-ĭō	-īrĕ	vinx-ī	vinct-um	*bind*
sent-ĭō	-īrĕ	sens-ī	sens-um	*feel*

D.—Perfect formed by **V** preceded by long vowel (**I**).

This is the way in which the perfect base of audĭō and of other verbs of the fourth conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is irregular in—

sĕpĕl-ĭō	-īrĕ	sĕpĕlīv-ī	sĕpult-um	*bury*

E.—Perfect formed by **Ŭ.**

ămĭc-ĭō	-īrĕ	amĭcŭ-ī / ămix-ī	ămict-um	*clothe*
ăpĕr-ĭō	-īrĕ	ăpĕrŭ-ī	ăpert-um	*uncover, open*
ŏpĕr-ĭō	-īrĕ	ŏpĕrŭ-ī	ŏpert-um	*cover*
săl-ĭō	-īrĕ	sălŭ-ī	salt-um	*leap*
Comp. as dēsĭl-ĭō	-īrĕ	dēsĭlŭ-ī	dēsult-um	*leap down*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

compĕr-ĭō	-īrĕ	compĕr-ī	compert-um	*ascertain*
rĕpĕr-ĭō	-īrĕ	reppĕr-ī	rĕpert-um	*find*

Obs. For the double **p** in the perfect of rĕpĕrĭō, see § 294.

DEPONENT AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 192. First Conjugation.

All form their supine base like **hortŏr** (§ 178).

§ 193. Second Conjugation.

All form their supine base like **vĕrĕŏr** (§ 179), except—

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	
r-ĕŏr	**-ērī**	**rāt-ŭs sum**	*think*
fāt-ĕŏr	**-ērī**	**fass-ŭs sum**	*acknowledge*
Compounds as **confĭt-ĕŏr**	**-ērī**	**confess-ŭs sum**	*confess*
aud-ĕō (§§ 176, 200)	**-ērĕ**	**aus-ŭs sum**	*dare*
gaud-ĕō (§ 176)	**-ērĕ**	**gāvīs-ŭs sum**	*rejoice*

§ 194. Third Conjugation.

frŭ-ŏr (§§ 204, 205)	**-ī**	**fruct-ŭs sum**	*enjoy oneself*
fung-ŏr (§ 205)	**-ī**	**funct-ŭs sum**	*busy oneself*
lŏqu-ŏr	**-ī**	**lŏcūt-ŭs sum**	*speak*
quĕr-ŏr	**-ī**	**quest-ŭs sum**	*complain*
sĕqu-ŏr	**-ī**	**sĕcūt-ŭs sum**	*follow*
amplect-ŏr	-ī	amplex-ŭs sum	*embrace*
complect-ŏr	-ī	complex-ŭs sum	*embrace*
lāb-ŏr	**-ī**	**laps-ŭs sum**	*slide*
nīt-ŏr	**-ī**	**nīs-ŭs sum**, *I endeavoured* **nix-ŭs sum**, *I leaned*	*endeavour, lean*
ūt-ŏr (§ 205)	**-ī**	**ūs-ŭs sum**	*make use*
fīd-ō (§ 176)	**-ĕrĕ**	**fīs-ŭs sum**	*trust*

The present base of the following is inceptive (§ 284) in form :—

ăpisc-ŏr	-ī	apt-ŭs sum	*obtain*
Comp.: ădĭpisc-ŏr	-ī	ădept-ŭs sum	*obtain*
commĭnisc-ŏr	-ī	comment-ŭs sum	*devise*
expergisc-ŏr	-ī	experrect-ŭs sum	*awake oneself*
īrasc-ŏr	**-ī**	**īrāt-ŭs sum**	*get angry*
nancisc-ŏr	-ī	nact-ŭs sum	*obtain*
nasc-ŏr	**-ī**	**nāt-ŭs sum**	*be born*
oblīvisc-ŏr	**-ī**	**oblīt-ŭs sum**	*forget*
păcisc-ŏr	-ī	pact-ŭs sum	*bargain*
prŏfĭcisc-ŏr	**-ī**	**prŏfect-ŭs sum**	*set out*
ulcisc-ŏr	**-ī**	**ult-ŭs sum**	*take vengeance on, avenge*
dēfĕtisc-ŏr	-ī	dēfess-ŭs sum	*grow weary*

§ 195. Third Conjugation with the Short-I Forms of the Fourth.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	
mŏr-ĭŏr (§ 204)	-ī	mortŭ-ŭs sum	*die*
grădĭŏr	-ī	gress-ŭs sum	*step*
Compounds as			
aggrĕdĭŏr	-ī	aggress-ŭs sum	*attack*
păt-ĭŏr	-ī	pass-ŭs sum	*suffer*
Comp.: perpĕt-ĭŏr	-ī	perpess-ŭs sum	*endure*

§ 196. Fourth Conjugation.

All form their supine base like partĭŏr (§ 181), except—

expĕr-ĭŏr	-īrī	expert-ŭs sum	*try*
oppĕr-ĭŏr	-īrī	{oppert-ŭs / opperīt-ŭs} sum	*wait*
ŏr-ĭŏr (§§ 199, 204)	-īrī	ort-ŭs sum	*rise*
assent-ĭŏr	-īrī	assens-ŭs sum	*agree*
mēt-ĭŏr	-īrī	mens-ŭs sum	*measure*
ord-ĭŏr	-īrī	ors-ŭs sum	*begin*

MISCELLANEOUS.

§ 197. Verbs with Principal Parts from Various Roots.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
fĕr-ĭō	-īrĕ	{īc-ī / percuss-ī}	{ict-um / percuss-um}	*strike*
fĕrō (§ 212)	ferrĕ	tŭl-ī	lāt-um	*bear*
fīō (§ 218)	fĭĕrī	fact-ŭs sum		*become*
toll-ō	-ĕrĕ	sustŭl-ī	sublāt-um	*raise*

§ 198. Intransitive Active Verbs used in Place of Passive Verbs.

fīō (§ 218), {*I become, am made,*} serves as the passive of făcĭō, *I make, do*
pĕrĕō (§ 215), *I perish* „ „ „ perdō, *I destroy*
vāpŭl-ō, -ārĕ, *I get whipped* „ „ „ verbĕrō, *I whip*
vēnĕō (§ 215), *I am on sale* „ „ „ vendō, *I sell*

CHAPTER XXII.—IRREGULARITIES IN THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

§ 199. Verbs with Forms belonging to Two Conjugations.

(1) **Lăvō**, *I wash* (1st conj.), has in poetry pres. infin. act. **lăvĕrĕ**, and some persons of the pres. indic. act. (*e.g.* **lăvĭt**) from a 3rd conjugation stem.

(2) **Fervĕō**, *I am boiling* (2nd conj.), and **fulgĕō**, *I gleam* (2nd conj.), have similarly in poetry **fervĕrĕ** and **fervĭt**, **fulgĕrĕ** and **fulgĭt**.

(3) **Strīdĕō**, *I creak* (2nd conj.), and **strīdō** (3rd conj.), are both in common use.

(4) **Cĭĕō**, *I arouse* (2nd conj.), has a 4th conjugation form **cīō**, which is rarely used in the simple verb, but is the common or only form in the compounds. The supine (**cĭtum**) retains **i** short in the compounds, except in **accīō**, *I summon* (supine **accītum**); **excĭō**, *I call forth*, has **excĭtum** or **excītum**. The imperfect indicative often ends in **-ībam** (§ 152).

(5) **Ŏrĭŏr**, *I rise* (4th conj.), has in pres. indic. **ŏrĕrĭs**, **ŏrĭtŭr**, **ŏrĭmŭr**, and in imperf. subj. **ŏrĕrētŭr**, **ŏrĕrentŭr**, both in the simple verb and in the compounds, the fourth conjugation forms of these parts being rarely found.

(6) **Pŏtĭŏr**, *I get possession* (4th conj.), similarly has in pres. indic. **pŏtĭtŭr**, and in imperf. subj. **pŏtĕrētŭr**, **pŏtĕrēmŭr**, **pŏtĕrentŭr**.

§ 200. Old Forms of the Future-Perfect Indicative and Perfect Subjunctive.

In the older Latin writers many verbs have a future-perfect formed by the addition of **-assō** to the present base in the first conjugation, **-sō** in the third conjugation, and **-essō** or **-sō** in the second; also a perfect subjunctive formed by the addition of **-assim** to the present base in the first conjugation, **-sim** in the third conjugation, and **-essim** or **-sim** in the second. The two tenses are identical in form except in the first person singular.

First Conjugation: **lĕv-assō** (**lĕv-ō**, *lighten*), **adclār-assīs** (**adclār-ō**, *make clear*), **rŏg-assint** (**rŏg-ō**, *ask*);

Second Conjugation: **prŏhĭb-essĭt** (**prŏhĭb-ĕō**, *hinder*), **au-sim** (**aud-ĕō**, *dare*, **d** being dropped before **s**);

Third Conjugation: **faxō** (indic.), **faxim** (subj.), **faxīs**, **faxĭt**, **faxīmŭs**, **faxītĭs**, **faxint** (**făc-ĭō**, *make, do*, **cs** becoming **x**).

Făcĭō is the only verb of which all these forms exist; such parts of other verbs as occur are similarly conjugated.

In classical times only **faxō**, **faxīs**, **ausim**, **ausīs** were in common use. They should not be used by the learner in writing Latin prose.

§ 201. VERBS WITH PERFECT BASE ENDING IN V.

For the shorter form of tenses formed from the perfect base of verbs with perfect ending in -āvī or -ēvī, see § 153. Many verbs with perfect ending in -ēvī or -ōvī have similar short forms; *e.g.*:—

flestī	= flēvistī (flĕō, *weep*)	nostī	= nōvistī
dēlērunt	= dēlēvērunt (dēlĕō, *destroy*)	nōrunt	= nōvērunt
implērăt	= implēvĕrat (implĕō, *fill*)	nōrăt	= nōvĕrăt
adsuērint	= adsuēvĕrint (adsuescō, *be wont*)	nōrint	= nōvĕrint
quĭessem	= quĭēvissem (quĭescō, *rest*)	nossem	= nōvissem

noscō, *I get to know*

Similarly, in compounds of mŏvĕō, *set in motion*, we find, though the v belongs to the verbal stem, admōrunt (= admōvērunt), commossĕ (= commōvissĕ), etc.

In the first person singular of the perfect indicative active, dēsĭnō, *desist*, always has dēsĭī, and pĕtō, *seek*, has pĕtīvī or pĕtĭī. Pĕtĭīt (cp. ĭīt, § 214) is occasionally contracted to pĕtīt.

§ 202. SHORT FORMS OF VERBS WITH PERFECT BASE IN S.

The following and similar forms are occasionally found in poetry:—

dixtī	for	dixistī,	from	dīcō	*say* (in prose also)
ēvastī	„	ēvāsistī,	„	ēvādō	*go out*
traxĕ	„	traxissĕ,	„	trăhō	*draw*
ērepsēmŭs	„	ērepsissēmŭs	„	ērēpō	*crawl out*

§ 203. IMPERATIVE PRESENT WITHOUT FINAL VOWEL.

In the second person singular of the present imperative active, the three following verbs—dīcō, *say*; dūcō, *lead*; făcĭō, *make, do*—have respectively dīc, dūc, făc, the final -ĕ being dropped. This applies to the compounds dīcō and dūcō, and to compounds of făcĭō which retain a in the present base; other compounds are regular, *e.g.* affĭcĭō, *affect*, has imperative affĭcĕ.

§ 204. FUTURE PARTICIPLES NOT FORMED FROM SUPINE BASE.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Supine.	Future Participle.	
iŭv-ō	-ārĕ	iūt-um	iŭvātūr-ŭs	*delight*
sŏn-ō	-ārĕ	sŏnĭt-um	sŏnātūr-ŭs	*sound*
parc-ō	-ĕrĕ	——	parsūr-ŭs	*be sparing*
haur-ĭō	-īrĕ	haust-um Perf. Part.	hausūr-ŭs haustūr-ŭs	*drain*
frŭ-ŏr	-ī	fruct-ŭs	frŭĭtūr-ŭs	*enjoy oneself*
mŏr-ĭŏr	-ī	mortŭ-ŭs	mŏrĭtūr-ŭs	*die*
ŏr-ĭŏr	-īrī	ort-ŭs	ŏrĭtūr-ŭs	*rise*

§ 205. GERUNDIVE OF INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

Only transitive verbs, as a rule, have a gerundive. Four intransitive verbs, which were transitive in early Latin, retain their gerundive in the classical period; these are frŭŏr, fungŏr, pŏtĭŏr, ūtŏr, which were used transitively with the meanings respectively of *enjoy, perform, obtain, use.*

CHAPTER XXIII.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 206. Under this heading are included verbs in which the tenses formed from the present base (§ 133) do not all conform to any one of the models given in the foregoing pages, *viz.* :—

I. **Sum**, *I am*, and its compounds.
II. **Vŏlō**, *I will, am willing*, with its two compounds—**nōlō**, *I will not, am unwilling*; **mālō**, *I am more willing, prefer*.
III. **Fĕrō**, *I bear*, and its compounds.
IV. **Ĕō**, *I go*, and its compounds; also **quĕō**, *I am able*, and **nĕquĕō**, *I am unable*, conjugated like **ĕō**.
V. **Fīō**, *I become*, and its compounds.
VI. **Ēdō**, *I eat*, and two compounds.
VII. **Dō**, *I give*, and its compound **circumdō**.

I.—*SUM* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

§ 207. The ordinary forms of this verb are given in § 134 (pp. 78, 79).

Obs. After a word ending in a vowel or **m**, **est** is in many editions of the classics printed **st**, either attached to the preceding word or separately; *e.g.* **vīsast** or **vīsă st** = **vīsă est** (*she has been seen*), **dĕcōrumst** or **dĕcōrum st** = **dĕcōrum est** (*it is seemly*). This represents what was probably the pronunciation.

§ 208. *Present Subjunctive.*—The following forms belong chiefly to early Latin:—

SINGULAR:	**sĭem**	**sĭēs**	**sĭĕt**	PLURAL (3rd person):	**sĭent**
„	**fŭam**	**fŭās**	**fŭăt**	„	„	**fŭant**

§ 209. COMPOUNDS.

The following are conjugated like **sum**:—

Present Indic.	Present Infin.	Perfect.	
ab-sum	**ăb-essĕ**	**āfŭ-ī**	*am absent*
ad-sum	**ăd-essĕ**	**affŭ-ī**	*am present*
dē-sum	**dē-essĕ**	**dēfŭ-ī**	*am wanting*
in-sum	**ĭn-essĕ**	**infŭ-ī**	*am in*
inter-sum	**intĕr-essĕ**	**interfŭ-ī**	*am in the midst*
ob-sum	**ŏb-essĕ**	**obfŭ-ī**	*am harmful*
prae-sum	**prae-essĕ**	**praefŭ-ī**	*am in command*
prō-sum	**prōd-essĕ**	**prōfŭ-ī**	*am beneficial*
sub-sum	**sŭb-essĕ**	——	*am under*
sŭper-sum	**sŭpĕr-essĕ**	**sŭperfŭ-ī**	*am left*

NOTE 1.—**Prōsum** retains **d** (§ 292, NOTE) before **e**; *e.g.* the present indicative is

prō-sum	**prō-sŭmŭs**
prōd-ĕs	**prōd-estĭs**
prōd-est	**prō-sunt**

Similarly **prōsum** has imperfect indicative **prōdĕram**, future indicative **prōdĕrō**, etc.

Absum generally has **ā-** instead of **ăb-** before **f**; *e.g.* **āfŭī**, **āfŏrĕ**.

NOTE 2.—**Absum** has a present participle **absens** (gen. **absent-ĭs**), *absent*, and **praesum** has a present participle **praesens** (gen. **praesent-ĭs**), *present*. These are the only compounds in which a present participle of **sum** is found.

§ 210. **Possum**, *I am able, I can* (consisting of the base of the adjective **pŏt-ĭs**, *able*, + **sum**), is conjugated as follows :—

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **possum, possĕ, pŏtŭ-ī.**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE (used as adjective only): **pŏtens** (gen. **pŏtent-ĭs**), *powerful*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am able.*)

pos-sum	**pos-sŭmŭs**
pŏt-ĕs	**pŏt-estĭs**
pŏt-est	**pos-sunt**

IMPERFECT. (*I was able.*)

pŏt-ĕram	**pŏt-ĕrāmŭs**
pŏt-ĕrās	**pŏt-ĕrātĭs**
pŏt-ĕrăt	**pŏt-ĕrant**

FUTURE. (*I shall be able.*)

pŏt-ĕrō	**pŏt-ĕrĭmŭs**
pŏt-ĕrĭs	**pŏt-ĕrĭtĭs**
pŏt-ĕrĭt	**pŏt-ĕrunt**

PERFECT.* (*I was* or *have been able.*)

pŏtŭ-ī, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I had been able.*)

pŏtŭ-ĕram, etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have been able.*)

pŏtŭ-ĕrō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should be able.*)

pos-sim	**pos-sīmŭs**
pos-sīs	**pos-sītĭs**
pos-sĭt	**pos-sint**

IMPERFECT. (*I should be able.*)

pos-sem	**pos-sēmŭs**
pos-sēs	**pos-sētĭs**
pos-sĕt	**pos-sent**

PERFECT.

pŏtŭ-ĕrim, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have been able.*

pŏtŭ-issem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

None.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **possĕ**, *to be able.*

PERFECT: **pŏtŭ-issĕ**, *to have been able.*

Obs. **Possum** has no supine or other parts which are formed from the supine base of verbs.

NOTE.—Instead of **pŏtest** the full form **pŏtĭs est** is occasionally found, and sometimes **pŏtĭs** (masc. and fem.) or **pŏtĕ** (neut.) stands alone as an equivalent for **pŏtest**. **Pŏtĭs** with other parts of **sum** is rare.

* Tenses formed from the perfect or supine base of irregular verbs are conjugated regularly. Cp. § 135.

II.—*VOLO*, *NOLO*, AND *MALO*.

§ 211. PRINCIPAL PARTS :—

vŏlō, vellĕ, vŏlŭ-ī, *I will, am willing.*

nōlō (ne-, *not*, + vŏlō), nollĕ, nōlŭ-ī, *I will not, am unwilling.*

mālō (măg-, as in măgĭs, *more*, + vŏlō), mallĕ, mālŭ-ī, *I am more willing, prefer.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.		
vŏlens (gen. vŏlent-ĭs), *willing.*	nōlens (gen. nōlent-ĭs), *unwilling.*	*None.*
INDICATIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT	(*I am willing*) vŏlō vīs vult vŏlŭmŭs vultĭs vŏlunt	(*I am unwilling*) nōlō nōn vīs nōn vult nōlŭmŭs nōn vultĭs nōlunt	(*I prefer*) mālō māvīs māvult mālŭmŭs māvultĭs mālunt
IMPERFECT	(*I was willing*) vŏlēbam vŏlēbās vŏlēbăt vŏlēbāmŭs vŏlēbātĭs vŏlēbant	(*I was unwilling*) nōlēbam nōlēbās nōlēbăt nōlēbāmŭs nōlēbātĭs nōlēbant	(*I was preferring*) mālēbam mālēbās mālēbăt mālēbāmŭs mālēbātĭs mālēbant
FUTURE	(*I shall be willing*) vŏlam vŏlēs vŏlĕt vŏlēmŭs vŏlētĭs vŏlent	(*I shall be unwilling*) (nōlam) nōlēs nōlĕt (nōlēmŭs) (nōlētĭs) (nōlent)	(*I shall prefer*) (mālam) (mālēs) (mālĕt) (mālēmŭs) (mālētĭs) (mālent)
PERFECT	(*I was* or *have been willing*) vŏlŭ-ī, etc.	(*I was* or *have been unwilling*) nōlŭ-ī, etc.	(*I preferred* or *have preferred*) mālŭ-ī, etc.
PLUPERFECT	(*I had been willing*) vŏlŭ-ĕram, etc.	(*I had been unwilling*) nōlŭ-ĕram, etc.	(*I had preferred*) mālŭ-ĕram, etc.
FUTURE-PERFECT	(*I shall have been willing*) vŏlŭ-ĕrō, etc.	(*I shall have been unwilling*) nōlŭ-ĕrō, etc.	(*I shall have preferred*) mālŭ-ĕrō, etc.

	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT	(*I should be willing*) vĕlim vĕlīs vĕlĭt vĕlīmŭs vĕlītĭs vĕlint	(*I should be unwilling*) nōlim nōlīs nōlĭt nōlīmŭs nōlītĭs nōlint	(*I should prefer*) mālim mālīs mālĭt mālīmŭs mālītĭs mālint
IMPERFECT	(*I should be willing*) vellem vellēs vellĕt vellēmŭs vellētĭs vellent	(*I should be unwilling*) nollem nollēs nollĕt nollēmŭs nollētĭs nollent	(*I should prefer*) mallem mallēs mallĕt mallēmŭs mallētĭs mallent
PERFECT	vŏlŭ-ĕrim, etc.	nōlŭ-ĕrim, etc.	mālŭ-ĕrim, etc.
PLUPERFECT	(*I should have been willing*) vŏlŭ-issem, etc.	(*I should have been unwilling*) nōlŭ-issem, etc.	(*I should have preferred*) mālŭ-issem, etc.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT	*None*	(*Be unwilling*) nōlī nōlītĕ	*None*
FUTURE	*None*	(*Thou shalt be unwilling*) nōlītō nōlītō nōlītōtĕ nōluntō	*None*
	INFINITIVE.		
PRESENT	vellĕ, *to be willing*	nollĕ, *to be unwilling*	mallĕ, *to prefer*
PERFECT	vŏlŭ-issĕ, *to have been willing*	nōlŭ-issĕ, *to have been unwilling*)	mālŭ-issĕ, *to have preferred*

Obs. **Vŏlō, nōlō,** and **mālō** have no supine or other parts which are formed from the supine base of verbs ; nor have they any gerund.

NOTE 1.—**Vult, vultĭs** are sometimes spelt **volt, voltĭs.** (See § 2, NOTE.)

NOTE 2.—**Sī vīs,** *if thou wilt,* is sometimes contracted to **sīs.**

III.—*FERO* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

§ 212. PRINCIPAL PARTS: fĕr-ō, fer-rĕ, tŭl-ī, lāt-um, *I bear.*

BASES: fĕr- (present); tŭl- (perfect); lāt- (supine).

Obs. The perfect and supine bases of this verb are in no way connected with its present base, but are akin to tollō, *I raise.* The supine (tlātum) has lost an initial **t.**

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
PARTICIPLES.	
PRESENT: fĕr-ens (gen. fĕrent-ĭs), *bearing*	PERFECT: lāt-ŭs, lāt-ă, lāt-um, *borne* or *having been borne*
FUTURE: lāt-ūrŭs, lāt-ūră, lāt-ūrum, *about to bear*	GERUNDIVE: fĕr-endŭs, fĕr-endă, fĕr-endum, *fit to be borne*
INDICATIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT. (*I bear.*)	PRESENT. (*I am borne.*)
fĕr-ō — fĕr-ĭmŭs	fĕr-ŏr — fĕr-ĭmŭr
fer-s — fer-tĭs	fer-rĭs — fĕr-ĭmĭnī
fer-t — fĕr-unt	fer-tŭr — fĕr-untŭr
IMPERFECT. (*I was bearing.*)	IMPERFECT. (*I was being borne.*)
fĕr-ēbam — fĕr-ēbāmŭs	fĕr-ēbăr — fĕr-ēbāmŭr
fĕr-ēbās — fĕr-ēbātĭs	fĕr-ēbārĭs *or* -ēbārĕ — fĕr-ēbāmĭnī
fĕr-ēbăt — fĕr-ēbant	fĕr-ēbātŭr — fĕr-ēbantŭr
FUTURE. (*I shall bear.*)	FUTURE. (*I shall be borne.*)
fĕr-am — fĕr-ēmŭs	fĕr-ăr — fĕr-ēmŭr
fĕr-ēs — fĕr-ētĭs	fĕr-ērĭs *or* fĕr-ērĕ — fĕr-ēmĭnī
fĕr-ĕt — fĕr-ent	fĕr-ētŭr — fĕr-entŭr
PERFECT. (*I bore* or *have borne.*) tŭl-ī, etc.	PERFECT. (*I was* or *have been borne.*) lāt-ŭs sum, etc.
PLUPERFECT. (*I had borne.*) tŭl-ĕram, etc.	PLUPERFECT. (*I had been borne.*) lāt-ŭs ĕram, etc.
FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have borne.*) tŭl-ĕrō, etc.	FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have been borne.*) lāt-ŭs ĕrō, etc.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT. (*I should bear.*)	PRESENT. (*I should be borne.*)
fĕr-am — fĕr-āmŭs	fĕr-ăr — fĕr-āmŭr
fĕr-ās — fĕr-ātĭs	fĕr-ārĭs *or* fĕr-ārĕ — fĕr-āmĭnī
fĕr-ăt — fĕr-ant	fĕr-ātŭr — fĕr-antŭr
IMPERFECT. (*I should be bearing.*)	IMPERFECT. (*I should be borne.*)
fer-rem — fer-rēmŭs	fer-rĕr — fer-rēmŭr
fer-rēs — fer-rētĭs	fer-rērĭs *or* fer-rērĕ — fer-rēmĭnī
fer-rĕt — fer-rent	fer-rētŭr — fer-rentŭr

ACTIVE VOICE.

SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

PERFECT.

tŭl-ĕrim, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have borne.*)

tŭl-issem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Bear.*)

fĕr fer-tĕ

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must bear.*)

fer-tō fer-tōtĕ
fer-tō fĕr-untō

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFIN. PRES.: fer-rĕ, *to bear*
„ PERF.: tŭl-issĕ, *to have borne*
„ FUT.: lātūr-ŭs essĕ, *to be about to bear*
GERUND: fĕr-endum, *bearing*, etc.
SUPINE: lāt-um, *to bear*; lāt-ū, *in bearing*

PASSIVE VOICE.

SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

PERFECT.

lāt-ŭs sim, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have been borne.*)

lāt-ŭs essem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Be borne.*)

fer-rĕ fĕr-ĭmĭnī

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must be borne.*)

fer-tōr
fer-tŏr fĕr-untŏr

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFIN. PRES.: fer-rī, *to be borne*
„ PERF.: lāt-ŭs essĕ, *to have been borne*
„ FUT.: lātum īrī, *to be about to be borne*

§ 213. COMPOUNDS.

The following list shows the principal parts of the compounds of fĕrō; they are conjugated like the simple verb both in the active and in the passive :—

Compounded with					
ăb:	aufĕr-ō	-rĕ	abstŭl-ī	ablāt-um	*bear away*
ăd:	affĕr-ō	-rĕ	attŭl-ī	allāt-um	*bring*
cum:	confĕr-ō	-rĕ	contŭl-ī	collāt-um	*bring together*
dĭs-:	differ-ō	-rĕ	distŭl-ī	dīlāt-um	*separate*
ex:	effĕr-ō	-rĕ	extŭl-ī	ēlāt-um	*bring out*
ĭn:	infĕr-ō	-rĕ	intŭl-ī	illāt-um	*bring in*
ŏb:	offĕr-ō	-rĕ	obtŭl-ī	oblāt-um	*offer*
rĕ-:	rĕfĕr-ō	-rĕ	rettŭl-ī (§ 294)	rĕlāt-um	*bear back*
rē:	rēfer-t (§ 233)	-rĕ	rētŭl-ĭt	——	*concern*
sŭb:	suffĕr-ō	-rĕ	sustŭl-ī	sublāt-um	*endure*
Other preps. unchanged, as in dēfĕr-ō		-rĕ	dētŭl-ī	dēlāt-um	*bear down*

IV.—*EO* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

§ 214. PRINCIPAL PARTS: ĕō, īrĕ, īv-ī, ĭt-um, *I go.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: ĭens (gen. ĕunt-ĭs), *going.*
{ FUTURE: ĭt-ūrŭs, ĭt-ūrā, ĭt-ūrum, *about to go.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I go.*)

ĕō	īmŭs
īs	ītĭs
ĭt	ĕunt

IMPERFECT. (*I was going.*)

ībam	ībāmŭs
ībās	ībātĭs
ībăt	ībant

FUTURE. (*I shall go.*)

ībō	ībĭmŭs
ībĭs	ībĭtĭs
ībĭt	ībunt

PERFECT. (*I went* or *have gone.*)

īvī *or* ĭī	īvĭmŭs *or* ĭīmŭs
īvistī (ĭistī) *or* istī	īvistĭs (ĭistĭs) *or* istĭs
īvĭt, ĭit (*or* īt)	{ īvērunt *or* ĭērunt { īvērĕ *or* ĭērĕ

PLUPERFECT. (*I had gone.*)
īv-ĕram *or* ī-ĕram, etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have gone.*)
īv-ĕrō *or* ī-ĕrō, etc.

Obs. In the simple verb (but not in the compounds) the forms with **v** are more usual in tenses formed from the perfect base. The second **i** of **iit** is long; cp. pĕtĭīt, § 201. The forms included in brackets ( ) are comparatively rare.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should go.*)

ĕam	ĕāmŭs
ĕās	ĕātĭs
ĕăt	ĕant

IMPERFECT. (*I should be going.*)

īrem	īrēmŭs
īrēs	īrētĭs
īrĕt	īrent

PERFECT.
īv-ĕrim *or* ī-ĕrim, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have gone.*)
īv-issem (ī-issem) *or* issem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Go.*)

ī	ītĕ

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must go.*)

ītō	ītōtĕ
ītō	ĕuntō

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: īrĕ, *to go*
PERFECT: īvissĕ (ĭissĕ) *or* issĕ, *to have gone*
FUTURE: ĭtūr-ŭs essĕ, *to be about to go*

GERUND.

Nom. ĕundum, *going*, etc.

SUPINE.

Acc. ĭt-um, *to go*

PASSIVE VOICE (IMPERSONAL ONLY, § 230, 2, *b*).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT:	ītŭr
IMPERFECT:	ībātŭr
FUTURE:	ībĭtŭr

So also the other tenses; *e.g.* Perfect, **ītum est.**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT:	ĕātŭr
IMPERFECT:	īrētŭr

INFINITIVE

PRESENT: īrī

§ 215. COMPOUNDS.

The following are conjugated like ĕō; in the tenses formed from the perfect base the forms without v are more usual:—

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ăb-ĕō	ăbĭ-ī	ăbĭt-um	*go away*
*ăd-ĕō	ădĭ-ī	ădĭt-um	*approach*
cŏ-ĕō	cŏĭ-ī	cŏĭt-um	*come together*
*ĭn-ĕō	ĭnĭ-ī	ĭnĭt-um	*enter*
intĕr-ĕō	intĕrĭ-ī	intĕrĭt-um	*vanish*
intrŏ-ĕō	intrŏĭ-ī	intrŏĭt-um	*go in*
*ŏb-ĕō	ŏbĭ-ī	ŏbĭt-um	*traverse, die*
pĕr-ĕō	pĕrĭ-ī	pĕrĭt-um	*perish*
prae-ĕō	praeĭ-ī	praeĭt-um	*precede*
prōd-ĕō	prōdĭ-ī	prōdĭt-um	*go forth*
praetĕr-ĕō	praetĕrĭ-ī	praetĕrĭt-um	*go past*
rĕd-ĕō	rĕdĭ-ī	rĕdĭt-um	*go back*
*sŭb-ĕō	sŭbĭ-ī	sŭbĭt-um	*go up to, endure*
*trans-ĕō	transĭ-ī	transĭt-um	*go across*
vēn-ĕō	vēnĭ-ī	vēnĭt-um	*go on sale*

NOTE.—Ambĭō, *I go around*, is a regular verb of the 4th conj.

§ 216. The compounds marked (*) in the above list may, when they have a transitive meaning, be conjugated in the passive in all three persons as follows:—

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT: ădĭt-ŭs, ădĭt-ă, ădĭt-um, *approached* or *having been approached*.
GERUNDIVE: ăd-ĕundŭs, ăd-ĕundă, ăd-ĕundum, *fit to be approached*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am approached.*)

ăd-ĕŏr	ăd-īmŭr
ăd-īrĭs	ăd-īmĭnī
ăd-ītŭr	ăd-ĕuntŭr

IMPERF.: ăd-ībăr, ăd-ībārĭs, etc.
FUTURE: ăd-ībŏr, ăd-ībĕrĭs, etc.
PERFECT: ădĭt-ŭs sum, etc.
PLUPERF.: ădĭt-ŭs ĕram, etc.
FUT.-PF.: ădĭt-ŭs ĕrō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT: ăd-ĕăr, ăd-ĕārĭs, etc.
IMPERF.: ăd-īrĕr, ăd-īrērĭs, etc.
PERFECT: ădĭt-ŭs sim, etc.
PLUPERF.: ădĭt-ŭs essem, etc.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: ăd-īrī, *to be approached*
PERFECT: ădĭt-ŭs essĕ, *to have been approached*

QUEO AND *NEQUEO*.

§ 217. PRINCIPAL PARTS:—

qu-ĕō, qu-īrĕ, quīv-ī, quĭt-um, *I can.*
nĕqu-ĕō, nĕqu-īrĕ, nĕquīv-ī, nĕquĭt-um, *I cannot.*

These two verbs are conjugated exactly like ĕō, except that they have no imperative or gerund.

NOTE.—In tenses from the perfect base the forms with v and those without v are used indifferently, except that the latter do not occur in the first person (singular or plural) of the perfect indicative. (Cp. § 153, *Obs.* 1.)

V.—*FIO* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

§ 218. **Fīō**, *I become, am made*, takes the place of the passive of **făcĭō**, *I make*, in tenses formed from the present base. The other tenses of **fīō** are supplied by the passive voice of **făcĭō**, of which the supine base is **fact-**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fīō, fĭĕrī, fact-ŭs sum.**

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT: **fact-ŭs, fact-ă, fact-um**, *having become.* GERUNDIVE: **făcĭend-ŭs, -ă, -um**, *fit to become.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I become.*)

fīō	——
fīs	——
fīt	**fĭunt**

IMPERFECT. (*I was becoming.*)

fīēbam	**fīēbāmŭs**
fīēbās	**fīēbātĭs**
fīēbăt	**fīēbant**

FUTURE. (*I shall become.*)

fĭam	**fīēmŭs**
fīēs	**fīētĭs**
fīĕt	**fĭent**

PERFECT: **fact-ŭs sum**, etc.
PLUPERF: **fact-ŭs ĕram**, etc.
FUT.-PERF.: **fact-ŭs ĕrō**, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should become.*)

fĭam	**fĭāmŭs**
fĭās	**fĭātĭs**
fĭăt	**fĭant**

IMPERFECT. (*I should become.*)

fĭĕrem	**fĭĕrēmŭs**
fĭĕrēs	**fĭĕrētĭs**
fĭĕrĕt	**fĭĕrent**

PERFECT: **fact-ŭs sim**, etc.
PLUPERF.: **fact-ŭs essem**, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Become.*)

fī	**fītĕ**

FUTURE. *None.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **fĭĕrī**, *to become.* PERFECT: **fact-ŭs essĕ**, *to have become.*
FUTURE: **factum īrī**, *to be about to become.*

Obs. Except in the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive (cp. § 142), **fīō** follows the fourth conjugation; it has, however, **ī** (long) in all parts except **fīt, fĭĕrī**, and the imperfect subjunctive.

§ 219. COMPOUNDS.

Compounds of **făcĭō** with a preposition are regularly conjugated in the passive; *e.g.* **affĭcĭō**, *I affect* (compounded of the preposition **ăd**, *to*, and **făcĭō**), has passive **affĭcĭŏr**.

Other compounds of **făcĭō** employ **fīō** as their passive in those parts which are formed from the present base; *e.g.* **călĕfăcĭō**, *I make hot*, has passive **călĕfīō**.

NOTE.—**Confĭcĭō**, *I accomplish*, sometimes has passive **confīō** instead of the regular and more usual form **confĭcĭŏr**.

Dēfīō is occasionally found, and has the same meaning as **dēfĭcĭō**, viz. *I fail, come to an end.*

VI.—*EDO* AND COMPOUNDS.

§ 220. The tenses given below are the only ones in which ĕdō is irregular.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: ĕd-ō, ĕd-ĕrĕ or ĕssĕ, ēd-ī, ēs-um, *I eat.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I eat.*)

ĕd-ō	ĕd-ĭmŭs
ĕd-ĭs *or* ēs	ĕd-ĭtĭs *or* estĭs
ĕd-ĭt *or* est	ĕd-unt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should eat.*)

ĕd-am *or* ĕd-im	ĕd-āmŭs *or* ĕd-īmŭs
ĕd-ās *or* ĕd-īs	ĕd-ātĭs *or* ĕd-ītĭs
ĕd-ăt *or* ĕd-ĭt	ĕd-ant *or* ĕd-int

SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

IMPERFECT. (*I should be eating.*)

ĕd-ĕrem *or* essem	ĕd-ĕrēmŭs *or* essēmŭs
ĕd-ĕrēs *or* essēs	ĕd-ĕrētĭs *or* essētĭs
ĕd-ĕrĕt *or* essĕt	ĕd-ĕrent *or* essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Eat.*)

ĕd-ĕ *or* ēs	ĕd-ĭtĕ *or* estĕ

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt eat.*)

ĕd-ĭtō *or* estō	ĕd-ĭtōtĕ *or* estōtĕ
ĕd-ĭtō *or* estō	ĕd-untō

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: ĕd-ĕrĕ *or* essĕ, *to eat.*

Obs. It should be noticed that, in all parts of the verb in which sum, *I am*, has forms beginning with the letters es, ĕdō has forms exactly similar, excepting that in the second person singular of the present indicative and imperative sum has ĕs, whereas ĕdō has ēs.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Two irregular forms are occasionally found in the passive voice of ĕdō, viz. estŭr (for ĕdĭtŭr, 3rd sing. pres. indic.), and essētŭr (for ĕdĕrētur, 3rd sing. imperf. subj.).

§ 221. COMPOUNDS.

Two compounds of ĕdō occasionally follow the irregular conjugation of the simple verb, viz. cŏmĕdō, *I eat up*, and exĕdō, *I devour.*

VII.—*DO* AND ITS COMPOUND *CIRCUMDO.*

§ 222. Dō (perfect dĕdi) follows the first conjugation, but has ă (short) instead of ā after d in parts formed from the present or supine base (*e.g.* dămŭs, dătŭs), except in the second person singular of the present indicative and imperative active, dās, dā.

§ 223. In addition to the regular form, dō has an old present subjunctive dŭim, dŭīs, dŭĭt; dŭint. This occurs also in some of the compounds of dō.

§ 224. Circumdō is conjugated like dō; the other compounds belong to the third conjugation.

CHAPTER XXIV.—DEFECTIVE VERBS.

The following verbs are defective, that is to say only the parts given below are in use.

§ 225. Āiō, *I say.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE : āiens (gen. āient-ĭs), *saying.*
INDICATIVE PRESENT : āiō (*I say*), āĭs, āĭt, āiunt.
„ IMPERFECT: āiēbam (*I was saying*), etc. (complete).
„ PERFECT : āĭt, *he said.*
SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT : āiăt, *he would say.*

§ 226. Inquam, *I say.*

INDICATIVE PRESENT: inquam, inquĭs, inquĭt, inquĭmŭs, inquĭunt.
„ IMPERF.: inquĭēbăt, *he was saying.*
„ FUTURE : inquĭēs, inquĭĕt, *he will say.*
„ PERFECT: inquiī, inquistī, inquĭt.

§ 227. Fārī, *to say.* (The simple verb is only used in poetry.)

PARTICIPLE PRESENT : fantem (acc.), fantī (dat.), *saying.*
„ PERFECT: fāt-ŭs, fāt-ă, *having said.*
„ GERUNDIVE : fand-ŭs, -ă, -um, *fit to be said.*
INDICATIVE PRESENT: fātŭr, *he says.*
„ FUTURE : fābŏr (*I shall say*), fābĭtŭr.
„ PERFECT: fāt-ŭs est, *he said* or *has said.*
„ PLUPERFECT: fāt-ŭs ĕram (*I had said*), fāt-ŭs ĕrăt.
IMPERATIVE PRESENT : fārĕ, *say.* INFIN. PRESENT : fārī, *to say.*
GERUND : fandī, fandō (*saying*). SUPINE : fātū, *in saying.*

Some other parts (present, imperfect, and future indicative) of the compounds of fārī occur.

§ 228. The following have no present base in use :—

coep-ī, *I began*; mĕmĭn-ī, *I remember*; ōd-ī, *I hate.*

They are regularly conjugated in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses, which (in the case of mĕmĭnī and ōdī) are translated respectively as present, imperfect, and future. Some other parts are in use :—

From coepī : Perf. part. pass., coept-ŭs, -ă, -um, and tenses formed by it with sum.
„ mĕmĭnī : Imperative, mĕmentō (*remember*), mĕmentōtĕ.
„ ōdī : Future part., ōsūr-ŭs, -ă, -um, *about to hate.*

§ 229. The following are isolated forms :—

(1) Infĭt, *he begins* (*to speak*).
(2) Quaesō, *I entreat*; quaesŭmŭs (used parenthetically like English *pray*).
(3) Ăvē *or* ăvētō, *hail!*; ăvētĕ. Infinitive, ăvērĕ, *to cry "hail."*
(4) Salvē, *hail!*; salvētĕ. Ind. fut., salvēbĭs. Infin., salvērĕ.
(5) Cĕdŏ, *give* (imperative).

CHAPTER XXV.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 230. Two classes of verbs fall under this heading:—

(1) Active verbs (some transitive, some intransitive) found only in the third person singular and infinitive and always used impersonally;

(2) The third person singular and infinitive—

(*a*) Of a few active verbs, transitive and intransitive; *e.g.* iŭvăt, *it delights*, from iŭvō, *I delight*; tŏnăt, *it thunders*, from tŏnō, *I thunder*; intĕrest, *it makes a difference*, from intersum, *I am in the midst*;

(*b*) Of the passive of nearly all verbs which in the active are personal intransitive verbs or can be used intransitively; *e.g.* ventum ĕrăt, *they* (or *he, I, we*) *had come*, from vĕnĭō, *I come.*

Obs. The perfect participle in the perfect, pluperfect or future-perfect of a passive verb used intransitively is always neuter.

§ 231. The various tenses of personal verbs thus used impersonally are regularly formed, and call for no further remark here; their constructions are explained in the Syntax. A list of the commoner verbs which are impersonal only is given below.

§ 232. TRANSITIVE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	
dĕc-ĕt	-ērĕ	dĕcŭ-ĭt	*it becomes*
dēdĕc-ĕt	-ērĕ	dēdĕcŭ-ĭt	*it misbecomes*
mĭsĕr-ĕt	-ērĕ	mĭsĕrŭ-ĭt	*it moves to pity*
ŏport-ĕt	-ērĕ	ŏportŭ-ĭt	*it behoves*
paenĭt-ĕt	-ērĕ	paenĭtŭ-ĭt	*it makes sorry*
pĭg-ĕt	-ērĕ	pĭgŭ-ĭt	*it troubles*
pŭd-ĕt	-ērĕ	pŭdŭ-ĭt or pŭdĭtum est	*it shames*
taed-ĕt	-ērĕ	pertaesum est	*it wearies*

Obs. These verbs are not as a rule translated by English impersonal verbs; *e.g.* mē mĭsĕrĕt may be rendered *I pity*; nōs ŏportĕt, *we ought*; tē paenĭtēbăt, *you were sorry*; ĕōs pŭdēbĭt, *they will be ashamed.*

§ 233. INTRANSITIVE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	
lĭb-ĕt	-ērĕ	lĭbŭ-ĭt or lĭbĭtum est	*it is pleasing* } with
lĭc-ĕt	-ērĕ	lĭcŭ-ĭt or lĭcĭtum est	*it is lawful* } dative
rēfert	rēferrĕ	rētŭl-ĭt	*it concerns* (§ 213)
ning-ĭt / ningu-ĭt	-ĕrĕ	ninx-ĭt	*it snows*
plŭ-ĭt	-ĕrĕ	plŭ-ĭt or plūv-ĭt	*it rains*

Obs. Lĭbĕt and lĭcĕt with a dative may usually be rendered thus: mĭhĭ lĭbĕt, *I like*; tĭbĭ lĭcĕt, *you may*, or *you are allowed.*

CHAPTER XXVI.—ALPHABETICAL LIST OF VERBS.

§ 234. This list contains all common verbs of the third conjugation, together with irregular verbs, and those verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations which form their perfect and supine differently from ămō, mŏnĕō, and audĭō respectively; except—

(*a*) Inceptive verbs formed from simple verbs which are in use (§ 284), the perfect and supine of these, if they exist, being the same as the perfect and supine of the simple verb;

(*b*) Compound verbs which contain the simple verb unchanged in form, but drop the reduplication (if any) in the perfect, *e.g.*—

	Pres. Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Simple verb:	dūc-ō	-ĕrĕ	dux-ī	duct-um	*lead*
Compound verb:	abdūc-ō	-ĕrĕ	abdux-ī	abduct-um	*lead away*
Simple verb:	pell-ō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpŭl-ī	puls-um	*drive*
Compound verb:	impell-ō	-ĕrĕ	impŭl-ī	impulsum	*drive on*

But one compound at least is given of verbs which when compounded change in form or retain the reduplication in the perfect. The perfect and supine of verbs which are only slightly modified in composition, *e.g.* occīdō, *I kill* (from ŏb and caedō), must be ascertained by reference to the simple verb; but compound verbs such as surgō, *I arise* (compounded of sŭb and rĕgō), of which the elements cannot readily be seen, are given in alphabetical order as well as under the simple verb. Compound verbs of which the simple forms are not in use, *e.g.* abnŭō, *I refuse*, are given in alphabetical order:

For the changes undergone by prepositions in composition, see § 292; for vowel change in compound verbs, see § 293.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
abnŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	abnŭ-ī	abnūt-um	*refuse*
ăbŏl-ĕō	ērĕ	ăbŏlēv-ī	ăbŏlĭt um	*abolish*
accend-ō	-ĕrĕ	accend-ī	accens-um	*kindle*
accumb-ō	-ĕrĕ	accŭbŭ ī	accŭbĭt-um	*recline at table*
ăcŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	ăcŭ-ī	ăcūt-um	*sharpen*
ădĭpisc-ŏr	-ī	ădept-ŭs sum		*obtain*
ădŏlesc-ō (§ 177)	-ĕrĕ	ădŏlēv-ī	ădult-um	*grow up*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
afflīg-ō	ĕrĕ	afflix-ī	afflict-um	*strike against*
ăg-ō	-ĕrĕ	ēg-ī	act-um	*drive*
Compounds as				
ăbĭg-ō	-ĕrĕ	ăbēg-ī	ăbact-um	*drive away*
Except				
circŭmăg-ō	-ĕrĕ	circŭmēg-ī	circŭmact-um	*drive around*
cōg-ō	-ĕrĕ	cōēg-ī	cŏact-um	*drive together, compel*
dēg-ō	-ĕrĕ	dēg-ī	——	*pass (time)*
pĕrăg-ō	-ĕrĕ	pĕrēg-ī	pĕract-um	*accomplish*
alg-ĕō	-ērĕ	als-ī	——	*feel cold*
allĭc-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	allex-ī	allect-um	*attract*
ăl-ō	-ĕrĕ	ălŭ-ī	alt-um	*nourish*
ămĭc-ĭō	-īrĕ	ămĭcŭ-ī / ămix-ī	ămict-um	*clothe*
amplect-ŏr	-ī	amplex-ŭs sum		*embrace*
annŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	annŭ-ī	annūt-um	*assent*
ăpĕr-ĭō	-īrĕ	ăpĕrŭ-ī	ăpert-um	*uncover, open*
ăpisc-ŏr	-ī	apt-ŭs sum		*obtain*
Compound :				
ădĭpisc-ŏr	-ī	ădept-ŭs sum		*obtain*
arcess-ō *or* accers-ō	-ĕrĕ	arcessīv-ī	arcessīt-um	*send for*
ard-ĕō	-ērĕ	ars-ī	ars-um	*be on fire*
argŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	argŭ-ī	argūt-um	*accuse*
assent-ĭŏr	-īrī	assens-ŭs sum		*agree*
aud-ĕō (§§176, 200)	-ērĕ	aus-ŭs sum		*dare*
aug-ĕō	-ērĕ	aux-ī	auct-um	*augment*
bĭb-ō	-ĕrĕ	bĭb-ī	——	*drink*
căd-ō	-ĕrĕ	cĕcĭd-ī	cās-um	*fall*
Compounds as				
concĭd-ō	-ĕrĕ	concĭd-ī	——	*fall*
Supine stem in				
occĭd-ō	-ĕrĕ	occĭd-ī	occās-um	*fall, set*
rĕcĭd-ō	-ĕrĕ	reccĭd-ī	rĕcās-um	*fall back*
caed-ō	-ĕrĕ	cĕcīd-ī	caes-um	*cut*
Compounds as				
occīd-ō	-ĕrĕ	occīd-ī	occīs-um	*kill*
căn-ō	-ĕrĕ	cĕcĭn-ī	cant-um	*sing*
Compounds as				
praecĭn-ō	-ĕrĕ	praecĭnŭ-ī	praecent-um	*sing before*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
căpess-ō	-ĕrĕ	căpessīv-ī	căpessīt-um	*take in hand*
căp-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cēp-ī**	**capt-um**	*take*
Compounds as **accĭp-ĭō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**accēp-ī**	**accept-um**	*receive*
carp-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**carps-ī**	**carpt-um**	*pluck*
Compounds as dēcerp-ō	-ĕrĕ	dēcerps-	dēcerpt-um	*pluck off*
căv-ĕō	**-ērĕ**	**cāv-ī**	**caut-um**	*beware of*
cēd-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cess-ī**	**cess-um**	*yield*
cens-ĕō	**-ērĕ**	**censŭ-ī**	**cens-um**	*count*
cern-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**crēv-ī**	**crēt-um**	*discern*
cĭ-cĕō (§ 199)	-ērĕ	cīv-ī	cĭt-um	*arouse*
cing-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cinx-ī**	**cinct-um**	*gird*
claud-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**claus-ī**	**claus-um**	*shut*
Compounds as **conclūd-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**conclūs-ī**	**conclūs-um**	*confine*
coep-ĭō {(pres. not classical)}	**-ĕrĕ**	**coep-ī** (§ 228)	**coept-um**	*begin*
cōg-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cŏēg-ī**	**cŏact-um**	*drive together, compel*
cŏl-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cŏlŭ-ī**	**cult-um**	*cultivate*
combūr-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**combuss-ī**	**combust-um**	*burn up*
commĭnisc-ŏr	-ī	comment-ŭs sum		*devise*
cŏm-ō	-ĕrĕ	comps-ī	compt-um	*deck*
compĕr-ĭō	**-īrĕ**	**compĕr-ī**	**compert-um**	*ascertain*
compesc-ō	-ĕrĕ	compescŭ-ī	——	*check*
complect-ŏr	-ī	complex-ŭs sum		*embrace*
compl-ĕō	**-ērĕ**	**complēv-ī**	**complēt-um**	*fill up*
concŭt-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	**concuss-ī**	**concuss-um**	*shake*
conflīg-ō	-ĕrĕ	conflix-ī	conflict-um	*contend*
congrŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	congrŭ-ī	——	*agree*
consŭl-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**consŭlŭ-ī**	**consult-um**	*consult*
cŏqu-ō	-ĕrĕ	cox-ī	coct-um	*cook*
crēd-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**crēdĭd-ī**	**crēdĭt-um**	*trust*
crĕp-ō	-ārĕ	crĕpŭ-ī	crĕpĭt-um	*rattle*
cresc-ō (§ 177)	**-ĕrĕ**	**crēv-ī**	**crēt-um**	*grow*
cŭb-ō	-ārĕ	cŭbŭ-ī	cŭbĭt-um	*lie down*
cŭp-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cŭpīv-ī**	**cŭpīt-um**	*desire*
curr-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**cŭcurr-ī**	**curs-um**	*run*
Compounds as **accurr-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	{accŭcurr-ī or accurr-ī}	**accurs-um**	*run to*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
dēcŭt-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	dēcuss-ī	dēcuss-um	*shake off*
dēfend-ō *	**-ĕrĕ**	**dēfend-ī**	**dēfens-um**	*defend*
dēfĕtisc-ŏr	-ī	dēfess-ŭs sum		*grow weary*
dēl-ĕō	**-ērĕ**	**dēlēv-ī**	**dēlēt-um**	*abolish*
dēm-ō	-ĕrĕ	demps-ī	dempt-um	*take off*
dīc-ō (§ 203)	**-ĕrĕ**	**dix-ī**	**dict-um**	*say*
dīlŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	dīlŭ-ī	dīlūt-um	*wash out*
disc-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**dĭdĭc-ī**	——	*learn*
Comp. as addisc-ō	-ĕrĕ	addĭdĭc-ī	——	*learn besides*
discŭt-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	discuss-ī	discuss-um	*shatter*
distingu-ō	-ĕrĕ	distinx-ī	distinct-um	*distinguish*
dīvĭd-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**dīvīs-ī**	**dīvīs-um**	*divide*
d-ō (§§ 222, 223)	**-ărĕ**	**dĕd-ī**	**dăt-um**	*give*
Comp. as **ēd-ō** *	-ĕrĕ	ēdĭd-ī	ēdĭt-um	*give out*
Except				
circumd-ō (§224)	**-ărĕ**	**circumdĕd-ī**	**circumdăt-um**	*put round*
dŏc-ĕō	**-ērĕ**	**dŏcŭ-ī**	**doct-um**	*teach*
dŏm-ō	-ārĕ	dŏmŭ-ī	dŏmĭt-um	*tame*
dūc-ō (§ 203)	**-ĕrĕ**	**dux-ī**	**duct-um**	*lead*
ĕd-ō (§ 220)	**-ĕrĕ**	**ēd-ī**	**ēs-um**	*eat*
ēlĭc-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	ēlĭcŭ-ī	ēlĭcĭt-um	*lure forth*
ĕm-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**ēm-ī**	**empt-um**	*buy*
Compounds (see also p. 123) as **ădĭm-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**ădēm-ī**	**ădempt-um**	*take away*
Except **cŏĕm-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**cŏēm-ī**	**cŏempt-um**	*buy up*
ēnĭc-ō	-ārĕ	ēnĭcŭ-ī	ēnect-um	*wear to death*
ĕō (§ 214)	**īrĕ**	**īv-ī** or **ĭ-ī**	**ĭt-um**	*go*
excūd-ō	-ĕrĕ	excūd-ī	excūs-um	*hammer out*
excŭt-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	excuss-ī	excuss-um	*shake out*
expergisc-ŏr	-ī	experrect-ŭs sum		*awake oneself*
expĕr-ĭŏr	**-īrī**	**expert-ŭs sum**		*try*
expl-ĕō	-ērĕ	explēv-ī	explēt-um	*fill up*
explōd-ō	-ĕrĕ	explōs-ī	explōs-um	*hiss off*
exstingu-ō	-ĕrĕ	exstinx-ī	exstinct-um	*extinguish*
exŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	exŭ-ī	exūt-um	*strip off*

* Some of these are compounds of **dō**, *I give*, others of a verb **-dō**, *I put*, of which the simple form is not in use. No distinction is here attempted, as it is in many cases impossible to ascertain from which simple verb the compound is formed.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
făcess-ō	-ĕrĕ	făcess-ī	făcessīt-um	*accomplish*
făc-ĭō (§ 200, 203)	-ĕrĕ	fēc-ī	fact-um	*make, do*
Comp. (§ 219) as				
sătisfăc-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	sătisfēc-ī	sătisfact um	*satisfy*
,, with preps. as				
affĭc-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	affēc-ī	affect um	*affect*
fall-ō	-ĕrĕ	fĕfell-ī	fals-um	*deceive*
Comp.: rĕfell-ō	-ĕrĕ	rĕfell-ī	——	*disprove*
farc-ĭō	-īrĕ	fars-ī	fart-um	*stuff*
Compounds as				
rĕferc-ĭō	-īrĕ	rĕfers-ī	rĕfert-um	*stuff*
făt-ĕŏr	-ērī	fass-ŭs sum		*acknowledge*
Compounds as				
confĭt-ĕŏr	-ērī	confess-ŭs sum		*confess*
făv-ĕō	-ērĕ	făv-ī	faut-um	*be favourable*
ſĕr-ĭō	-īrĕ	(īc-ī) / (percuss-ī)	(ict-um) / (percuss-um)	*strike*
fĕrō (§ 212)	ferrĕ	(tŭl-ī)	(lāt-um)	*bear*
Comp. with				
ăb : aufĕr-ō	-rĕ	abstŭl-ī	ablāt-um	*bear away*
ăd : affĕr-ō	-rĕ	attŭl-ī	allāt-um	*bring*
cum: confĕr-ō	-rĕ	contŭl-ī	collāt-um	*bring together*
dĭs- : differ-ō	-rĕ	distŭl-ī	dīlāt-um	*separate*
ex : effĕr-ō	-rĕ	extŭl-ī	ēlāt-um	*bring out*
ĭn : infĕr-ō	-rĕ	intŭl-ī	illāt-um	*bring in*
ŏb : offĕr-ō	-rĕ	obtŭl-ī	oblāt-um	*offer*
rĕ- : rĕfĕr-ō	-rĕ	rettŭl-ī (§ 294)	rĕlāt-um	*bear back*
rē : rēfer-t	-rĕ	rētŭl-ĭt	——	*concern*
sŭb : suffĕr-ō	-rĕ	sustŭl-ī	sublāt-um	*endure*
Other preps. unchanged, as in				
dēfĕr-ō	-rĕ	dētŭl-ī	dēlāt-um	*bear down*
ferv-ĕō (§ 199)	-ērĕ	ferbŭ-ī / ferv-ī	——	*be boiling*
fīd-ō (§ 176)	ĕrĕ	fīs-ŭs sum		*have confidence*
fīg-ō	ĕrĕ	fix-ī	fix-um	*fix*
find-ō	-ĕrĕ	fĭd-ī	fiss-um	*cleave*
fing ō	-ĕrĕ	finx-ī	fict-um	*form*
fīō (§ 218)	fĭĕrī	(fact-ŭs sum)		*become*
fl-ĕō	-ērĕ	flēv-ī	flēt-um	*weep*
flect-ō	-ĕrĕ	flex-ī	flex-um	*bend*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
flŭ-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**flux-ī**	**flux-um**	*flow*
fŏd-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	fōd-ī	foss-um	*dig*
fŏv-ĕō	-ērĕ	fōv-ī	fōt-um	*cherish*
frang-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**frēg-ī**	**fract-um**	*break*
Compounds as **confring-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**confrēg-ī**	**confract-um**	*break*
frĕm-ō	-ĕrĕ	frĕmŭ-ī	frĕmĭt-um	*roar*
frĭc-ō	-ārĕ	frĭcŭ-ī	frict-um *or* frĭcāt-um	*rub*
frīg-ĕō	-ērĕ	frix-ī	——	*be cold*
frŭ-ŏr (§§ 204, 205)	-ī	**fruct-ŭs sum**		*enjoy oneself*
fŭg-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	fūg-ī	fŭgĭt-um	*flee*
fulc-ĭō	-īrĕ	fuls-ī	fult-um	*prop*
fulg-ĕō (§ 199)	-ērĕ	fuls-ī	——	*gleam*
fund-ō	**ĕrĕ**	**fūd-ī**	**fūs-um**	*pour*
fung-ŏr (§ 205)	-ī	**funct-ŭs sum**		*busy oneself*
gaud-ĕō (§ 176)	-ērĕ	gāvīs-ŭs sum		*rejoice*
gĕm-ō	-ĕrĕ	gĕmŭ-ī	gĕmĭt-um	*groan*
gĕr-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**gess-ī**	**gest-um**	*carry*
gign-ō	**ĕrĕ**	**gĕnŭ-ī**	**gĕnĭt-um**	*produce*
grăd-ĭŏr	**-ī**	**gress-ŭs sum**		*step*
Compounds as **aggrĕd-ĭŏr**	**-ī**	**aggress-ŭs sum**		*attack*
haer-ĕō	**-ērĕ**	**haes-ī**	**haes-um**	*stick*
haur-ĭō (§ 204)	-īrĕ	haus-ī	haust-um	*drain*
iăc-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	iēc-ī	iact-um	*throw*
Compounds as **abĭc-ĭō** *	**-ĕrĕ**	**abiēc-ī**	**abiect-um**	*throw away*
ignosc-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**ignōv-ī**	**ignōt-um**	*overlook*
illĭc-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	illex-ī	illect-um	*entice*
imbŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	imbŭ-ī	imbūt-um	*steep*
impl-ĕō	-ērĕ	implēv-ī	implēt-um	*fill*
incend-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**incend-ī**	**incens-um**	*set on fire*
incess-ō	-ĕrĕ	incessīv-ī	——	*assault*
incumb-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**incŭbŭ-ī**	**incŭbĭt-um**	*lean*
incŭt-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	incuss-ī	incuss-um	*strike into*
indulg-ĕō	**-ērĕ**	**induls-ī**	——	*be indulgent*

* In compounds of **iăcĭō** the consonantal **i** is omitted in tenses formed from the present base, but the syllable of the prefix preceding the **i** is nevertheless counted long by position (§ 636, 3).

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
indŭ-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**indŭ-ī**	**indūt-um**	*put on*
inflīg-ō	-ĕrĕ	inflix-ī	inflict-um	*strike on*
īrasc-ŏr	**-ī**	**īrāt-ŭs sum**		*get angry*
iŭb-ĕō	**-ērĕ**	**iuss-ī**	**iuss-um**	*command*
iung-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**iunx-ī**	**iunct-um**	*join*
iŭv-ō (§ 204)	**-ārĕ**	**iūv-ī**	**iūt-um**	*help, delight*
lāb-ŏr	**-ī**	**laps-ŭs sum**		*slide*
lăcess-ō	-ĕrĕ	lăcessīv-ī	lăcessīt-um	*provoke*
laed-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**laes-ī**	**laes-um**	*hurt*
Compounds as				
collīd-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	collīs-ī	collīs-um	*clash*
lăv-ō (§ 199)	-ārĕ	lāv-ī	perf. part. lăvāt-um / laut-ŭs / lōt-ŭs	*wash*
lĕg-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**lēg-ī**	**lect-um**	*pick, read*
Compounds as				
collĭg-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**collēg-ī**	**collect-um**	*collect*
But e remains in				
perlĕg-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**perlēg-ī**	**perlect-um**	*read through*
rĕlĕg-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**rĕlēg-ī**	**rĕlect-um**	*again go over*
Perf. differs in				
dīlĭg-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**dīlex-ī**	**dīlect-um**	*love*
intellĕg-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**intellex-ī**	**intellect-um**	*understand*
neglĕg-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**neglex-ī**	**neglect-um**	*neglect*
lĭn-ō	-ĕrĕ	lēv-ī	lĭt-um	*besmear*
N.B.—Comp.:				
oblĭn-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**oblēv-ī**	**oblĭt-um**	*besmear*
linqu-ō	-ĕrĕ	līqu-ī	——	*leave*
Compounds as				
rĕlinqu-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**rĕlīqu-ī**	**rĕlict-um**	*leave*
lŏqu-ŏr	**-ī**	**lŏcūt-ŭs sum**		*speak*
lūc-ĕō	-ērĕ	lux-ī	——	*shine*
lūd-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**lūs-ī**	**lūs-um**	*play*
lūg-ĕō	-ērĕ	lux-ī	luct-um	*mourn for*
lŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	lŭ-ī	——	*pay*
mālō (§ 211)	**mallĕ**	**mālŭ-ī**	——	*will rather*
mand-ō	-ĕrĕ	mand-ī	mans-um	*chew*
măn-ĕō	**-ērĕ**	**mans-ī**	**mans-um**	*remain*
merg-ō	-ĕrĕ	mers-ī	mers-um	*dip*
mēt-ĭŏr	**-īrī**	**mens-ŭs sum**		*measure*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
mĕt-ō	-ĕrĕ	(messem fēcī)	mess-um	*reap*
mĕtŭ-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**mĕtŭ-ī**	——	*fear*
mĭc-ō	-ārĕ	mĭcŭ-ī	——	*vibrate*
mĭnŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	mĭnŭ-ī	mĭnūt-um	*lessen*
misc-ĕō	**-ērĕ**	**miscŭ-ī**	**mixt-um**	*mix*
mitt-ō	-ĕrĕ	mīs-ī	miss-um	*send*
mord-ĕō	-ērĕ	mŏmord ī	mors-um	*bite*
mŏr-ĭŏr (§ 204)	**-ī**	**mortŭ-ŭs sum**		*die*
mŏv-ĕō	**-ērĕ**	**mōv-ī**	**mōt-um**	*set in motion*
mulc-ĕō	-ērĕ	muls-ī	muls-um	*caress*
mulg-ĕō	-ērĕ	muls-ī	mulct-um / muls-um	*milk*
nancisc-ŏr	-ī	nact-ŭs sum		*obtain*
nasc-ŏr	**-ī**	**nāt-ŭs sum**		*be born*
nect-ō	-ĕrĕ	nex-ī	nex-um	*bind*
n-ĕō	-ērĕ	nēv-ī	nēt-um	*spin*
nĕqu-ĕō (like quĕō, § 217)	-īrĕ	nĕquīv-ī *or* nĕquĭ-ī	nĕquĭt-um	*be unable*
ning-ĭt *or* ningu-ĭt	-ĕrĕ	ninx-ĭt	——	*snow*
nīt-ŏr	-ī	**nīs-ŭs sum**, *I endeavoured* / **nix-ŭs sum**, *I leaned*		*endeavour, lean*
nōlō (§ 211)	**nollĕ**	**nōlŭ-ī**	——	*be unwilling*
nosc-ō	-ĕrĕ	nōv-ī	nōt-um	*get to know*
Comp. (noscō has lost an initial g):				
agnosc-ō	-ĕrĕ	agnōv-ī	agnĭt-um	*recognise*
cognosc-ō	-ĕrĕ	cognōv-ī	cognĭt-um	*ascertain*
ignosc-ō	-ĕrĕ	ignōv-ī	ignōt-um	*overlook*
nūb-ō (§ 177)	-ĕrĕ	nups-ī	nupt-um	*put on the bridal veil*, i.e. *be married*
oblīvisc-ŏr	**-ī**	**oblīt ŭs sum**		*forget*
obsŏlesc-ō	-ĕrĕ	obsŏlēv-ī	obsŏlēt-um	*decay*
occŭl-ō	-ĕrĕ	occŭlŭ-ī	occult-um	*hide*
occumb-ō	-ĕrĕ	occŭbŭ-ī	occŭbĭt-um	*sink*
offend-ō	-ĕrĕ	offend-ī	offens-um	*stumble*
ŏpĕr-ĭō	**-īrĕ**	**ŏpĕrŭ-ī**	**ŏpert-um**	*cover*
oppĕr-ĭŏr	-īrī	**oppert-ŭs / opperīt-ŭs sum**		*wait*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ord-ĭŏr	-īrī	ors-ŭs sum		*begin*
ŏr-ĭŏr (§§ 199, 204)	-īrī	ort-ŭs sum		*rise*
păcisc-ŏr	-ī	pact-ŭs sum		*bargain*
pand-ō	-ĕrĕ	pand-ī	pass-um	*spread open*
pang-ō	-ĕrĕ	pēg-ī or pĕpĭg-ī	pact-um	*fasten*
Compound:				
comping-ō	-ĕrĕ	compēg-ī	compact-um	*join together*
parc-ō (§ 204)	-ĕrĕ	pĕperc-ī	(pars-ūrŭs)	*be sparing*
păr-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpĕr-ī	part-um	*produce*
Compounds:				
compĕr-ĭō	-īrĕ	compĕr-ī	compert-um	*ascertain*
rĕpĕr-ĭō	-īrĕ	reppĕr-ī	rĕpert-um	*find*
pasc-ō	-ĕrĕ	pāv-ī	past-um	*pasture*
păt-ĭŏr	-ī	pass-ŭs sum		*suffer*
Compound:				
perpĕt-ĭŏr	-ī	perpess-ŭs sum		*endure*
păv-ĕō	ērĕ	pāv-ī	——	*tremble*
pellĭc-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	pellex-ī	pellect-um	*entice*
pell-ō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpŭl-ī	puls-um	*drive*
pend-ĕō	-ērĕ	pĕpend-ī	pens-um	*be suspended*
pend-ō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpend-ī	——	*weigh out, pay*
percell-ō	ĕrĕ	percŭl-ī	perculs-um	*overturn*
percŭt-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	percuss-ī	percuss-um	*strike through*
perd-ō	-ĕrĕ	perdĭd-ī	perdĭt-um	*destroy*
perg-ō	-ĕrĕ	perrex-ī	perrect-um	*continue*
pĕt-ō (§ 201)	-ĕrĕ	pĕtīv-ī or pĕtĭ ī	pĕtīt-um	*seek*
ping-ō	-ĕrĕ	pinx-ī	pict-um	*paint*
plang-ō	-ĕrĕ	planx-ī	planct-um	*beat*
plaud-ō	-ĕrĕ	plaus-ī	plaus-um	*clap*
Comp.: explōd-ō	-ĕrĕ	explōs-ī	explōs-um	*hiss off*
plĭc-ō	-ārĕ	plĭcāv-ī plĭcŭ-ī	plĭcāt-um plĭcĭt-um	*fold*
plŭ-ĭt	-ĕrĕ	plŭ-ĭt *or* plūv-ĭt	——	*rain*
pollŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	pollŭ-ī	pollūt-um	*defile*
pōn-ō	-ĕrĕ	pŏsŭ-ī	pŏsĭt-um	*place*
posc-ō	-ĕrĕ	pŏposc-ī	——	*demand*
Compounds as				
dēposc-ō	-ĕrĕ	dēpŏposc-ī	——	*demand*
possĭd-ĕō	-ērĕ	possēd-ī	possess-um	*possess*
possum (§ 210)	possĕ	pŏtŭ-ī	——	*be able*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
pōt-ō (§ 177)	-āre	pōtāv-ī	pōt-um *or* pōtāt-um	*drink*
prand-ĕō (§ 177)	-ēre	prand-ī	prans-um	*lunch*
prĕhend-ō	-ĕre	prĕhend-ī	prĕhens-um	*seize*
prĕm-ō	**-ĕre**	**press-ī**	**press-um**	*press*
Compounds as **comprĭm-ō**	**-ĕre**	**compress-ī**	**compress-um**	*restrain*
prōcumb-ō	-ĕre	prōcŭbŭ-ī	prōcŭbĭt-um	*bend down*
prŏfĭcisc-ŏr	**-ī**	**prŏfect-ŭs sum**		*set out*
prōm-ō	**-ĕre**	**promps-ī**	**prompt-um**	*bring out*
pung-ō	-ĕre	pŭpŭg-ī	punct-um	*prick*
Compounds as compung-ō	-ĕre	compunx-ī	compunct-um	*sting*
quaer-ō	**-ĕre**	**quaesīv-ī**	**quaesīt-um**	*seek*
Compounds as **conquīr-ō**	**-ĕre**	**conquīsīv-ī**	**conquīsīt-um**	*seek out*
quăt-ĭō	**-ĕre**	——	**quass-um**	*shake, agitate*
Compounds as **concŭt-ĭō**	**-ĕre**	**concuss-ī**	**concuss-um**	*shake, agitate*
qu-ĕō (§ 217)	**-īre**	**quīv-ī** or **quĭ-ī**	**quĭt-um**	*be able*
quĕr-ŏr	**-ī**	**quest-ŭs sum**		*complain*
quĭesc-ō	-ĕre	quĭēv-ī	quĭēt-um	*rest*
rād-ō	-ĕre	rās-ī	rās-um	*scrape*
răp-ĭō	**-ĕre**	**răpŭ-ī**	**rapt-um**	*seize*
Compounds as **abrĭp-ĭō**	**-ĕre**	**abrĭpŭ-ī**	**abrept-um**	*carry off*
rĕcumb-ō	-ĕre	rĕcŭbŭ-ī	rĕcŭbĭt-um	*recline*
rēfer-t (§ 213)	**-rĕ**	**rētŭl-ĭt**	——	*concern*
rĕg-ō	**-ĕre**	**rex-ī**	**rect-um**	*rule*
Compounds as **corrĭg-ō**	**-ĕre**	**correx-ī**	**correct-um**	*correct*
Except **perg-ō**	**-ĕre**	**perrex-ī**	**perrect-um**	*continue*
surg-ō	**-ĕre**	**surrex-ī**	**surrect-um**	*rise*
r-ĕŏr	**-ērī**	**răt-ŭs sum**		*think*
rēp-ō	-ĕre	reps-ī	rept-um	*creep*
rĕpĕr-ĭō	**-īre**	**reppĕr-ī** (§ 294)	**rĕpert-um**	*find*
rĕpl-ĕō	**-ēre**	**rĕplēv-ī**	**rĕplēt-um**	*refill*
restingu-ō	-ĕre	restinx-ī	restinct-um	*extinguish*
rīd-ĕō	**-ēre**	**rīs-ī**	**rīs-um**	*laugh*
rōd-ō	-ĕre	rōs-ī	rōs-um	*gnaw*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
rump-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**rūp-ī**	**rupt-um**	*break*
rŭ-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**rŭ-ī**	**rūt-um**	*rush down*
Comp. as **dīrŭ-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**dīrŭ-ī**	**dīrŭt-um**	*demolish*
saep-ĭō	**-īrĕ**	**saeps-ī**	**saept-um**	*fence in*
săl-ĭō	**-īrĕ**	**sălŭ-ī**	salt-um	*leap*
Compounds as **dēsĭl-ĭō**	**-īrĕ**	**dēsĭlŭ-ī**	**dēsult-um**	*leap down*
sanc-ĭō	**-īrĕ**	**sanx-ī**	sanct-um *or* sancīt-um	*ratify*
săp-ĭō	**-ĕrĕ**	**săpīv-ī**	——	*have taste, know*
sarc-ĭō	**-īrĕ**	**sars-ī**	sart-um	*patch*
scalp-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**scalps-ī**	scalpt-um	*carve*
scand-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**scand-ī**	**scans-um**	*climb*
Compounds as **ascend-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**ascend-ī**	**ascens-um**	*climb up*
scind-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**scĭd-ī**	**sciss-um**	*rend*
scisc-ō	-ĕrĕ	scīv-ī	scīt-um	*enact*
scrīb-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**scrips-ī**	**script-um**	*write*
sculp-ō	-ĕrĕ	sculps-ī	sculpt-um	*carve*
sĕc-ō	**-ārĕ**	**sĕcŭ-ī**	**sect-um**	*cut*
sĕd-ĕō	**-ērĕ**	**sēd-ī**	**sess-um**	*sit*
Compounds as **assĭd-ĕō**	**-ērĕ**	**assēd-ī**	**assess-um**	*sit by*
Except circumsĕd-ĕō	-ērĕ	circumsēd-ī	circumsess-um	*besiege*
sŭpersĕd-ĕō	-ērĕ	sŭpersēd-ī	sŭpersess-um	*forbear*
sent-ĭō	**-īrĕ**	**sens-ī**	**sens-um**	*feel*
sĕpĕl-ĭō	**-īrĕ**	**sĕpĕlīv-ī**	**sĕpult-um**	*bury*
sĕqu-ŏr	**-ī**	**sĕcūt-ŭs sum**		*follow*
sĕr-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**sēv-ī**	**săt-um**	*sow*
Comp. as **insĕr-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**insēv-ī**	**insĭt-um**	*ingraft*
sĕr-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	——	**sert-um**	*join*
Comp. as **consĕr-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**consĕrŭ-ī**	**consert-um**	*join*
serp-ō	-ĕrĕ	serps-ī	serpt-um	*crawl*
sīd-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**sīd-ī**	——	*settle down*
Compounds as **consīd-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**consēd-ī**	**consess-um**	*settle down*
sĭn-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**sīv-ī**	**sĭt-um**	*allow*
sist-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**stĭt-ī**	**stăt-um**	*make to stand*
Compounds as **consist-ō**	**-ĕrĕ**	**constĭt-ī**	**constĭt-um**	*stand still*

Perfect Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Except circumsist-ō	-ĕrĕ	circumstĕt-ī	——	*stand around*
sŏl-ĕō (§ 176)	-ērĕ	sŏlĭt-ŭs sum		*be accustomed*
solv-ō	-ĕrĕ	solv-ī	sŏlūt-um	*loose*
sŏn-ō (§ 204)	-ārĕ	sŏnŭ-ī	sŏnĭt-um	*sound*
sparg-ō	-ĕrĕ	spars ī	spars-um	*scatter*
Compounds as asperg-ō	-ĕrĕ	aspers-ī	aspers-um	*sprinkle*
spĕc-ĭō { (in old Lat. only) }	-ĕrĕ	spex-ī	——	*look*
Compounds as aspĭc-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	aspex-ī	aspect-um	*look at*
spern-ō	-ĕrĕ	sprēv-ī	sprēt-um	*despise*
spond-ĕō	-ērĕ	spŏpond-ī	spons-um	*promise*
stătŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	stătŭ-ī	stătūt-um	*settle*
Compounds as constĭtŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	constĭtŭ-ī	constĭtūt-um	*settle*
stern-ō	-ĕrĕ	strāv-ī	strāt-um	*spread*
st-ō	-ārĕ	stĕt-ī	stăt-um	*stand*
Compounds (few having sup.) as praest-ō	-ārĕ	praestĭt-ī	{ praestāt-um / praestĭt-um }	*excel*
Except circumst-ō	ārĕ	circumstĕt-ī	——	*stand around*
strĕp-ō	-ĕrĕ	strĕpŭ-ī	——	*resound*
strīd-ĕō	-ērĕ	strīd-ī	——	*creak*
strīd-ō	-ĕrĕ			
string-ō	-ĕrĕ	strinx-ī	strict-um	*strip*
strŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	strux-ī	struct-um	*pile*
suād-ĕō (§ 8)	-ērĕ	suās-ī	suās-um	*recommend*
succend-ō	-ĕrĕ	succend-ī	succens-um	*kindle below*
succumb-ō	-ĕrĕ	succŭbŭ-ī	succŭbĭt-um	*submit*
suesc-ō (§§ 8, 177)	-ĕrĕ	suēv-ī	suēt-um	*become accustomed*
sūg-ō	-ĕrĕ	sux-ī	suct-um	*suck*
sum (§§ 134, 208)	essĕ	fŭ-ī	——	*be*
So comp. except absum	ăbessĕ	āfŭ-ī (§ 209, *n.* 2)	——	*be absent*
possum	possĕ	pŏtŭ-ī (§ 210)	——	*be able*
prōsum	prōdessĕ	prōfŭ-ī (§ 209, *n.* 1)	——	*be beneficial*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
sūm-ō	-ĕrĕ	**sumps-ī**	**sumpt-um**	*take up*
sŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	sŭ-ī	sūt-um	*stitch*
suppl-ĕō	-ērĕ	**supplēv-ī**	**supplēt-um**	*fill up*
surg-ō	-ĕrĕ	**surrex-ī**	**surrect-um**	*arise*
taed-ĕt (§ 232)	-ērĕ	(perfaesum est)		*weary*
tang-ō	-ĕrĕ	**tĕtĭg-ī**	**tact-um**	*touch*
Compounds as **atting-ō**	-ĕrĕ	**attĭg-ī**	**attact-um**	*touch*
tĕg-ō	-ĕrĕ	**tex-ī**	**tect-um**	*cover*
temn-ō	-ĕrĕ	**temps-ī**	**tempt-um**	*despise*
tend-ō	-ĕrĕ	**tĕtend-ī**	**tent-um**	*stretch*
tĕn-ĕō	-ērĕ	**tĕnŭ-ī**	**tent-um**	*hold*
Compounds as **rĕtĭn-ĕō**	-ērĕ	**rĕtĭnŭ-ī**	**rĕtent-um**	*hold back*
terg-ĕō	-ērĕ	ters-ī	ters-um	*wipe*
tĕr-ō	ĕrĕ	**trīv-ī**	**trīt-um**	*rub*
tex-ō	-ĕrĕ	**texŭ-ī**	**text-um**	*weave*
ting-ō *or* tingu-ō	-ĕrĕ	tinx-ī	tinct-um	*steep*
toll-ō	-ĕrĕ	(**sustŭl-ī**)	(**sublāt-um**)	*raise*
tond-ĕō	-ērĕ	tŏtond-ī	tons-um	*clip*
tŏn-ō	-ārĕ	tŏnŭ-ī	tŏnĭt-um	*thunder*
torqu-ĕō	-ērĕ	**tors-ī**	**tort-um**	*twist*
torr-ĕō	-ērĕ	torrŭ-ī	tost-um	*scorch*
trăh-ō	-ĕrĕ	**trax-ī**	**tract-um**	*draw*
trĕm-ō	-ĕrĕ	trĕmŭ-ī	——	*tremble*
trĭbŭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	trĭbŭ-ī	trĭbūt-um	*assign*
trūd-ō	-ĕrĕ	trūs-ī	trūs-um	*thrust*
tund-ō	-ĕrĕ	tŭtŭd-ī	{tuns-um / tūs-um}	*beat*
ulcisc-ŏr	-**ī**	**ult-ŭs sum**		*take vengeance on, avenge*
ung-ō *or* ungu-ō	-ĕrĕ	unx-ī	unct-um	*anoint*
urg-ĕō	-ērĕ	urs-ī	——	*press*
ūr-ō	-ĕrĕ	**uss-ī**	**ust-um**	*burn, inflame*
ūt-ŏr (§ 205)	-ī	**ūs-ŭs sum**		*make use*
vād-ō	-ĕrĕ	——	——	*go*
Comp. as **ēvād-ō**	-ĕrĕ	**ēvās-ī**	**ēvās-um**	*go forth*
vĕh-ō	-ĕrĕ	**vex-ī**	**vect-um**	*carry*
vell-ō	-ĕrĕ	vell-ī	vuls-um	*pluck*
vend-ō	-ĕrĕ	**vendĭd-ī**	**vendĭt-um**	*sell*
vēn-ĕō (§ 215)	-īrĕ	**vēnĭ-ī**	vēnĭt-um	*go on sale*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
vĕn-ĭō	**-īrĕ**	**vēn-ī**	**vent-um**	*come*
verr-ō	-ĕrĕ	verr-ī	vers-um	*sweep*
vert-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**vert-ī**	**vers-um**	*turn*
vĕt-ō	**-ārĕ**	**vĕtŭ-ī**	**vĕtĭt-um**	*forbid*
vĭd-ĕō	**-ērĕ**	**vīd-ī**	**vīs-um**	*see*
vinc-ĭō	**-īrĕ**	**vinx-ī**	**vinct-um**	*bind*
vinc-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**vīc-ī**	**vict-um**	*conquer*
vīs-ō	-ĕrĕ	vīs-ī	——	*visit*
vīv-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**vix-ī**	**vict-um**	*live*
vŏlō (§211)	**vellĕ**	**vŏlŭ-ī**	——	*will*
Comp.: **mālō**	**mallĕ**	**mālŭ-ī**	——	*will rather*
nŏlō	**nollĕ**	**nōlŭ-ī**	——	*be unwilling*
volv-ō	**-ĕrĕ**	**volv-ī**	**vŏlūt-um**	*roll*
vŏm-ō	-ĕrĕ	vŏmŭ-ī	vŏmĭt-um	*vomit*
vŏv-ĕō	**-ērĕ**	**vōv-ī**	**vōt-um**	*vow*

NOTE.—A few verbs have no perfect or supine, and are used only in tenses formed from the present base, *e.g.* languĕō, *I am faint*. Neither these, nor the defective verbs given in §§ 225—229, are included in the above list.

CHAPTER XXVII.—ADVERBS.

§ 235. Adverbs may for convenience be arranged in three classes :—

I. Adverbs expressing

(*a*) Place, time, degree, etc. ;

(*b*) Negation, interrogation, transition, etc.

II. Adverbs formed from pronominal roots ; *e.g.* quō, *whither*, from the root of quī, *who*.

III. Adverbs formed from adjectives ; *e.g.* lībĕrē, *freely*, from lībĕr, *free*.

I. (*a*) Adverbs of Place, Time, Degree, etc.

The following are some of the commonest :—

§ 236. Place.

circā, circum, *around*
cĭtrā, *on this side*
contrā, *opposite*
cōram, *face to face*
extrā, *outside*
infrā, *below*
intrā, intŭs, *inside*
iuxtā, *close*
passim, *hither and thither*
pōnĕ, post, *behind*
prŏcŭl, *far*
prŏpĕ, *near*
subtĕr, *beneath*
sŭpĕr, sŭprā, *above*
sursum, *upwards*
ultrā, *beyond*
versŭs, *facing*

§ 237. Time.

antĕ, antĕā, *before*
cottīdiē, quŏtīdiē, *daily*
crās, *to-morrow*
dēmum, *at length*
dĭū, *long*
extemplō, *forthwith*
hĕrī, hĕrĕ, *yesterday*
hŏdiē, *to-day*
iam, *already*
iamdūdum, iamprīdem, *a long time already*
intĕrĕā, intĕrim, *meanwhile*
interdum, *sometimes*
ĭtĕrum, *again*
mānĕ, *in the morning*
mŏdŏ, *just now*
mox, *soon*
nūpĕr, *recently*
părumpĕr, *for a little while*
post, postĕā, *afterwards*
quondam, *formerly*
saepĕ, *often*
sempĕr, *always*
sĭmŭl, *at the same time*
stătim, *forthwith*
tandem, *at length*

§ 238. Manner, Degree, etc.

ceu, *like as*
clam, *secretly*
frustrā, *in vain*
mŏdŏ, *only*
nĭmĭs or nĭmĭum } *too much*
omnīnō, *altogether*
paenĕ, *almost*
pălam, *openly*
părum (also used as an indeclinable neuter substantive) } *too little*
pĕrindĕ (usually followed by āc, atquĕ or ŭt) } *exactly (as)*
praesertim, *especially*
prŏpĕ, *nearly*
quăsĭ, *as if*
quŏăd, *so far as*
sătĭs (also used as an indeclinable substantive or adjective) } *enough*
sĕcŭs, *otherwise*
tamquam or tanquam, } *as it were*
ultrō, *further*
usquĕ, *all the way, even*
vĕlŭt or vĕlŭtī, } *as, for example*
vix, *scarcely*.

§ 239. Negation, Interrogation, Transition, etc.

Negation.

nōn, *not*
haud (rare with verbs), *not*
nē (in prohibitions), *not*
nē . . . quĭdem, *not even*

Interrogation.

-nĕ (enclitic) introduces a question
nonnĕ introduces a question expecting an affirmative answer
num introduces a question expecting a negative answer
quārē or cūr, *why?*
quīn, *why not?*
ŭtrum . . . ăn, *whether . . . or*
ŭtrum . . . annōn / necnĕ } *whether . . . or not*

Transition, etc.

contrā, *on the other hand*
ĕquĭdem, *indeed*
ergō, idcircō, ĭdĕō, ĭgĭtŭr (seldom placed first) } *therefore*
ĭtem, *likewise*
nē or nae (with pronouns), *indeed*
praetĕrĕā, *besides*
proptĕrĕā, *therefore*
quĭdem, *indeed*
rursŭs, *again*
saltem, *at least*
ŭtĭnam introduces a wish

Obs. 1. The term enclitic applied to -nĕ and similar particles (cp. § 261, *Obs.* 1) implies that they throw their accent back on to the words to which they are appended; *e.g.* vĭdēs, *you see;* vĭdēsnĕ, *do you see?*

Obs. 2. When -nĕ is appended to a word ending in s (as above to vĭdēs), the vowel preceding the s is sometimes shortened and the s and e dropped; *e.g.* vĭdĕn = vĭdesnĕ, *do you see?* audĭn = audisnĕ, *do you hear?* Such shortened forms are accentuated on the last syllable.

§ 240.	Demonstrative.	Relative.	Interrogative.	Indefinite.
Place where.	hīc, *here* istīc, *near you* illīc, *there* ībĭ, *there* ībidem, *in the same place*	ŭbĭ, *where* ŭbĭcumquĕ, *wherever*	ŭbĭ, *where?* ŭbĭnam, *where pray?*	ŭbīquĕ, *everywhere* ŭtrōbīquĕ, *in both places* ŭbĭvīs, *where you will* ălĭcŭbĭ, uspĭam, *somewhere* usquam (with neg.), *anywhere* nusquam, *nowhere* ălĭbī, *elsewhere*
Place whither.	hūc, *hither* istūc, *to where you are* illūc, *thither* ĕō, *thither* ĕōdem, *to the same place*	quō, quōcumquĕ, quōquō, *whithersoever*	quō, *whither?* quōnam, *whither, pray?*	ŭtrōquĕ, *to both places* quōlĭbĕt, *whither you please* quōvīs, *whither you will* ălĭquō, *to some place* quōquam (with neg.), *to any place* ălĭō, *to another place*
Place whence.	hinc, *hence* [*are* istinc, *from where you* illinc, *thence* indĕ, *thence* [*place* indĭdem, *from the same*	undĕ, *whence*	undĕ, *whence?*	undĭquĕ, *from all sides* ŭtrimquĕ, *from both sides* ălĭcundĕ, *from somewhere* ălĭundĕ, *from elsewhere*
Way.	hāc, *this way* illā, *that way* ĕā, *that way* ĕādem, *the same way*	quā, *which way* quācumquĕ, *whichever way*	quā, *which way?*	ălĭquā, *some way*
Time.	nunc, *now* tum, tunc, *then* ōlim, *at that time*	cum (or quum), *when* quandōquĕ, quandōcumquĕ, *whenever* ŭbĭ, *when*	quandō, *when?*	quandōquĕ, ălĭquandō, *at some time* umquam (with neg.), *ever* numquam, *never* ălĭās, *at another time*
Degree, etc.	ădĕō, ĭtă, *so* sīc, *thus* tam, *so* tŏtĭēs, *so often*	ŭt or ŭtī, utcumquĕ, *however* quam, *as, than* quŏtĭēs, *as often as*	ŭt or ŭtī, *how?* quam, *how!* quŏtĭēs, *how often?*	ŭtĭquĕ, *in any case* ălĭtĕr, *otherwise* quamlĭbĕt, quamvīs, *however* (with adj. or adv.)

II. Adverbs formed from Pronominal Roots.

§ 241. The principal adverbs of this class are given on the opposite page. The student should first learn the adverbs referring to "place where" (demonstrative, relative, interrogative, indefinite), and proceed to those referring to "place whither," and so on. The table may be compared with that on p. 71 (§ 118).

§ 242. Variant Spelling.—The ending **cumquĕ** is sometimes spelt **-cunquĕ**; so too **umquam** and **numquam** are in some editions of the classics printed **unquam, nunquam.** **Tŏtīēs** and **quŏtīēs** are also spelt **tŏtĭens, quŏtĭens.**

§ 243. A comparison between the various adverbs formed from the roots of the pronouns **hĭc, istĕ, illĕ, ĭs, quī** may be made by means of the following table :—

hīc,	*here*	**istīc,**	**illīc,**	**ĭbĭ,**	*there*	**ŭbĭ,**	*where*
hūc,	*hither*	**istūc,**	**illūc,**	**ĕō,**	*thither*	**quō,**	*whither*
hinc,	*hence*	**istinc,**	**illinc,**	**indĕ,**	*thence*	**undĕ,**	*whence*
hāc,	*this way*		**illā,**	**ĕā,**	*that way*	**quā,**	*which way*

III. Adverbs formed from Adjectives (including Participles).

§ 244. From adjectives of the first class, *i.e.* those which follow the first and second declensions of substantives (§ 80), adverbs are formed by the addition of **-ē** to the base of the adjectives.

Examples.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
angustŭs, *narrow*	**angust-**	**angustē,** *narrowly*
ornātŭs, *adorned* (perf. part. passive of **ornō,** *I adorn*)	**ornāt-**	**ornātē,** *ornately*
pulchĕr, *beautiful*	**pulchr-**	**pulchrē,** *beautifully*
lībĕr, *free*	**lībĕr-**	**lībĕrē,** *freely*

Note.—A few adverbs ending in **-ĭtĕr** are formed from adjectives of the first class ; *e.g.* **largĭtĕr** (also **largē**), *abundantly*, from **largŭs,** *abundant.*

§ 245. From some adjectives of the first class adverbs are formed by adding **-ō** to the base.

Examples.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
rārŭs, *scanty*	**rār-**	**rārō,** *scantily*
consultŭs (perf. part. passive of **consŭlō,** *I deliberate*)	**consult-**	**consultō,** *on purpose*

§ 246. From adjectives of the second class, *i.e.* those which follow the third declension of substantives (§ 84), adverbs are formed by the addition of **-ĭtĕr** to the base of the adjective; but if the base of the adjective ends in **nt**, **-ĕr** is added instead of **-ĭtĕr**.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
mĕmŏr, *mindful*	**mĕmŏr-**	**mĕmŏrĭtĕr**, *by heart*
ācĕr, *sharp*	**ācr-**	**ācrĭtĕr**, *sharply*
brĕvĭs, *short*	**brĕv-**	**brĕvĭtĕr**, *briefly*
fēlix, *fortunate*	**fēlīc-**	**fēlīcĭtĕr**, *fortunately*
prūdens, *discreet*	**prūdent-**	**prūdentĕr**, *discreetly*
ămans, *loving* (pres. part. active of **ămō**, *I love*)	**ămant-**	**ămantĕr**, *lovingly*

§ 247. The accusative singular neuter of an adjective is often used as an adverb, sometimes even when a special form for the adverb exists.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective (Nom. Sing. Masc.)	Adjective (Acc. Sing. Neut.) and Adverb.
multŭs, *much*	**multum**, *much*
dulcĭs, *sweet*	**dulcĕ** (also **dulcĭtĕr**), *sweetly*
făcĭlĭs, *easy*	**făcĭlĕ**, *easily*
Also **plērīquĕ** (pl.), *very many*	**plērumquĕ**, *very frequently*

§ 248. The following are irregularly formed :—

From	**audax**,	*bold*,	**audactĕr**,	*boldly*
„	**bŏnŭs**,	*good*,	**bĕnĕ**,	*well*
„	**cĭtŭs**,	*quick*,	**cĭtŏ**,	*quickly*
„	**difficĭlĭs**,	*difficult*,	**difficultĕr**,	*with difficulty*
„	**magnŭs**,	*great*,	**magnŏpĕrĕ**,	*greatly*
„	**mălŭs**,	*bad*,	**mălĕ**,	*badly*
„	**nēquam**,	*worthless*,	**nēquĭtĕr**,	*worthlessly*
„	**vălĭdŭs**,	*strong*,	**valdē**,	*strongly*

Obs. **Magnŏpĕrĕ** (also written as two words, **magnō ŏpĕrĕ**) properly means *with great labour*; hence, *very much, greatly*.

§ 249. Adverbs formed from numeral adjectives are given in § 100 (p. 58).

CHAPTER XXVIII.—COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 250. Adverbs formed from adjectives have (where the meaning admits of it) three degrees of Comparison—Positive, Comparative, and Superlative: *e.g.* brĕvĭtĕr, *briefly;* brĕvĭŭs, *more briefly;* brĕvissĭmē, *most briefly.* Where no standard of comparison is expressed or distinctly understood, the comparative may denote "considerably" or "excessively," and the superlative "exceedingly": *e.g.* brĕvĭŭs, *somewhat briefly* or *too briefly;* brĕvissĭmē, *very briefly.* (Cp. § 89.)

§ 251. A **comparative** adverb is the **accusative singular neuter** of the corresponding comparative adjective (cp. § 247).

A **superlative** adverb is formed by adding **-ē** to the base of the corresponding superlative adjective, in accordance with the rule for forming adverbs from adjectives of the first class (§ 244).

These rules apply whether the comparison of the adjective is regular or irregular.

EXAMPLES.

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adjective.	sanctŭs, *religious*	sanctĭŏr	sanctissĭmŭs
Adverb.	sanctē, *religiously*	sanctĭŭs	sanctissĭmē
Adjective.	ācĕr, *sharp*	ācrĭŏr	ācerrĭmŭs
Adverb.	ācrĭtĕr, *sharply*	ācrĭŭs	ācerrĭmē
Adjective.	făcĭlĭs, *easy*	făcĭlĭŏr	făcillĭmŭs
Adverb.	făcĭlĕ, *easily*	făcĭlĭŭs	făcillĭmē
Adjective.	bŏnŭs, *good*	mĕlĭŏr	optĭmŭs
Adverb.	bĕnĕ, *well*	mĕlĭŭs	optĭmē
Adjective.	mălŭs, *bad*	pēiŏr	pessĭmŭs
Adverb.	mălĕ, *ill*	pēiŭs	pessĭmē

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

The following are the only exceptions to the above rules:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
magnŏpĕrĕ, *greatly*	măgĭs	maxĭmē
multum, *much*	plūs	plūrĭmum

§ 252. COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADVERBS NOT FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
dĭū, *long*	dĭūtĭŭs	dĭūtissĭmē
impūnĕ, *without punishment*	impūnĭŭs	impūnissĭmē
nūpĕr, *recently*	——	nūperrĭmē
saepĕ, *often*	saepĭŭs	saepissĭmē
sĕcŭs, *otherwise*	sēcĭŭs or sētĭŭs (with neg.), *the less*	——

CHAPTER XXIX.—PREPOSITIONS.

§ 253. Most Latin prepositions (like all English ones) take the accusative case. The ablative, however, is used with some prepositions, and a few take either case; it is therefore necessary for the student to commit to memory at least the second and third of the following lists, if not the first.

§ 254. For the forms assumed by prepositions in composition, see § 292.

§ 255. I. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH SUBSTANTIVES IN THE ACCUSATIVE ONLY.

ăd, *to*
adversum or adversŭs, *opposite, towards*
antĕ, *before*
ăpŭd, *with* (a person), *at the house of*
circā, circum, *around*
circĭtĕr, *about* (of number)
cĭs, cĭtrā, *this side of*
contrā, *against*
ergā, *towards* (a person)
extrā, *outside*
infrā, *below*
intĕr, *between, among*
intrā, *within*
iuxtā, *close by*
ŏb, *because of*
pĕnĕs, *in the power of*
pĕr, *through*
pōnĕ, *behind*
post, *after*
praetĕr, *beyond*
prŏpĕ, *near*
proptĕr, *near, on account of*
sĕcundum, *following on*
sŭprā, *above*
trans, *across*
ultrā, *the other side of*

The following lines contain the above twenty-eight prepositions, which are used with the accusative only:—

antĕ, post, cĭs, cĭtrā, ultrā,
trans and pĕr; adversŭs, contrā;
praetĕr, pōnĕ; infrā, suprā;
circum, circĭtĕr and circā;
proptĕr, ŏb, sĕcundum, ergā;
ăd and ăpŭd, prŏpĕ, iuxtā;
pĕnĕs, intĕr, intrā, extrā.

§ 256. II. Prepositions used with Substantives in the Ablative Only.

ā (before a consonant) }
ăb (before a vowel or **h**) } *from, by*
abs (only with **tē**, *thee*) }
cōram, *in the presence of*
cum, *with*
dē, *down from, concerning*
ē or **ex**, *out of*
pălam, *in the presence of*
prae, *in front of*; with neg. (§ 599) *on account of*
prō, *before, instead of*
prŏcŭl, *far from*
sĭnĕ, *without*
tĕnŭs, *as far as*

Rhyme:—ā, ăb, abs, cum, ex and ē,
cōram, pălam, prŏcŭl, dē,
sĭnĕ, tĕnŭs, prō and prae.

Obs. 1. **Tĕnŭs** is also found with the genitive case.

Obs. 2. The distinction between **ā** and **ăb**, as stated above, holds good only as a general rule. **Ex** is used before a vowel or a consonant; **ē** before consonants only.

§ 257. III. Prepositions used with Substantives in the Accusative or Ablative.

clam (rarely with abl.), *without the knowledge of*
ĭn { with acc., *into*; „ abl., *in*
sŭb { with acc. (denoting motion *up to from beneath*), *up to*; „ abl. („ rest *under*), *below*
sŭpĕr (with abl. rare and mostly poetic), *over*
subtĕr („ in poetry only), *under*

Rhyme:—To sŭpĕr, subtĕr, clam, we give
Most commonly accusative.
If ĭn and sŭb should *motion* show,
With them accusative must go;
But when they mean *rest* at a place,
The ablative's the proper case.

§ 258. The usual place for a preposition is immediately before its substantive (or pronoun), but some prepositions are occasionally found after their substantives, **tĕnŭs** being always so placed.

§ 259. **Cum** always follows the personal pronouns **mē**, **tē**, **nōbīs**, **vōbīs**, **sē**, and is then enclitic (§ 239, *Obs.* 1); *e.g.* **mēcum**, *with me*. **Cum** is generally enclitic also with the relative pronoun (**quī**, **quō**, **quā**, **quībŭs**), but *may* precede: *e.g.* **quōcum** or **cum quō**, *with whom*.

CHAPTER XXX.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 260. Conjunctions are of two kinds—**co-ordinating** and **subordinating**. A co-ordinating conjunction joins two words or phrases, two principal sentences, or two clauses dependent on the same principal sentence; a subordinating conjunction joins a dependent clause to its principal sentence.

I. Co-ordinating Conjunctions.

§ 261. The following are in common use:—

ĕt, -quĕ (enclitic), āc (before a consonant only), atquĕ (before any letter), *and*

ētĭam, necnōn, quŏquĕ, *also*

ĕt . . . ĕt, cum (or quum) . . . tum, *both . . . and*

nĕc or nĕquĕ, *nor*

nĕc . . . nĕc, nĕquĕ . . . nĕquĕ, *neither . . . nor*

tămĕn (seldom placed first), *yet, however*

sĕd, autem (not placed first), ăt, atquī, cētĕrum, quŏd, vērum, *but*

aut, vĕl, -vĕ (enclitic), *or*

nēvĕ or neu (used when the first member is introduced by nē), *nor*

sīvĕ . . . sīvĕ, seu . . . seu, *either . . . or*

ĕnim (not placed first), nam, namquĕ, *for*

Obs. 1. The enclitics -quĕ, *and*, -vĕ, *or*, are added to the second of the two words they join, or to the first word of the second sentence or clause; *e.g.* Armă vĭrumquĕ cănō, *I sing of arms and a hero;* Quĭd tū ēs tristĭs, quidvĕ ēs ălăcrĭs? *Why are you sad, or why are you cheerful?*

Obs. 2. Autem is usually the second word in the sentence or clause it introduces; *e.g.* Nĭhĭl scrībō, lĕgō autem lĭbentissĭmē, *I write nothing, but I read with great pleasure.* So also ĕnim, and (unless emphatic) tămĕn.

II. Subordinating Conjunctions.

§ 262. In the following list of subordinating conjunctions, all of which are in common use, several have more than one English equivalent attached. The translation of such conjunctions for the most part varies according to the mood of the verb in the subordinate clause introduced, or, in other words, the variation of the Latin mood is represented by a variation of the English conjunction. This is more fully explained in the Syntax.

(*With Indicative or Subjunctive.*)

sī, *if*
nĭsĭ or **nī**, *unless*
etsī, **ĕtĭamsī**, } *although*
cum, { with Indic. *when*; with Subj. *when, since, although*
antĕquam, **prĭusquam**, } *before that*
dum, **dōnĕc**, **quŏăd**, { with Indic. *whilst*; with Subj. *until*
quŏd, **quĭă**, } *because*

(*With Indicative Only.*)

quamquam, *although*
quŏnĭam, **quandŏquĭdem**, } *since*
sĭmŭlāc, **sĭmŭlatquĕ**, } *as soon as*
ŭbĭ, **ŭt** (or **ŭtī**), } *when*

(*With Subjunctive Only.*)

ŭt (or **ŭtī**), *in order that, so that, although*
nē, *lest*
quō, *that (thereby)*
quōmĭnŭs, *that (thereby) . . . not*
quīn, *that (thereby) . . . not, but that*
quamvīs, **lĭcĕt**, } *although*

Obs. Several relative adverbs serve also as conjunctions; **cum**, **quŏăd**, **ŭbĭ**, and **ŭt** have already been given in Ch. XXVII.

CHAPTER XXXI.—INTERJECTIONS.

I. Natural Sounds.

§ 263. The following are the most common :—

āh or **ā**, *ah*
eccĕ, **ēn**, *lo!*
ēiă or **hēiă**, *come!*
hei, *ah!*
heu or **ēheu**, *alas!*
heus, *ho!*
ō, *O, oh!*
prō or **prōh**, *alas*
vae, *woe!*

II. Words.

§ 264. The following are the most important :—

ăgĕ, *come!*
herclē, *Hercules!*
mactĕ (voc. of **mactŭs**, *glorified*), *bravo! well done! go on!*
mĕdĭŭs fĭdĭŭs, *may the God of Faith* (help) *me!*
mĕherclē, **mĕhercŭlē**, **mĕhercŭlēs**, *may Hercules* (help) *me!*
pōl, *Pollux!*

PART II.: FORMATION OF CERTAIN CLASSES OF WORDS.

CHAPTER XXXII.—SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Formation of Substantives from Verbs.

§ 265. Three verbal substantives—the gerund, the supine, and the infinitive—are included in the conjugation of the verbs to which they belong (§ 126). Substantives of one or more of the following classes are also formed from the supine base of many verbs.

Obs. The word "formed" here refers merely to the mechanical structure of the words, not to their etymology.

§ 266. The nominative of the verbal substantive, of which the supines are respectively the accusative and ablative cases, is formed by adding **-ŭs** to the supine base. These substantives are of the fourth declension and of masculine gender; *e.g.* **audīt-ŭs, -ūs,** *the sense of hearing;* **ūs-ŭs, -ūs,** *use.*

Obs. This verbal substantive of the fourth declension must be carefully distinguished from the perfect participle, which is an adjective declined like **bŏnŭs.**

§ 267. Substantives formed by adding **-ĭō** (base **-ĭōn-**) to the supine base of the verb are very numerous; *e.g.* **act-ĭō, -ōnĭs,** *action.* These substantives are all feminine.

§ 268. Substantives formed by adding **-ŏr** (base **-ōr-**) to the supine base denote the agent—*i.e.* one who performs the action expressed by the verb; *e.g.* **vēnāt-ŏr, -ōrĭs,** *hunter;* **foss-ŏr, -ōrĭs,** *digger.* These substantives are masculine; those in **-tŏr** have a feminine form in **-trix** (§ 274).

Formation of Adjectives from Verbs.

§ 269. Adjectives ending in **-ĭlĭs** or **-bĭlĭs** denote that the substantive to which they refer is capable of performing or (more usually) suffering the action indicated by the verb.

Examples: **dŏc-ĭlĭs,** *teachable,* cp. **dŏcērĕ,** *to teach*; **ūt-ĭlĭs,** *useful,* cp. **ūtī,** *to use*; **stă-bĭlĭs,** *steadfast,* cp. **stārĕ,** *to stand*; **flē-bĭlĭs,** *tearful* (active) or *lamentable* (passive), cp. **flērĕ,** *to weep.*

§ 270. Adjectives ending in -**ĭdŭs** imply a condition or state, those in -**cundŭs** a characteristic or habit; adjectives in -**bundŭs** imply (like present participles) the present performance of the verbal action.

Examples: **frīg-ĭdŭs**, *cold*, cp. **frīgērĕ**, *to be cold*; **văl-ĭdŭs**, *strong*, cp. **văl-ērĕ**, *to be strong*; **fā-cundŭs**, *eloquent*, cp. **fārī**, *to speak*; **īrā-cundŭs**, *hot-tempered*, cp. **īrascī**, *to be angry*; **mŏrĭ-bundŭs**, *dying*, cp. **mŏrī**, *to die*; **errā-bundŭs**, *wandering*, cp. **errārĕ**, *to wander*.

§ 271. Adjectives ending in -**ax** (gen. -**ācĭs**) indicate a propensity, often an excessive one.

Examples: **aud-ax**, *daring, rash*, cp. **audērĕ**, *to dare*; **lŏqu-ax**, *talkative*, cp. **lŏquī**, *to talk*; **mĭn-ax**, *threatening*, cp. **mĭnārī**, *to threaten*; **vīv-ax**, *long-lived*, cp. **vīvĕrĕ**, *to live*.

Formation of Adjectives from Substantives.

§ 272. Adjectives are formed from substantives by the addition of various endings, the more important of which are illustrated by the following examples:—

Pătr-īŭs, *paternal*, **pătĕr-nŭs**, *owned by a father*, cp. **pătĕr**, *father*; **quer-nŭs**, *oaken*, cp. **quercŭs**, *oak*; **aur-ĕŭs**, *golden*, cp. **aurum**, *gold*; **bell-ĭcŭs**, *military*, cp. **bellum**, *war*; **form-ōsus**, *beautiful*, cp. **formă**, *shape, beauty*; **vī-ŏ-lentŭs**, *violent*, cp. **vīs**, *force*; **barb-ātŭs**, *bearded*, cp. **barbă**, *beard*; **fāt-ālĭs**, *fated*, cp. **fātum**, *fate*; **sălūt-ārĭs**, *healthful*, cp. **sălūs** (base, **sălūt-**), *health*; **host-īlĭs**, *hostile*, cp. **hostĭs**, *enemy*; **Lăt-īnŭs**, *Latin*, cp. **Lătĭum**; **oppĭd-ānŭs**, *provincial*, cp. **oppĭdum**, *country town*; **ăgr-ārĭŭs**, *agrarian*, cp. **ăgĕr**, *field*.

Formation of Feminine Substantives from Masculine.

§ 273. In the case of many masculine substantives of the second declension denoting males there are corresponding feminine forms of the first declension denoting females; *e.g.*—

dĕ-ŭs, *god*	**dĕ-ă** (§ 43), *goddess*
ĕqu-ŭs, *horse*	**ĕqu-ă**, *mare*
fīlĭ-ŭs, *son*	**fīlĭ-ă** (§ 43), *daughter*
măgistĕr (base, **măgistr-**), *master*	**măgistr-ă**, *mistress*

§ 274. From masculine substantives of the third declension ending in the nominative singular in -**tŏr** (genitive -**tōrĭs**) feminine substantives may be formed by changing -**tŏr** to -**trix** (base, -**trīc-**); *e.g.*—

vēnā-tŏr, *hunter* **vēnā-trix**, -**trīcĭs**, *huntress*

NOTE.—Some of these feminine forms are used as **feminine** adjectives; *e.g.* **victrix**, *victorious*, from **victŏr**, *conqueror*.

Diminutives.

§ 275. From many Latin substantives **diminutives** may be formed, conveying the idea of *smallness*, just as in English we have "islet" from "isle," "manikin" from "man," etc. In the following sections the commoner methods of forming diminutives are indicated.

§ 276. From substantives of the first and second declensions (except some ending in **-ĕr**) diminutives are formed by adding to the base **-ŭlŭs** if the substantive is masculine, **-ŭlă** if the substantive is feminine, and **-ŭlum** if it is neuter; the same rule applies to substantives of the third declension with base ending in a dental (**d, t**) or guttural (**c, g**); *e.g.*—

rīv-ŭs, *stream*	**rīv-ŭlŭs,** *streamlet*
parm-ă, *shield*	**parm-ŭlă,** *little shield*
oppĭd-um, *town*	**oppĭd-ŭlum,** *small town*
căpŭt (gen. **căpĭt-ĭs**), *head*	**căpĭt-ŭlum,** *little head*
rex (gen. **rēg-ĭs**), *king*	**rēg-ŭlŭs,** *petty king*

§ 277. If the base of the substantive ends in a vowel, **-ŏlŭs, -ŏlă,** or **-ŏlum** is added instead of **-ŭlŭs, -ŭlă, -ŭlum**; *e.g.*—

fīlĭ-ŭs, *son*	**fīlĭ-ŏlŭs,** *little son*
fīlĭ-ă, *daughter*	**fīlĭ-ŏlă,** *little daughter*
nĕgōtĭ-um, *business*	**nĕgōtĭ-ŏlum,** *bit of business*

NOTE.—If the base ends in **l, n,** or **r,** the diminutive termination contracts with this last letter of the base into **-llŭs, -llă, -llum**; *e.g.*—

cŏrō-n-ă, *garland*	**cŏro-llă,** *small garland*
lĭbĕ-r, *book*	**lĭbe-llŭs,** *pamphlet*

§ 278. From substantives other than those included in the preceding sections diminutives ending in **-cŭlŭs, -cŭlă, -cŭlum** are formed on the model of the examples here given :—

frātĕr, *brother*	**frāter-cŭlŭs,** *little brother*
mŭlĭĕr, *woman*	**mŭlĭer-cŭlă,** *little woman*
corpŭs, *body*	**corpus-cŭlum,** *atom*
nāv-ĭs, *ship*	**nāv-ĭ-cŭlă,** *skiff*
vers-ŭs (4th decl.), *verse*	**vers-ĭ-cŭlŭs,** *little verse*
spēs (5th decl.), *hope*	**spē-cŭlă,** *ray of hope*

Patronymics.

§ 279. Patronymics denote descent from a parent or ancestor, generally a father; they are all of Greek formation, but are of frequent occurrence in Latin poetry.

§ 280. **Masculine** patronymics are formed by adding to the base of proper names of Greek origin (§§ 61-68) belonging to the

First Declension, as—
Aenē-ās, -ădēs, as in **Aenĕ-ădēs,** *son of Aeneas*
Lāert-ēs, -ĭădēs, „ **Lāert-ĭădēs,** *son of Laertes*

Second Declension, as—
Prĭăm-ŭs, -ĭdēs, „ **Prĭăm-ĭdēs,** *son of Priam*

Second Declension (with base ending in i), as—
Thestĭ-ŭs, -ădēs, as in **Thestĭ-ădēs,** *son of Thestius*

Third Declension, as—
Cēcrops (gen. **Cēcrŏp-ĭs**), -ĭdēs, „ **Cēcrŏp-ĭdēs,** *son of Cecrops*
Atlās (gen. **Atlant-ĭs**), -ĭădēs, „ **Atlant-ĭădēs,** *son of Atlas*
Atr-eus, -ĭdēs, „ **Atr-ĭdēs,** *son of Atreus*

§ 281. All masculine patronymics are declined like **Tȳdīdēs** (§ 62). The genitive plural often ends in **-um** instead of **-ārum** (§ 42, 1).

§ 282. **Feminine** patronymics are formed by adding to the base of proper names of Greek origin **-ăs, -ĭăs, -ĭs** or **-ēĭs,** according as the masculine patronymic would end in **-ădēs, -ĭădēs, -ĭdēs** or **-īdēs**; *e.g.*—

	Masc. Patronymic.	Fem. Patronymic.
Thestĭ-ŭs	**Thestĭ-ădēs**	**Thestĭ-ăs,** *daughter of Thestius*
Atlās (gen. **Atlant-ĭs**)	**Atlant-ĭădēs**	**Atlant-ĭās,** *daughter of Atlas*
Cēcrops (gen. **Cēcrŏp-ĭs**)	**Cēcrŏp-ĭdēs**	**Cēcrŏp-ĭs,** *daughter of Cecrops*
Nēr-eus	——	**Nēr-ēĭs,** *daughter of Nereus*

§ 283. Feminine patronymics are declined like **lampăs** (§ 65, 1), the accusative singular of the examples given above being **Thestĭăd-ă, Atlantĭăd-ă, Cēcrŏpĭd-ă, Nērēĭd-ă.**

CHAPTER XXXIII.—FORMATION OF CERTAIN CLASSES OF VERBS.

Derived Verbs.

§ 284. Three classes of verbs call for notice here :—

(*a*) **frequentative** verbs, expressing *repeated* action ;

(*b*) **inceptive** verbs (also called **inchoative**), expressing *incipient* or *increasing* action ;

(*c*) **desiderative** verbs, expressing *desire* of action.

§ 285. The present base of a **frequentative** verb is formed either (i) by adding -ĭt- to the present base of the simple verb, or (ii) by adding -ĭt- to the supine base of the simple verb, or (iii) is identical with the supine base of the simple verb. From verbs of the first conjugation frequentative verbs are formed by the first method only. Many verbs, though frequentative in form, have no frequentative force, but are either equivalent to their simple verb or imply intenser action.

	Present (of Simple Verb).	Supine (of Simple Verb).	Frequentative.
(i)	rŏg-ō, *ask*	——	rŏg-ĭt-ō, *ask repeatedly*
	ăg-ō, *drive*	——	ăg-ĭt-ō, *shake*
	mĭn-ŏr, *threaten*	——	mĭn-ĭt-ŏr, *threaten*
(ii)	lĕgō, *read*	lect-um	lect-ĭt-ō, *read repeatedly*
	vĕnĭō, *come*	vent-um	vent-ĭt-ō, *come frequently*
(iii)	cănō, *sing*	cant-um	cant-ō, *sing*
	vert-ō, *turn*	vers-um	vers-ō, *twist*

§ 286. Frequentative verbs are all of the first conjugation, and form their principal parts regularly ; *e.g.* ăgĭtō, ăgĭtārĕ, ăgĭtāvī, ăgĭtātum ; mĭnĭtŏr, mĭnĭtārī, mĭnĭtātŭs sum.

Obs. If the simple verb is deponent, the frequentative is deponent also.

§ 287. **Inceptive** verbs are formed by adding to the present base of a verb of the

1st conj. -ascō, *e.g.*—

lăb-asc-ō, -ĕrĕ, *begin to totter*, from lăb-ō, -ārĕ, *totter*

2nd conj. -escō, *e.g.*—

sīl-esc-ō, -ĕrĕ, *become silent*, „ sīl-ēō, -ērĕ, *be silent*

3rd conj. -escō or -iscō, *e.g.*—

trĕm-esc-ō, trĕm-isc-ō, -ĕrĕ, *begin to tremble* „ trĕm-ō, -ĕrĕ, *tremble*

4th conj. -iscō, *e.g.*—

obdorm-isc-ō, -ĕrĕ, *fall asleep* „ dorm-ĭō, -īrĕ, *sleep*

NOTE.—Sometimes the simple verb from which the inceptive is supposed to be formed is not in use, and sometimes the inceptive is formed direct from an adjective; *e.g.* mīt-escō, *I grow mild*, from mīt-ĭs, *mild*.

§ 288. Inceptive verbs are all of the third conjugation; their perfects and supines, if in use, are identical with those of the simple verbs from which they are formed. The principal parts of inceptive verbs not derived from other verbs (*e.g.* īrascŏr, *I get angry*) are given in Chapters XXI. and XXVI. if in use.

§ 289. **Desiderative** verbs are formed by adding -ŭrĭō to the supine base of the simple verb; *e.g.* ēs-ŭrĭō, *I desire to eat, am hungry*, from the base of ēs-um, supine of ĕdō, *I eat*.

§ 290. All desiderative verbs are of the fourth conjugation, and form their perfects and supines (if in use) like audĭō.

COMPOUND VERBS.

§ 291. When compounded with verbs, etc., some **prepositions** undergo certain changes in accordance with euphonic principles. These changes are best learnt by observation; the following remarks may be of use to the learner, but are by no means exhaustive.

§ 292. (i) The final consonant of ăd, ŏb, sŭb is frequently assimilated to the first letter (if a consonant) of the verb; *e.g.* affĕrō (= ăd + fĕrō), oppōnō (= ŏb + pōnō), summŏvĕō (= sŭb + mŏvĕō). Sus-, *e.g.* in sus-pendō, sus-tŭlī, represents subs-, a form of sŭb.

(ii) **Com-** (the usual form of **cum** in composition) and **ĭn** are assimilated to **l** or **r** when the simple verb begins with either of those letters; *e.g.* corrumpō (= com- + rumpō), irrumpō (= ĭn + rumpō). They are respectively written **com-** and **im-** before **m**, **b**, or **p**, *e.g.* impellō; **com-** becomes **con-** before most other letters, *e.g.* conferō, contŭlī.

(iii) **Ā, ăb** assumes several forms: **a-, ab-, au-, abs-, as-**; *e.g.* āmittō, abdō, auferō, abstrăhō, asportō.

(iv) **Ē** is used in composition before consonants only, **ex** is used before consonants and vowels; *e.g.* ēdō, expellō, exĕō. Before **f** the old form **ec-** becomes **ef-**, as in effĕrō.

(v) **Ăd, com-,** and **trans** sometimes lose the consonants at the end, as in aspĭrō, cŏĕō, trāĭcĭō (see p. 128, footnote).

Obs. In some editions of Latin classics prepositions in composition are printed in their unassimilated forms, *e.g.* **adfĕrō, obpōnō, submŏvĕō.**

NOTE.—**Prō** (originally **prōd**) retains its final **d** in **prōd-ĕō, prōd-ĭgō** (= **prōd** + **ăgō**), and in **prōd-essĕ** and other parts of **prōsum** in which the verb begins with **e**. Sometimes **pro** has **ŏ** (short) in composition, *e.g.* in **prŏfĭciscŏr**, *I set out.*

§ **293.** Verbs, etc., when compounded frequently undergo certain vowel-changes in the present, perfect, and supine bases, or in the present and perfect bases, or in the present base only.

The vowels thus subject to change are **ă** (with the diphthongs **ae** and **au**) and **ĕ**.

ă (short)	becomes **ĕ**, as in	congrĕdĭŏr	= com	+ grădĭŏr
	or **ĭ**, „	occĭdō	= ŏb	+ cădō
	„ **ŭ**, „	concŭtĭō	= com-	+ quătĭō
a (short by nature)	becomes **e**, „	correptum	= com-	+ raptum
	or **i**, „	confringō	= com-	+ frangō
	„ **u**, „	insultō	= ĭn	+ saltō
ae	becomes **ī**, „	occīdō	= ŏb	+ caedō
au	„ **ō**, „	explōdō	= ex	+ plaudō
	or **ū**, „	conclūdō	= com-	+ claudō
ĕ (short)	becomes **ĭ**, „	collĭgō	= com-	+ lĕgō

CHAPTER XXXIV.—INSEPARABLE PARTICLES.

§ 294. The following particles serve as prefixes in the formation chiefly of verbs, but also of other parts of speech. Most of them undergo euphonic changes similar to those which occur in the case of the prepositions mentioned in the last chapter.

ambĭ-, *around*, (**amb-**)	as in **amb-ĭō** (= **ambĭ-** + **ĕō**, but conjugated like **audĭō**), *go round*
dis-, *asunder*, (**dif-**, **dī-**)	„ **dis-cŭtĭō** (= **dis-** + **quătĭō**), *shatter*; **dif-fĕrō** (= **dis-** + **fĕrō**), *bear asunder*; **dī-vellō**, *rend*
in-, *not* (= Eng. *un-*), (**im-**, **il-**, **ir-**)	„ **ĭn-audītŭs**, *unheard of*; **im-pār**, *unequal*; **il-lōtŭs**, *unwashed*; **ir-rĭtŭs** (= **in-** + **rătŭs**), *ineffectual*
ne-, *not*,	„ **ne-scĭō**, *know not*
rĕd-, *back*, (**rĕ-**)	„ **red-dō**, *give back*; **rĕd-ĕō**, *go back*; **rettŭlī**,* *I brought back*; **rĕ-mittō**, *send back*
sēd-, *apart, without*, (**sē-**)	„ **sēd-ĭtĭō** (**-ĭtĭō** = *a going*, from supine base of **ĕō**, *go*), *dissension*; **sē-cūrŭs**, *without anxiety*

Obs. 1. The enclitic **-dum** is occasionally added to **ăgĕ** and to some other imperatives; *e.g.* **ăgĕdum**, *come now!* **ĭtĕrādum**, *repeat now!*

Obs. 2. For the enclitic **-nĕ**, see § 239; for the enclitics **-quĕ** and **-vĕ**, see § 261.

* So also **reccĭdī** (perf. of **rĕcĭdō**, *fall back*), **reppĕrī** (perf. of **rĕpĕrĭō**, *find*), and **reppŭlī** (perf. of **rĕpellō**, *drive back*).

PART III.: SYNTAX.

CHAPTER XXXV.—SENTENCES.

§ 295. The departments of grammar known respectively as accidence and syntax may be roughly defined by saying that accidence deals with words, syntax with sentences.

As it is impossible to learn intelligently the inflexions of substantives, verbs, etc., without some knowledge of the part which the inflected words play in a sentence, some of the main principles of syntax, here set out in detail, have already been indicated in Part I. of this book.

Simple, Compound, and Complex Sentences.

§ 296. A **simple sentence** consists of a single statement, question, or command, and contains but one finite verb.

vĕnĭō.	quĭs vĕnĭt ?	vĕnī.
I come.	*who comes ?*	*come.*

Obs. By "finite" verb is meant a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mood, as distinguished from a participle or verbal substantive.

§ 297. A **compound sentence** contains two or more simple sentences, each of which gives, when taken separately, a complete and intelligible meaning.

vēnī, vīdī, vīcī.
I came, I saw, I overcame.

§ 298. A **complex sentence** consists of a simple sentence (called the "principal sentence"), to which are joined one or more sub-sentences (called "dependent clauses"), which, though each containing a finite verb, do not give a complete and intelligible sense when taken apart from the principal sentence. (See the next section for examples.)

§ 299. The dependent clause performs, in regard to the principal sentence, the function of—

(*a*) a substantive,
(*b*) an adjective, or
(*c*) an adverb;

and is termed accordingly **substantival, adjectival,** or **adverbial.**

(*a*) quŏd rĕdĭĭt Rēgŭlŭs nōbīs mīrābĭlĕ vĭdētŭr.
(the fact) that Regulus went back seems to us remarkable.

(*b*) nōn cărĕt ĭs quī nōn dēsīdĕrăt.
he lacks not who feels not his want.

(*c*) cunctă ŭt gestă sunt expōnam.
I will relate everything as it happened.

Obs. 1. The verb in a dependent clause is in the indicative or subjunctive mood.

Obs. 2. The preceding examples are merely given to illustrate the definitions; the consideration of the dependent clauses of complex sentences must be deferred until simple sentences have been treated in detail.

Principal sentences to which dependent clauses are added fall under the same rules as simple sentences.

CHAPTER XXXVI.—VERBS, TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE: USE OF THE VOICES.

§ **300.** It is necessary before proceeding with the syntax of the simple sentence to explain the chief usages of the two voices of Latin verbs. These usages vary according as the verb is transitive or intransitive.

§ **301.** Of Latin verbs some are **always intransitive** (*i.e.* the action they express is not one *performed upon* some person or thing); *e.g.* vĕnĭō, *I come.* Others are **always transitive,** and imply the existence of some person or thing upon which the action is performed; *e.g.* portō, *I carry.*

Many verbs, however, are **sometimes transitive, sometimes intransitive**; *e.g.* tĭmĕō, *I fear.*

Rules given in this syntax for transitive verbs must be understood to apply also to verbs of this last class when used transitively, and similarly rules given for intransitive verbs apply to these verbs when used intransitively.

Among **deponents** (§ 171) there are both transitive and intransitive verbs.

Obs. It often happens that, whereas a verb in its simple form is intransitive, compounds of this verb with prepositions are transitive; *e.g.* ĕō, *I go* (intransitive); ădĕō, *I approach* (transitive); **pugnō,** *I fight* (intransitive); **expugnō,** *I storm* (transitive).

§ **302.** Transitive and intransitive verbs (unless deponent or defective) are alike conjugated throughout the active voice, except that—

(1) impersonal verbs are used in the third person singular and the infinitive only (§ 230);

(2) the nominative gerund of transitive verbs is not in use in classical Latin.

§ 303. Verbs which are transitive in the active voice are conjugated throughout in the passive; **intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally in the passive**, and are, therefore, only found in the third person singular and in the infinitive.

ex proxĭmīs castellīs ĕō **concursum est.**
a rush was made thither from the nearest forts.

ventum est ĭn montēs.
the mountains were reached.

Obs. There is in English no exact parallel to the Latin impersonal use of the passive of intransitive verbs : ĭtŭr literally means *there is a going, a going takes place;* so **ventum est**, *a coming took place.* Attention is thus directed to the action, not to the person by whom the action is performed. The passive form of such sentences may be reproduced (as above) by employing as subject a substantive answering to the Latin verb or to some other word in the sentence.

§ 304. When a **transitive** verb is used in the **passive** voice the subject—

(*a*) suffers an action performed by some external agency or instrumentality :

E.g., Saxum fluctĭbŭs tundĭtŭr, *The rock is beaten by the waves;*

(*b*) performs an action on himself :

E.g., Mŏvĕŏr, *I move myself*, i.e. *I move;*

(*c*) performs an action on something connected with his person :

E.g., Accingŏr glădĭum, *I gird on a sword.*

Obs. In usages (*b*) and (*c*), and especially in (*c*), the passive is said to have a middle meaning, *i.e.* a meaning similar to that of the "middle" voice of a Greek verb, in which the subject is identical with the indirect object. Usage (*c*) is peculiar to poetry; for other examples, see § 327.

CHAPTER XXXVII.—THE SIMPLE SENTENCE: CONCORDS.

Subject and Predicate.

§ **305.** In its normal form a **simple sentence** contains—

(*a*) a **substantive** (in the nominative case) as **subject**;

(*b*) a **verb** (of the same number and person as the subject) as **predicate.**

nāvĭs ĭt.	nāvēs ĕunt.
the ship goes.	*the ships go.*

Obs. Rules given in this syntax for substantives apply also to adjectives used substantivally and to substantival pronouns. Adjectives used substantivally (*i.e.* without substantives) in the masculine denote *men*, in the neuter denote *things; e.g.* Bŏnī hŏnestă prŏbant, *Good men approve of honourable things.* This usage is avoided where ambiguity would arise through the masculine and neuter endings being the same.

§ **306.** The **subject** need not be separately expressed, but may be **denoted by the termination of the verb**, if the latter is—

(*a*) of the first or second person singular or plural;

(*b*) of the third person singular used impersonally;

(*c*) of the third person plural used indefinitely.

(*a*)	(*b*)	(*c*)
vĕnĭō.	plŭĭt.	crēdunt.
I come.	*it rains.*	*people believe.*

Obs. The subject of a verb in the third person often has to be supplied from a preceding sentence; hence it is occasionally wanting in some of the extracts from the classics used as examples in this book, *e.g.* in § 320.

The Secondary Predicate.

§ **307.** Some intransitive and passive verbs do not by themselves form a predication complete in itself; *e.g.* fīō, *I become* (*become what?*); Cătō appellātŭr, *Cato is called* (*is called what?*). The substantive or adjective added in such cases to complete the sense is called the **secondary predicate**, the verb in question being then for distinction called the **primary predicate.**

consŭl fīō.	Cătō appellātŭr săpĭens.
I become consul.	*Cato is styled wise.*

Obs. A secondary predicate must, if a substantive, be in the same case as its subject; if an adjective, in the same gender, number, and case.

§ 308. The verb sum always requires a secondary predicate (unless used in the sense of *I exist*), and the perfect participle in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses of the passive voice is, strictly speaking, a secondary predicate.

§ 309. A perfect participle is very commonly used alone as a primary predicate, instead of as a secondary predicate with est or sunt.

contĭnŭō audītae vōcēs.
forthwith cries were heard.

NOTE.—Any adjective *may* be so used; see the example in § 313.

CONCORDS.

§ 310. Two rules, known respectively as the "first concord" and the "second concord," which relate to the "concord" or agreement of words in a sentence, have already been indicated and are here formally stated.

Obs. The "third concord" has to do with complex sentences only (see § 497).

§ 311. CONCORD I. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case, and the verb agrees therewith in number and in person.

lābuntŭr annī. — *years glide by.*

prŏcŭl, ō prŏcŭl estĕ, prŏfānī. — *away, away, ye uninitiated.*

NOTE.—Sometimes the number of the verb depends on the sense rather than on the form of the subject; see Appendix (A.), *Synesis.*

§ 312. CONCORD II. An adjective, participle, or adjectival pronoun agrees in gender, number, and case with the substantive to which it refers either as attribute or predicate.

solvĭtŭr ācrĭs hĭems.
sharp winter is melting away.

mĕtŭō pătrŭae* verbĕră linguae.
I fear the scourging of an uncle's tongue.

* Besides the substantive pătrŭŭs, *an uncle*, there is an adjective pătrŭŭs, *of an uncle*; pătrŭae is from the latter.

fortūnă caecă est.
fortune is blind.
Clȳtaemnestră ā fīlĭō sŭō occīsă est.
Clytaemnestra was slain by her son.

NOTE.—An adjective that expresses a quality possessed by the subject at the time of action is often represented by an English adverb ; *e.g.* Invītŭs ĭd fēcī, *I did so unwillingly.*

§ 313. A masculine or feminine substantive sometimes has as predicate a neuter adjective used substantivally.

vărĭum ĕt mūtābĭlĕ semper fēmĭnă.
woman is ever a fickle and inconstant thing.

§ 314. A substantive may stand to another substantive in the relation of an attribute, and is then said to be in **apposition** to it. A substantive agrees in case with that to which it is in apposition, but not necessarily in number.

tē cănam, magnī Iŏvĭs ĕt dĕōrum nuntĭum.
thee will I hymn, the messenger of great Jupiter and the gods.
Cŏrĭŏlī oppĭdum captum.
the town of Corioli was taken.

Obs. Note that apposition is often represented by the English preposition *of*. (Cŏrĭŏlī is nominative plural.)

§ 315. A substantive in apposition often has special reference to the time of action, and must then be translated with the addition of *when* or *as*.

Cĭcĕrō consŭl haec fēcĭt.
Cicero did these things when consul.

COMPOUND CONCORDS.

§ 316. Two or more substantives (not in apposition) having the same predicate form what is called a **composite subject**. (See the next section for examples.)

§ 317. A composite subject has, according to rule, its verb in the plural; and if the members of the composite subject are of different persons, the verb agrees with the "**prior**" **person**, the first person being reckoned prior to the second, and the second to the third.

ĕgŏ ĕt Cĭcĕrō vălēmŭs.
Cicero and I are well.

tū ĕt Tullĭă vălētĭs.
you and Tullia are well.

§ 318. Very commonly, however, a composite subject is constructed with a singular verb for one of the following reasons :—

(*a*) The verb agrees with one member of the subject only, being understood with the other. This is always the case where the conjunction joining the members of the subject means *or* or *nor*.

(*b*) The two members of the subject are either practically synonymous or combine to form one idea.

(*a*) **făvĕt nox ĕt Vĕnŭs.**
night and Venus are favourable.
cĭtă mors vĕnĭt aut victōrĭă laetă.
a swift death comes or a joyful victory.

(*b*) **rĕlĭgĭō ĕt fĭdēs antĕpōnātŭr ămīcĭtĭae.**
let religion and good faith be considered before friendship.

319. An adjective used as an **attribute of several substantives** usually agrees with the nearest.

vĭgēbăt ĭn illā dŏmō patrĭŭs mōs ĕt disciplīnă.
there flourished in that house ancestral custom and rule.

NOTE.—Occasionally the rule for the agreement of the secondary predicate of a composite subject (§ 321) applies here.

§ 320. A plural substantive may have, when the sense requires it, two attributes, each in the singular.

ĭn cornĭbŭs dextrō Poenōs lŏcăt, laevō Afrōs. [*left.*
he places the Carthaginians on the right wing, the Africans on the

NOTE.—Similarly two individual names in the singular are constructed with a family name in the plural; *e.g.* **Mĭhĭ Gnaeŭs ĕt Publĭŭs Scīpĭōnēs fortūnātī vĭdentŭr,** *Gnaeus and Publius Scipio seem to me fortunate.*

§ 321. An adjective or participle serving as the **secondary predicate of a composite subject** is, according to rule, put in the plural number; and if the members of the subject are of different genders, the adjective is masculine if it refers to persons, neuter if it refers to things.

mortŭī sunt pătĕr ēiŭs ĕt mātĕr.
his father and mother are dead.
dīvĭtĭae dĕcŭs glōrĭă ĭn ŏcŭlīs sĭtă sunt.
riches, honour, and glory are set before our eyes.

NOTE.—Two or more feminine abstract substantives may have a neuter plural predicate; *e.g.* **Stultĭtĭă ĕt tĕmĕrĭtās sunt fŭgiendă,** *Folly and rashness are things to be avoided* (cp. § 313).

CHAPTER XXXVIII.—SUBSTANTIVES: THE USE OF THE CASES AND NUMBERS.

I.—THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

§ 322. The **nominative** is used—

(*a*) as the subject of a finite verb:

E.g., Caesăr pervēnĭt, *Caesar arrived;*

(*b*) as secondary predicate of that subject:

E.g., Iuppĭtĕr rex hăbētŭr, *Jupiter is accounted king;*

(*c*) in apposition to another nominative:

E.g., Păt ĕr Aenēās flēbăt, *Father Aeneas was weeping;*

(*d*) occasionally, in place of the vocative, to denote the person addressed:

E.g., Audī tū, p ŏp ŭl ŭs Albānŭs, *Hear thou, Alban nation.*

§ 323. The commoner verbs with which a **secondary predicate** is used **in the same case as the subject** are here given (these are often termed **copulative** verbs):—

(*a*) The verb sum, *I am:*

E.g., Cĭcĕrō consŭl ĕrăt, *Cicero was consul.*

(*b*) The passive of verbs signifying to *make, name, esteem,* and the like (including fīō, *I become,* which serves as the passive of făcĭō, *I make,* and vĭdĕŏr, *I seem,* passive of vĭdĕō, *I see*):

E.g., Hī bĕātī vĭdentŭr, *These men seem happy.*

(*c*) Intransitive verbs such as nascŏr, *I am born;* vīvō, *I live;* mănĕō, *I remain:*

E.g., Ĕgŏ vīvō mĭserrĭmŭs, *My life is most wretched.*

II.—THE VOCATIVE CASE.

§ 324. A substantive in the **vocative** case stands as an exclamation. It bears no syntactical relation to the sentence with which it is used.

hūc ădĕs, mī fīlī.
come here, my son.

Obs. For the nominative used as vocative, see § 322.

III.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

§ 325. A word in the **accusative** case for the most part defines the sphere of a verb's action, and is called the **object** of that verb.

The object is—

(A.) external, denoting that to which the verbal action is applied (§§ 326—333); or

(B.) internal, denoting the extent or character of the action (§§ 334—344).

The accusative is also used with many prepositions (§§ 345—346).

Obs. The terms "external" and "internal" are explained and illustrated in § 336.

For the accusative used as subject of an infinitive, see § 408, *Obs.*

(A.) ACCUSATIVE OF THE EXTERNAL OBJECT (INCLUDING THE "GOAL," WHEN THE VERB EXPRESSES MOTION).

§ 326. The **object of a transitive verb,** personal or impersonal, is in the accusative case.

multī dīvĭtĭās despĭcĭunt.
many despise riches.

ŏportĕt mē ăbīrĕ.
it behoves me (i.e. *I ought*) *to go away.*

NOTE.—Participles of transitive verbs, and the infinitive and other verbal substantives (§ 407) take an accusative of the object.

Caesăr cŏhortātŭs sŭōs proelĭum commīsīt.
Caesar, having encouraged his men, joined battle.

§ 327. This accusative of the external object is found not only with active and deponent transitive verbs, but also in poetry with passive verbs used in a middle sense (§ 304), and especially with their perfect participles.

indŭĭtŭr cultum făcĭemquĕ Dĭānae.
she assumes the garb and form of Diana.

pŭĕrī laevō suspensī lŏcŭlōs tăbŭlamquĕ lăcertō ībant.
the boys used to go, having slung on their left arm satchel and tablet.

§ 328. Verbs which are, strictly speaking, **intransitive** are occasionally, by a slight **stretch of their meaning**, constructed with an accusative of the external object, especially in poetry.

trĭbūnīcĭum nōmĕn horrēbant.
they stood in dread of the title of "tribune."

iŏcă tŭă rīsī sătĭs.
I laughed heartily at your jests.

§ 329. The accusative used in **exclamations** is the object of some verb more or less distinctly understood.

ō mē perdĭtum! ō mē afflictum!
alas for me, undone and overthrown!

Obs. The above usage must be distinguished from that of an interjection with the vocative of the person addressed (§ 324).

§ 330. With verbs of *making* or *calling* (known as **factitive** verbs), the object has a predicate in agreement with it.

tē făcĭmŭs, Fortūnă, dĕam.
we make thee, Fortune, a goddess.

Cătōnem săpĭentem appellant.
they style Cato wise.

Obs. When a sentence such as the above is reproduced in a passive form, the predicative word agrees with the subject of the passive verb; the above examples become tū, fortūnă, fīs dĕă, and Cătō appellātŭr săpĭens.

§ 331. The accusative is used both with and without a preposition to denote the **goal of motion.**

It is used **without a preposition** when the goal is expressed by—

(*a*) the name of **a town**;

(*b*) the name of **a small island**—*i.e.* one small enough to be regarded as a place, not a country;

(*c*) the words dŏmŭs, *home* (but not in the meaning *house*); rūs, *country.*

Brundŭsĭum pervēnĭmŭs, indĕ Leucădem.
we came to Brundusium and thence to Leucas.

vōs ītĕ dŏmum, ĕgŏ rūs ībō.
you go home, I will go into the country.

NOTE 1.—If a substantive (*e.g.* **urbs**, *city*; **oppĭdum**, *town*) stands in apposition to the name of the town which is the goal of motion, a preposition is generally used with that substantive.

consŭl pervēnĭt ĭn oppĭdum Cirtam.
the consul arrived at the town of Cirta.

NOTE 2.—The difference between the Latin and the English idiom in sentences such as the following should be noted: **Lēgātī missī Săguntum ăd Hannĭbălem,** *Ambassadors were sent to Hannibal at Saguntum.*

NOTE 3.—The accusative of words other than names of towns and small islands is occasionally used (without a preposition) by the poets to denote the goal of motion; *e.g.* **Dēvēnērĕ lŏcōs laetōs,** *They reached the joyful spots.*

§ 332. The accusative **supine** represents an action as the "goal," and accordingly is used with verbs implying motion.

lūsum ĭt Maecēnās, dormītum ĕgŏ Vergĭlĭusquĕ.
Maecenas goes to play, Vergil and I to sleep.

§ 333. In the case of words other than names of towns or small islands, dŏmŭs, rūs, and supines, the goal of motion is in prose expressed by the accusative **with a preposition.**

Caesăr ĭn Gallĭam contendĭt.
Caesar hastens into Gaul.

lēgātōs ăd Caesărem mittunt.
they send ambassadors to Caesar.

(B.) ACCUSATIVE OF THE INTERNAL OBJECT.

§ 334. The uses classed under the heading of "**internal**" accusative are far more varied than the preceding. The internal accusative is found with adjectives as well as with verbs and participles; with adjectives it denotes the **extent to which the adjective is applicable** to its substantive (§ 340). The usages in which the accusative expresses extent of space or time also fall under the general heading of "internal object."

Obs. The name "**adverbial**" is often given to the accusative of the internal object generally, though some confine the term to the adverbial use in § 341.

§ 335. Intransitive verbs may have as an accusative of the internal object a substantive expressing something allied to or contained in the notion of the verb. This is often called the **cognate** accusative.

pătĕr ēiŭs **s e r v ĭ t ū t e m** servīvīt.
his father was a slave (lit. *served a service*).

pŏpŭlŭs laetum tĕr crĕpŭĭt **s ŏ n u m**.
the people thrice applauded joyfully (lit. *clapped a joyful sound*).

§ 336. Certain transitive verbs may have **two objects** in the accusative—**one external, the other internal**: these verbs are such as denote *asking* or *teaching;* also cēlō, when meaning *I keep in ignorance* (not *I hide*). The internal accusative with these verbs expresses that with regard to which the action is performed on the external object.

clāvēs portārum măgistrātūs pŏposcĭt.
he asked the magistrates for the keys of the gates.
(The internal object is clāvēs, the subject-matter of his demand.)

pŭĕrōs ĕlĕmentă dŏcēbō.
I shall teach boys their letters.
(The internal object is ĕlĕmentă, the subject-matter of my teaching.)

nōn cēlāvī tē sermōnem Tĭtī.
I did not keep you in ignorance as to Titus' conversation.
(The internal object is sermōnem, that with regard to which I keep you in ignorance.)

Obs. These examples illustrate the meaning of the terms "external object," "internal object." Thus, in the first example, măgistrātūs is *external* to the verbal action, and gives no information with regard to its nature; whereas clāvēs is *internal*, and defines the nature of the request. So, too, in the second example, "boys" is the object of the act of teaching, but *external* to it; whereas "letters"—the contents of the lesson—is the *internal* object of the verbal action.

NOTE.—These verbs do not by any means always take two accusatives.

§ 337. When a sentence such as the above is reproduced in a passive form, the external object becomes the subject of the passive verb, but the internal object is retained in the accusative. This may be called the **retained accusative.**

Cĭcĕrō sententĭam rŏgātŭs est.
Cicero was asked his opinion.

Obs. **Discō**, *I learn*, is usually substituted for the passive of **dŏcĕō**, *I teach*.

§ 338. With **cēlō**, *I keep in ignorance*, **dē** with the ablative is generally (except in the case of neuter pronouns) substituted for the internal object when the sentence assumes a passive form.

nōn est prŏfectō dē illō vēnēnō cēlātă mātĕr.
his mother was certainly not kept in ignorance with regard to that poison.

nosnĕ hŏc cēlātōs (sc. **essĕ**, § 413) **tam dĭū!**
to think of our being kept in ignorance of this so long!

§ 339. The **extent of the action** of any verb—transitive, intransitive, or passive—may be expressed by a neuter pronoun in the accusative.

nōs ălĭquĭd Rŭtŭlōs contrā iŭvĭmŭs.
I, on the other hand, have helped the Rutuli somewhat.

NOTE.—**Nĭhĭl**, *in no respect*, **cētĕră**, *in all other respects*, are similarly used.

§ 340. In poetry the accusative of any substantive may be used to express the **part affected** by the action of an intransitive verb, or the part to which an adjective or passive participle is applicable. This is sometimes called the **accusative of specification** or of **respect**.

ĕquŭs trĕmĭt artūs.
the horse trembles in his limbs.

huic sē formă dĕī obtŭlĭt, omnĭă Mercŭrĭō sĭmĭlĭs, vōcemquĕ cŏlōremquĕ.
to him the form of the god presented itself, like unto Mercury in all respects, both in voice and in complexion.

mănūs iŭvĕnem post tergă rĕvinctum trăhēbant.
they were haling a youth with his hands bound (lit. *hand-bound*) *behind his back.*

Obs. 1. In prose the ablative (§ 370) is used.

Obs 2. The accusative of specification or respect is to be distinguished from the accusative governed by a passive verb used in a middle sense (§ 327).

§ 341. The accusative neuter of an adjective, singular or plural, serves as an adverb to qualify an intransitive verb. This use is mainly poetic, and is known as the **adverbial accusative**.

dulcĕ rīdentem Lălăgēn ămābō.
my sweetly laughing Lalage I will love.

ăcerbă tŭens rĕtrō rĕdĭt.
glaring sourly he draws back.

§ 342. Here may be noted the phrases **hōc gĕnŭs**, *of this kind*; **ĭd gĕnŭs**, *of that kind*; **vĭrīlĕ sĕcŭs**, *of the male sex*; which are occasionally found instead of the genitive of quality (§ 394); also **instăr**, *like*, properly *of the weight* (*of*).

mĭhĭ concrēdĭt nūgās hōc gĕnŭs.
he confides to me trifles of this sort.

instăr mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmentă praebēbant.
these hedges presented barriers like a wall.

§ 343. **Extent of space** is expressed by the accusative.

nōs pĕdem ē villā ădhūc ēgressī nōn sŭmŭs.
so far I have not stepped a foot outside my country-house.

Caesăr mīlĭă passŭum trĭă ăb Helvētĭōrum castrīs castră pōnĭt.
Caesar pitches his camp three miles (lit. *three thousand paces*) *from the camp of the Helvetii.*

dŭās fossās quindĕcim pĕdēs lātās perduxĭt.
he constructed two trenches fifteen feet broad.

§ 344. The **time throughout which** an action or state extends is expressed by the accusative.

Rōmŭlŭs septem ĕt trīgintā regnāvĭt annōs.
Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.

Cătō annōs quinquĕ ĕt octōgintā nātŭs excessĭt ē vītā.
Cato died at the age of (lit. *having been born*) *eighty-five years.*

THE ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS.

§ 345. A list of the prepositions which are used with the accusative is given in § 255, and some of the more noticeable usages are illustrated in §§ 598, 600.

§ 346. Verbs compounded with **trans**, *across*, may have an accusative dependent on **trans-**, in addition to the accusative of the object.

Caesăr Germānōs flūmĕn trāĭcĭt.
Caesar puts the Germani across the river.

NOTE.—The accusative dependent on **trans-** is also found when the verb is passive; *e.g.*, **Exercĭtŭs flūmĕn trāductŭs est**, *The army was conveyed across the river.*

IV.—THE DATIVE CASE.

§ 347. The use of the dative falls under two main headings :—

(A.) Dative of the **indirect object**—*i.e.* the person or thing *affected* by the action of the verb (§§ 348—358).

(B.) **Predicative** dative, indicating that which a person or thing serves as or results in (§ 359).

(A.) Dative of the Indirect Object.

§ 348. The **dative of the indirect object** is found with transitive and intransitive verbs, active and passive.

Transitive.

virtūtī ŏpĕram dătō.
give attention to virtue.

hŏmĭnĭbŭs ănĭmŭs dătŭs est.
to men a mind has been given.

Intransitive.

impĕrĭō illĕ pătrĭs magnī pārērĕ părābăt.
he was preparing to obey the command of his mighty sire.

mendācī hŏmĭnī nōn crēdĭtŭr.
no confidence is placed in a liar.

Obs. 1. That which is *affected* by an action (dative) being termed the "indirect object," that which is *acted on* (accusative) is for distinction often called the "direct object."

Obs. 2. The passive of intransitive verbs is used **impersonally only** (see § 303).

§ 349. Verbs which admit a dative of the indirect object are—

(1) Transitive verbs, such as those of *showing*, *telling*, and *giving*, which do not yield a complete sense when accompanied by a direct object only.

(2) Many verbs (transitive and intransitive) compounded with—

bĕnĕ, mălĕ, sătĭs, rĕ-,
antĕ, ăd, ĭn, intĕr, dē,
cum, sŭb, sŭpĕr, post, ŏb, prae.

(3) All compounds of sum (except possum).

(4) Other intransitive verbs rendered by English transitive verbs signifying—

To please, obey, command, persuade,
Harm, pardon, spare, believe, and *aid.*

NOTE.—The most common verbs of this last class are :—

Verb (Indic. and Infin.).		Meaning.	Usual English rendering.
plăc-ĕō,	-ērĕ	*to be pleasing*	*to please*
pār-ĕō,	-ērĕ	*to be obedient*	*to obey*
serv-īō,	-īrĕ	*to be a slave*	*to serve*
impĕr-ō,	-ārĕ	*to give orders*	*to command*
suād-ĕō,	-ērĕ	*to recommend*	*to persuade*
nŏc-ĕō,	-ērĕ	*to be harmful*	*to harm*
ignosc-ō,	-ĕrĕ	*to overlook (an offence)*	*to pardon*
indulg-ĕō,	-ērĕ	*to give way, be kind*	——
parc-ō,	-ĕrĕ	*to be sparing*	*to spare*
crēd-ō,	-ĕrĕ	*to trust, entrust*	*to trust, believe*
fīd-ō,	-ĕrĕ	*to have confidence*	*to trust*
auxĭlĭ-ŏr,	-ārī	*to give help*	*to help*
făv-ĕō,	-ērĕ	*to be favourable*	*to favour*
mĕd-ĕŏr,	-ērī	*to be a cure*	*to heal*

Obs. **Dēlectō**, *I delight;* **iŭbĕō**, *I command ;* **iŭvō**, *I help* or *delight*, **laedō**, *I hurt ;* **sānō**, *I heal*, are transitive verbs, and have a direct object in the accusative.

(1) Aenēās rēgī mĕmŏrăt nōmenquĕ gĕnusquĕ.
Aeneas recounts to the king his name and descent.

bellĭcōsīs fātă Quĭrītĭbŭs dīcō.
I declare to the warlike Quirites their destiny.

(2) ămīcĭtĭam omnĭbŭs rēbŭs hūmānīs antĕpōnō.
I value friendship above all human things.

subvēnistī hŏmĭnī iam perdĭtō.
you have come to the help of a man already lost.

(3) nē dēsint ĕpŭlīs rŏsae.
let not roses be wanting to the feast.

nĭhĭl tĭbĭ littĕrae mĕae prōdĕrunt.
my letter will do you no good.

(4) nōbīs nŏcētŭr. Parthī fŭgae fīdunt.
we are being injured. the Parthians trust to flight.

NOTE 1.—The dative of the indirect object is found with some verbs of *taking away; e.g.*, **Nĭhĭl tĭbĭ dētraxĭt sĕnectūs,** *Old age has borne nothing off from you.* These verbs are **ădĭmō,** *I take away,* and some compounds of **ăb, dē, ex.**

NOTE 2.—A name is often attracted to agree in case with the dative substantive denoting the person to whom the name is given; *e.g.* **Pŭĕrō Ĕgĕrĭō indĭtum nōmĕn,** *The name Egerius was given to the boy.*

§ 350. The dative is used with **adjectives** and **adverbs** implying **likeness** or **nearness,** or any notion similar to that of a verb that is constructed with a dative of the indirect object. (For **sĭmĭlĭs,** see § 569.)

Belgae proxĭmī sunt Germānīs.
the Belgae are nearest to the Germani.
congrŭentĕr nātūrae sapĭentēs vīvunt.
wise men live agreeably to nature.

§ 351. The **dative of advantage or disadvantage** is a development of the dative of the indirect object; it is commonly rendered by "for" or "in honour of."

nōn sōlum nōbīs dīvĭtēs essĕ vŏlŭmŭs, sĕd lībĕrīs.
we wish to be rich not for ourselves only, but for our children.

Ĭūlŭs dūcĭt ăvō turmās.
Iulus leads squadrons in honour of his grandfather.

§ 352. Occasionally the dative expresses the person whose **point of view** the writer assumes.

illĕ clārŭs ĕrĭt postgĕnĭtīs.
he will be renowned in the eyes of posterity.

§ 353. A personal pronoun in the dative is sometimes introduced for dramatic effect, and indicates that the statement is one that concerns the person in question; this is called the **ethic dative.**

ăt illĕ tĭbĭ pergĭt Brundŭsĭum.
but, look you, he is going on to Brundusium.
quĭd mĭhĭ Celsŭs ăgĭt?
pray, how is Celsus?

Obs. 1. The term "ethic" is derived from the Greek ἦθος (ēthŏs), a word used by writers on rhetoric to signify the influence exercised by a speaker's personality.

Obs. 2. It should be noted that this ethic dative is found in Shakespearian English; *e.g.* "He plucked *me* ope his doublet," "Knock *me* on this door."

§ 354. The dative is sometimes used in a **possessive** sense, especially with substantives denoting parts of the body.

sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesărī ăd pĕdēs prōiēcērunt.
they all threw themselves at Caesar's feet weeping.

hōc multīs ĕrăt ĭn ōrĕ.
this was in many people's mouths.

§ 355. The verb sum in the third person with a dative (of advantage) may often be rendered by the English verb *to have*.

sunt nōbīs mītĭă pōmă.
we have mellow apples.

§ 356. The dative is used to express the **agent**, *i.e.* the person by whom an action is performed—

(1) **regularly** with the **gerund, gerundive,** or verbal adjective ending in **-bĭlĭs** (§ 269);

(2) **sometimes** (in both prose and poetry) with the **perfect participle** passive or a tense formed by the verb **sum** with that participle;

(3) **occasionally** in poetry and very rarely in prose with **other tenses** of the passive.

(1) sŭō cuiquĕ iūdĭcĭō est ūtendum (§ 586).
use must be made by each of his own judgment.
hōc făcĭendum ĭmĭtandumquĕ est omnĭbŭs.
this is to be done and imitated by all.
multīs illĕ bŏnīs flēbĭlĭs occĭdĭt.
he died lamented by many good men.

(2) cui nōn sunt audītae Dēmosthĕnĭs vĭgĭlĭae?
by whom have not Demosthenes' nights of work been heard of?

(3) hŏnestă bŏnīs vĭrīs quaeruntŭr.
honourable objects are sought by good men.

Obs. 1. The dative of the agent should not be used in translating English into Latin except with the gerund, gerundive, or verbal adjective ending in **-bĭlĭs**.

Obs. 2. The dative of the agent may be shown to fall under the heading of dative of the indirect object by rendering **Hōc făcĭendum est omnĭbŭs** as *This is for all a thing to be done.*

§ 357. The **place towards which** motion takes place is occasionally in poetry expressed by the dative.

ūnŭs hŏmō iŭvĕnum prīmōs tŏt mīsĕrĭt Orcō?
shall one man have sent so many of the chief of the youths to Orcus?

lābentŭr flūmĭnă pontō.
rivers will glide on to the sea.

Obs. 1. This usage may be brought under the general heading of dative of the indirect object by understanding, for instance, in the above example the exact meaning to be *sent them for Orcus to receive*.

Obs. 2. The prose construction is **ăd** and the accusative.

§ 358. The dative used in close connection with a substantive may indicate the **purpose** to which the latter is put. This is frequently called the dative of the **work contemplated**. Cp. § 430 (ii.).

dĭēs collŏquĭō dictŭs est.
a day for a parley was appointed.

(B.) Predicative Dative.

§ 359. A large number of substantives more or less abstract in meaning (most of them implying verbal action) are used in the dative singular to denote **that which a person or thing serves as or results in.** This dative stands (*a*) as secondary predicate of the subject of the sentence, or (*b*) as primary predicate of the direct object, and is known as the **predicative dative.**

(*a*) haec mĭhĭ sunt cūrae.
these things are an anxiety to me.

maxĭmō mĭhĭ ūsŭī ĕrĭs.
you will be of very great use to me.

(*b*) ĕquĭtātum auxĭlĭō Caesărī Aedŭī mīsĕrant.
the Aedui had sent cavalry as an aid to Caesar.

Obs. 1. A dative of the indirect object nearly always accompanies the predicative dative; hence the name of "**double dative**" is sometimes given to this construction.

Obs. 2. The predicative dative either has no attributive adjective or one denoting quantity (*e.g.* **magnŭs**).

Obs. 3. In usage (*b*) the verb is one of *sending* or *placing*, or else **dărĕ, dūcĕrĕ** (*to consider*), or **hăbērĕ**; in (*a*) the verb is **essĕ**, or a verb of *going*, or the passive of one of the above-mentioned verbs.

V.—THE LOCATIVE CASE.

§ 360. The **locative** case has, except in the words and classes of words enumerated below, become merged in the ablative; accordingly only those usages in which the locative has a form distinct from that of the ablative are here treated.

The locative denotes—

(A.) the **place where** an action is performed;
(B.) the **time when** an action is performed;
(C.) certain forms denoting the **value** at which a person or thing is held have also been regarded as locative by some grammarians, and are here so classed.

(A.) Locative denoting Place Where.

§ 361. **Place where** is expressed by the locative of—

(1) names of towns and small islands belonging to the first or second declension and singular in form (§§ 17, 20); (2) a few names of towns of the third declension singular (§ 37); (3) a few other words, of which the most common are dŏmŭs (*home*), hŭmŭs (*ground*), rūs (*country*), bellum (*war*), mīlĭtĭă (*warfare*), which have locatives dŏmī, hŭmī, rūrī, bellī, mīlĭtĭae, respectively.

Rōmae rūs optās.
at Rome you wish for the country.

Pollex mihĭ Lānŭvĭī praestō fŭĭt.
Pollex was ready for me at Lanuvium.

mīlĭtĭae quam dŏmī respublĭcă mĕlĭŭs admĭnistrātă est.
public affairs were carried on better at the wars than at home.

Note.—Under this heading falls the use of ănĭmī (locative of ănĭmŭs) with verbs and adjectives—*e.g.* ănĭmī pendĕō, *I am irresolute;* aegĕr ănĭmī, *sick at heart.* Also cordī, *dear* (*e.g.* nōbīs cordī ĕs, *you are dear to us*, lit. *at our heart*), is locative of cŏr.

(B.) Locative denoting Time When.

§ 362. In classical Latin only two substantives have distinct locative forms denoting **time when**—viz. lux, *light*, and vespĕr, *evening;* their locatives are lūcī (*in daylight*) and vespĕrī (*in the evening*).

ăd mē hĕrī vespĕrī vēnĭt Caesăr.
Caesar came to me yesterday evening.

Note.—**Hĕrī** and some other adverbs were originally locatives.

(C.) Expressions of Value and Price.

§ 363. The great or small value at which a person or thing is held is expressed by genitive singular neuter forms of certain adjectives, and genitive singular forms of certain substantives :—

tantī (tantŭs, *so great*),	quantī (quantŭs, *as great*)
magnī (magnŭs, *great*),	maxĭmī (maxĭmŭs, *very great*)
	plūrĭmī (plūrĭmŭs, *very much*)
parvī (parvŭs, *small*),	mĭnĭmī (mĭnĭmŭs, *very small*)
floccī (floccŭs, *flock of wool*),	pīlī (pīlŭs, *a hair*)
nīhīlī (nīhīlum, *nothing*),	pensī (pensum, *a weighty matter*)

quantī quisquĕ sē ipsĕ făcĭt, tantī fĭt ăb ămīcīs.
at whatever price each values himself, at this price is he valued by his friends.

parvī sunt fŏrīs armă nīsī est consĭlĭum dŏmī.
arms are of little value abroad, unless there is good counsel at home.

rem publĭcam floccī nōn făcĭs.
you do not care a straw for the commonwealth (lit. *value at a flock of wool*).

Obs. These forms may be explained as genitives of quality. They have also been regarded as locatives indicating *position* in an imaginary scale of values.

§ 364. The following, which are undoubtedly genitive forms, were similarly used to express value :—

plūrĭs (gen. sing. of plūs, neuter substantive, *more*),
mĭnōrĭs (gen. sing. neut. of mĭnŏr, *smaller*).

mĕă mĭhĭ conscĭentĭă plūrĭs est quam omnĭum sermō.
a good conscience is of more value to me than what all say.

NOTE.—Assĭs (genitive of ās, a copper coin) was similarly used.

§ 365. Tantī, quantī, plūrĭs, mĭnōrĭs are also used to denote the price at which a thing is bought or sold.

quantī emptum ?
at what price was it bought ?

Obs. The *ablative* of all other words must be used to denote price (§ 377).

VI.—THE ABLATIVE CASE.

§ 366. The usages of the **ablative** fall into three main divisions :—

(**A.**) **Local,** in which the ablative has absorbed (except in the instances mentioned in §§ 361—365) the functions of the locative.

(**B.**) **Instrumental,** in which the ablative has absorbed the functions of a lost instrumental case.

(**C.**) **Ablative proper,** signifying *separation*, the word "ablative" being formed from the supine base of auferō, *I bear away.*

Obs. The ablative when used with a preposition (§§ 256, 257) may usually be classed without difficulty under one of these headings; *e.g.* the ablative with ĭn, prō, or sŭb is local, with **cum** instrumental, with ăb, dē, ex ablative proper.

(A.) Local Ablative.

§ 367. The usages of the ablative which fall under the heading of "local" denote (1) the **place where** an action is performed, (2) the **time when** an action is performed.

§ 368. In prose **place where** is expressed by the ablative without a preposition only in the case of—

(*a*) names of towns or small islands belonging to the third declension or (if plural in form) to the first or second declension; (*b*) substantives accompanied by mĕdĭŭs, *middle*, or tōtŭs, *whole*, as an attribute;

(*c*) terrā, mărī (used in connection), *by land, by sea;*
dextrā, *on the right;* laevā, *on the left;*
lŏcō (usually with an attribute), lŏcīs (always with an attribute), from lŏcŭs, *place;*
partĕ, partĭbŭs (always with an attribute), from pars, *part;*
rĕgĭōnĕ (with attribute or genitive), from rĕgĭō, *direction.*

(*a*) hīc Tībŭrĕ nātŭs est, illĕ Găbĭīs.
one was born at Tibur, the other at Gabii.
Ăthēnīs Crătippum audīēbam.
at Athens I used to hear Cratippus' lectures.

Obs. 1. There are no names of towns or other place-names belonging to the fourth or fifth declension.

(*b*) carcĕr mĕdĭā **urbĕ** aedĭfĭcātŭr.
a prison is being built in the middle of the city.

tōtīs **castrīs** undĭquĕ ăd consŭlēs currĭtŭr.
throughout the camp there is a rush from all quarters to the consuls.

(*c*) ōrātĭō pŭĕrīlĭs est multīs **lŏcīs.**
the speech is in many passages puerile.

utrāquĕ **partĕ** Tĭbĕrĭs pŏpŭlātōrēs oppressĭt.
on each side of the Tiber he surprised plunderers.

Obs. 2. A preposition *may* be used with the words lŏcō, etc.

NOTE.—If a substantive (*e.g.* **urbs**, *city*; **oppĭdum**, *town*) stands in apposition to the name of a town expressing *place where* either by the locative or by the ablative, the preposition **ĭn** is used with the ablative of that substantive; *e.g.* **Albae constĭtĕrant ĭn urbĕ opportūnā**, *They had stopped at Alba, a convenient city.*

§ 369. In prose **place where** is expressed by the ablative with a preposition, except in accordance with the preceding rule, or where the locative may be used; but poets freely employ the local ablative without a preposition.

ĭn ĕā cīvĭtātĕ dŭŏ dē princĭpātū intĕr sē contendēbant.
in that state two were contending for the sovereignty.

Caesăr **ĭn Gallĭā** hībernā constĭtŭĭt.
Caesar fixed his winter quarters in Gaul.

sōlă **dŏmō** maerĕt văcŭā.—Vergil.
she mourns alone in the empty house.

§ 370. The ablative is used to limit the application of a substantive, adjective, or verb. This usage is called the **ablative of respect**, and falls under the general heading of "local" ablative.

nōn tōtā **rē** sĕd **tempŏrĭbŭs** errastī.
you have made a mistake not as to the whole matter but as to dates.

hī omnēs **linguā institūtīs lēgĭbŭs** intĕr sē differunt.
these all differ in language, customs, and laws.

Obs. This use of the ablative is very common in dependence on words expressing *plenty* or *want*; *e.g.* **Nōn ĕgĕō mĕdĭcīnā**, *I do not require a remedy.*

§ 371. The **time when** an action is performed is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Ărăbēs campōs hĭĕmĕ ĕt aestātĕ pĕragrant.
the Arabs wander about the country in winter and in summer.

hōrā dĭēī dĕcĭmā Rōmam pervēnī.
I reached Rome at the tenth hour of the day.

§ 372. The **time within which** an action is performed is also expressed by the ablative.

Ăgămemnōn vix dĕcem annīs urbem ūnam cēpĭt.
in ten years Agamemnon barely took one city.

NOTE.—The preposition **ĭn** is used with the ablative when a distributive or adverbial numeral forms part of the expression ; *e.g* **Indĕ vix tĕr ĭn annō nuntĭum audīmŭs,** *We receive news thence barely three times a year.*

(B.) INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

§ 373. In the usages which fall under this heading the ablative expresses, as did the lost instrumental case, either the **instrument** or some **accompaniment** of an action, in both of which characters it answers to the English preposition " with."

§ 374. The **ablative of the instrument** denotes the thing by means of which an action is performed, and is found with active and passive verbs alike.

mĕā ŏpĕrā Tărentum rĕcēpistī.
by my help you recovered Tarentum.

nōn vīrĭbŭs aut vēlōcĭtātĕ rēs magnae gĕruntŭr.
great things are not achieved by strength or swiftness.

§ 375. The **ablative of the agent**—*i.e.* of the **person** by whom an action is performed—cannot stand without the preposition **ā, ăb,** and is found with passive verbs only.

Sŏphŏclēs ā fīlĭīs ĭn iūdĭcĭum vŏcātŭs est.
Sophocles was prosecuted by his sons.

Obs. 1. The ablative of the agent is placed here in order that it may be contrasted with ablative of the instrument ; strictly speaking it falls under the heading of "ablative proper," the agent being regarded as the *source* of action.

Obs. 2. For the dative of the agent, see § 356.

§ 376. The instrumental ablative expresses the **road** by which a journey is performed.

Ībam fortĕ vĭā sacrā.
I was walking by chance along the sacred way.

§ 377. The **price** for which a thing is bought or sold is put in the ablative case, the price being regarded as the instrument of purchase.

sāl impensō prĕtĭō vēnībăt.
salt was being sold at a high price.

NOTE 1.—The genitive forms **tantī, quantī, plūrĭs, mĭnōrĭs,** are used instead of the ablative to express price; *e.g.* "**Quantī emptum?**" "**Parvō.**" "**Quantī ergō?**" "**Octussĭbŭs.**" "*At what price was it bought?*" "*At a low price.*" "*At what price, now?*" "*For eight asses.*"

Obs. The ablatives **magnō, permagnō, plūrĭmō, parvō, mĭnĭmō** are used without a substantive as ablatives of price.

NOTE 2.—With the verb **aestĭmō**, *I value*, the ablative singular neuter of **tantŭs, quantŭs, magnŭs, parvŭs,** etc., may be used instead of the genitive form (§ 363); *e.g.* **Virtūtem magnō aestĭmō**, *I value virtue greatly.*

§ 378. The **ablative of measure** indicates by how much one thing differs from another.

Caesăr lĕgĭōnem passĭbŭs cc ăb ĕō tŭmŭlō constĭtŭĭt.
Caesar halted the legion 200 *paces from that mound.*

proelĭum ĕquestrĕ paucīs antĕ dĭēbŭs ĕrăt factum.
a cavalry engagement had taken place a few days before.

Obs. Distinguish this ablative of measure in expressions such as **dĕcem annīs antĕ** or **post** (*ten years before* or *after*, lit. *before* or *after by ten years*) from the ablative of time in **dĕcĭmō annō antĕ** or **post** (*in the tenth year before* or *after*).

§ 379. An ablative, apparently local but really instrumental, is found with the verbs **tĕnĕō** or **contĭnĕō**, *I hold;* **rĕcĭpĭō**, *I withdraw;* **abdō**, *I conceal.*

Ariovistŭs castrīs sē tĕnēbăt.
Ariovistus was keeping within his camp.

§ 380. The **ablative of cause** is an extended use of the instrumental ablative.

vīrēs ĕum lassĭtūdĭnĕ dēfēcērunt.
his strength failed him owing to fatigue.

§ 381. Various accompaniments of an action are expressed by the ablative, the largest class being those denoted by the **ablative of manner**. A substantive used in the ablative to express manner must be accompanied by (1) the preposition **cum**, or (2) an adjective, except (3) in the case of a few words, of which the most important are:—

mŏdō, dŏlō, sīlentĭō, clāmōrĕ,
vī, rătĭōnĕ, fraudĕ, artĕ, mōrĕ,
iniūrĭā, consensū, cāsū, iūrĕ.

(1) nōs illŭd ĭdem **cum pācĕ** ăgēmŭs.
we will do that same thing peacefully.

summā **cum cĕlĕrĭtātĕ** ăd exercĭtum rĕdiīt.
he returned to the army with the greatest speed.

(2) **incrēdĭbĭlī cĕlĕrĭtātĕ** dē victōrĭā Caesărĭs fāmă perfertŭr.
with incredible swiftness the news is brought of Caesar's victory.

(3) aut vī aut **fraudĕ** fĭt iniūrĭă.
wrong is done by force or fraud.

Obs. From the above rule it may be seen that manner may be expressed in four ways; *e.g.* the sentence *I came with speed* may be rendered (1) **cĕlĕrĭtĕr vēnī**, (2) **cum cĕlĕrĭtātĕ vēnī**, (3) **summā cum cĕlĕrĭtātĕ vēnī**, (4) **summā cĕlĕrĭtātĕ vēnī**; but **cĕlĕrĭtātĕ** must not be used to denote manner without **cum** or an attribute.

§ 382. The **ablative of description** is always accompanied by an attribute, and usually expresses some temporary or external characteristic, less often a mental quality.

Brĭtannī **cāpillō** sunt **prōmissō**.
the Britons are long-haired.

Cătĭlīnă fŭĭt **magnā** vī ĕt ănĭmī ĕt corpŏrĭs, sĕd **ingĕnĭō mălō prāvōquĕ**.
Catilina was a man of great mental and bodily power, but of an evil and corrupt disposition.

Obs. 1. This usage may be regarded as a development of the ablative of manner.

Obs. 2. Contrast the genitive of quality (§ 394).

§ 383. With a substantive in the ablative (*a*) a participle, (*b*) an adjective, or (*c*) another substantive may stand predicatively. This construction is known as the ablative of attendant circumstances or ablative absolute.

(*a*) Caesăr, expŏsĭtō exercĭtū ĕt lŏcō castrīs ĭdōnĕō captō, ăd hostēs contendĭt.

the troops having been landed and a fit position for the camp secured, Caesar hastens against the enemy.

Obs. 1. In the above example there are two instances of the ablative of attendant circumstances: the first consists of **expŏsĭtō** used predicatively with **exercĭtū**, the second of **captō** similarly used with **lŏcō**. The predicative character of **captō** here may be seen by comparing it with **ĭdōnĕō**, which stands as attribute to **lŏcō**—**lŏcō ĭdōnĕō** is *a fit place*, but **lŏcō captō** is *a place having been taken*, not *a taken place*.

(*b*) exĭgŭā partĕ aestātīs rĕlĭquā Caesăr ĭn Brĭtannĭam prŏfĭcīscī contendĭt.

a small part of the summer being left, Caesar hastens to set out for Britain.

(*c*) illĕ Caepĭōnĕ ĕt Phĭlippō ĭtĕrum consŭlĭbŭs mortŭŭs est.

he died when Caepio and Philippus were consuls for the second time.

Obs. 2. The name of **ablative absolute** was given by the old grammarians to the ablative of attendant circumstances, because they regarded it as standing free (**absŏlūtŭs**) from the rest of the sentence; it is probably an instrumental ablative.

(C.) The Ablative Proper.

§ 384. The **place from which** motion takes place is expressed by the ablative without a preposition if it is denoted by the name of a town or small island, or by **dŏmō**, *from home*; **hŭmō**, *from the ground*; **rūrĕ**, *from the country*.

Pompēiŭs Lūcĕrĭā prŏfĭcīscĭtŭr Cănŭsĭum.

Pompeius sets out from Luceria for Canusium.

multī dŏmō exīrĕ nōlēbant.

many were unwilling to leave home.

Obs. 1. With any other words a preposition must be used; *e.g.* Dūcĭtĕ ăb urbĕ dŏmum, mĕă carmĭnă, dūcĭtĕ Daphnim, *Draw Daphnis, my songs, draw Daphnis home from the city.*

Obs. 2. The above rule (§ 384) applies only to expressions implying motion. A preposition is required to express distance; *e.g.* Tum Brūtŭs ăb Rōmā ăbĕrăt, *At that time Brutus was away from Rome.*

NOTE 1.—If a substantive (*e.g.* **urbs**, *city*; **oppĭdum**, *town*) stands in apposition to the name of the town from which motion takes place, a preposition is used with that substantive; *e.g.* **Vercingĕtŏrix expellĭtŭr ex oppĭdō Gergŏvĭā**, *Vercingetorix is driven out of the town of Gergovia.* (Cp. § 331, NOTE 1.)

NOTE 2.—The place from which motion takes place is occasionally expressed in poetry by means of the ablative without a preposition, even when the substantive is not the name of a town, etc.; *e.g.* **Frātrēs Lȳcĭā missōs occīdĭt**, *He slays the brothers sent from Lycia.*

§ 385. An **ablative of separation** without a preposition is used in dependence on words compounded with one of the prepositions **ăb, dē, ex,** or the verbs **cēdō**, *I withdraw*; **mŏvĕō**, *I set in motion*, and a few others.

Caesăr omnēs cōpĭās castrīs ēdūcĭt.
Caesar leads all his forces out from the camp.

Obs. 1. Even with the above verbs a preposition is commonly used; *e.g.* **Helvētiī ē fīnĭbŭs sŭīs exĕunt**, *The Helvetii leave their territories.*

Obs. 2. For the dative with verbs of *taking away*, see § 349, NOTE 1.

NOTE.—So, too, **lībĕr cūrā**, *free from anxiety*; **văcŭŭs ignī**, *devoid of fire*, etc.

§ 386. A substantive denoting a person or family may be used in the ablative to express **origin**.

nātē dĕā, pŏtĕs hōc sŭb cāsū dūcĕrĕ somnōs?
Goddess-born, canst thou at this emergency prolong slumber?

§ 387. The ablative is used to express the **standard of comparison**, *i.e.* that from which the subject or object of the sentence diverges in respect of the quality denoted by a comparative adjective or adverb.

nĭhĭl est ōtĭōsā sĕnectūtĕ iūcundĭŭs.
nothing is more pleasant than a calm old age.

sōl multīs partĭbŭs est terrā māiŏr.
the sun is many times greater than the earth.

Obs. 1. In this example the sun is measured by its divergence from the "standard of comparison"—*viz.* the earth. **Multīs partĭbŭs** is ablative of measure (§ 378).

Obs. 2. **Quam**, *than*, may always be used instead of the ablative of the "standard of comparison." See § 593.

VII.—THE GENITIVE CASE.

§ 388. The cases hitherto treated stand, in the great majority of their usages, in direct relation to the verb; the genitive, on the other hand, serves primarily to indicate the relation of one substantive to another—a relation which in English is for the most part expressed by the preposition *of*. The employment of the genitive with verbs and adjectives is of secondary importance.

§ 389. The usages of the genitive, which are very various, may be conveniently arranged as follows:—

(A.) **Attributive** genitive, the substantive in the genitive standing in the relation of **attribute to another substantive.**

(B.) **Predicative** genitive, the substantive in the genitive forming a predicate (usually with the verb **sum**).

(C.) **Objective** genitive, the substantive in the genitive being the object of action expressed by an intransitive verb or implied in a substantive or adjective.

(A.) The Attributive Genitive.

§ 390. The following usages of the genitive are included under the heading "attributive":—

(i) Genitive of the **possessor** or **author** (§ 391).
(ii) **Subjective** genitive (§ 392).
(iii) Genitive of **material** (§ 393).
(iv) Genitive of **quality** (§ 394).
(v) **Partitive** genitive, or genitive of the **divided whole** (§ 395).

§ 391. The genitive denoting the **possessor** or **author** corresponds to the English possessive case.

nōn Dĭŏmēdĭs ĕquōs, nĕc currum cernĭs Ăchillĭs.
thou seest not Diomedes' horses, nor Achilles' chariot.

pĕrūtĭlēs Xĕnŏphontĭs librī sunt.
Xenophon's books are very useful.

Note.—The substantive on which the genitive depends is sometimes omitted if easily understood; *e.g.* **Ventum ĕrăt ăd Vestae,** *We had come to Vesta's temple.* (Compare the English usage "St. Paul's.")

§ 392. The **subjective** genitive denotes the subject of the verbal action implied in the substantive on which it is dependent.

hostēs Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant.
the enemy were awaiting the arrival of the Romans.

sententiīs iūdĭcum est lĭbĕrātŭs.
he was discharged by the verdict of the jury.

Obs. The "subjective" character of the genitive in the former example may be seen by using in place of adventum the corresponding verbal construction, "The enemy were waiting until the Romans arrived"; here "Romans" is clearly subject to "arrived."

NOTE.—The corresponding possessive adjective is used instead of the subjective genitive of a personal pronoun; *e.g.* **Caesăr sŭă sĕnātusquĕ ĭn ĕum bĕnĕfĭcĭă commĕmŏrāvĭt,** *Caesar recounted his own and the senate's kindnesses towards him.*

§ 393. The **genitive of material** expresses that of which or in which a thing consists.

formīcae pŏpŭlant ingentem farrĭs ăcervum.
the ants are plundering a huge heap of spelt.

rērum cōpĭă verbōrum cōpĭam gignĭt.
abundance of matter produces abundance of words.

§ 394. The **genitive of quality** expresses some inherent or leading characteristic which serves to classify the substantive on which it is dependent, and therein differs from the ablative of description (§ 382), which for the most part denotes a temporary or external characteristic. This genitive (like the ablative of description) is always accompanied by an attribute.

Tĭtŭs Manlĭŭs vĭr ĕrăt priscae sĕvērĭtātĭs.
Titus Manlius was a man of old-fashioned sternness.

magnī pondĕrĭs saxă ĭn mūrō collŏcārant.
they had placed in the wall stones of great weight.

Caesăr dĭērum ĭtĕr quadrāgintā prōcessĭt.
Caesar advanced forty days' march.

§ 395. The partitive genitive (better called the genitive of the divided whole) expresses the *whole*, of which that denoted by the substantive on which it depends forms a part.

mĭnŭs hăbĕō vīrĭum quam vestrum ŭtervīs.
I have less strength than either of you.

Obs. The forms nostrum, vestrum are used as partitive genitives; nostrī, vestrī as objective genitives (§ 397).

NOTE 1.—The genitive singular neuter of an adjective of the first class (§ 80) may be used substantivally as a partitive genitive with ălĭquĭd, multum, nĭhĭl, etc. (nom. or acc.); *e.g.* nĭhĭl nŏvī, *nothing new.*

NOTE 2.—In poetry the partitive genitive sometimes depends on a neuter adjective used substantivally in the plural; *e.g.* cunctă terrārum, *all lands.*

NOTE 3.—The partitive genitive is found with some adverbs of place; *e.g.* ŭbī terrārum? *where in the world?*

(B.) THE PREDICATIVE GENITIVE.

§ 396. A genitive (*a*) of the possessor or author or (*b*) of quality may be used as a secondary predicate, and is then termed a predicative genitive.

(*a*) omnĭă quae mŭlĭĕrĭs fŭērunt vĭrī fĭunt.
all that was the woman's becomes the husband's.
tĕmĕrĭtās est flōrentĭs aetātĭs, prūdentĭă sĕnescentĭs.
rashness belongs to the prime of life, discretion to its close.

(*b*) tŭae littĕrae maxĭmī sunt ăpŭd mē ponderĭs.
your letter is of great weight with me.

Obs. When the subject in usage (*a*) is an infinitive (*e.g.* Hŏmĭnĭs est errārĕ), the usual translation is *It is the characteristic* (or *function* or *duty*) *of* . . .

(C.) THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

§ 397. The genitive is used with certain classes of verbs to express the matter with regard to which the action takes place. These verbs are enumerated in the following rhyme:—

mĭsĕrĕŏr, such verbs as mean *remind,*
Forget, and some impersonals * we find
With genitives constructed; class with them
Fill, lack, abound, accuse, acquit, condemn.

* mē hūiŭs taedĕt, mĭsĕrĕt,
vĕl pĭgĕt, pŭdĕt, paenĭtĕt.

That is to say, the genitive expresses the matter with regard to which a person—

(*a*) *feels pity* (**mĭsĕrĕŏr**, *I feel pity*), or some emotion expressed by one of the impersonal verbs **mĭsĕrĕt, paenĭtĕt, pĭgĕt, pŭdĕt, taedĕt** (§ 232);

(*b*) *reminds* another or *is reminded*, or *forgets*;

(*c*) *lacks* or *abounds*, or *makes to abound* (i.e. *fills*);

(*d*) brings upon another or suffers *accusation*, *acquittal*, or *condemnation*.

(*a*) **nātīquĕ pătrisquĕ mĭsĕrērĕ.**
take pity on father and on son.

mē cīvĭtātĭs mōrum pĭgĕt taedetquĕ.
I am disgusted and wearied with the morals of the state.

Obs. 1. When an impersonal verb is used, the person who feels pity, etc., is expressed by an accusative.

Obs. 2. There are in addition to **mĭsĕrĕŏr** three verbs meaning *to pity*—*viz.* **mĭsĕrescō** (used in poetry only), which is constructed with a genitive, and **mĭsĕrŏr, commĭsĕrŏr,** both transitive verbs of the first conjugation, regularly constructed with a direct object in the accusative.

(*b*) **adversae dĕindĕ rēs admŏnŭērunt rĕlĭgĭōnum.**
misfortunes subsequently put us in mind of religious duties.

vĕtĕrĭs contŭmēlĭae oblīviscī vŏlō.
I am willing to forget an old insult.

Obs. 3. Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* are often constructed with the accusative when the subject is an eye-witness; *e.g.* **Cinnam mĕmĭnī,** *I remember Cinna.* (**Rĕcordŏr** nearly always governs the accusative.)

(*c*) **ĕgĕt aerĭs Cappădŏcum rex.**
the king of the Cappadocians is in want of money.

hīc errŏr formīdĭnĭs Samnītēs implēvīt.
this mistake filled the Samnites with alarm.

Obs. 4. The ablative is also used in this connection (see § 370, *Obs.*).

(*d*) **mē tĭmōrĭs argŭunt.**
they accuse me of fear.

accūsātōrēs ĕrant ipsī ambĭtūs condemnātī.
the accusers had themselves been convicted of bribery.

Obs. 5. Note the phrase **căpĭtĭs damnārĕ**, *to condemn on a capital charge*, and also some (*e.g.* **damnātŭs longī lăbōrĭs**, *condemned to protracted toil*) in which the genitive is used to denote the *penalty* instead of the *charge*.

§ **398.** Substantives and adjectives corresponding to verbs included in the preceding section are constructed with an objective genitive, as may be seen from the following examples :—

Cătīlīnă mĕmŏr fŭĭt priscae dignĭtātĭs sŭae.
Catilina was mindful of his former rank.

Gallĭă est plēnă cīvĭum Rōmānōrum.
Gaul is full of Roman citizens.

multīs immĭnĕt damnātĭō ambĭtūs.
conviction for bribery hangs over the head of many.

§ **399.** Many other substantives and adjectives implying verbal action may be constructed with an objective genitive ; such are—

ămŏr, *love*	ăvĭdŭs, *greedy*
cūră, *care*	ĕdax, *devouring*
fŭgă, *flight*	pătĭens, *enduring*
ŏdĭum, *hatred*	pĕrītŭs, *skilled*

vincĕt ămŏr pătrĭae laudumquĕ immensă cŭpīdō.
love of fatherland and boundless desire for praise will prevail.

hostēs lŏcōrum scĭentēs ĕrant.
the enemy were acquainted with the locality.

Obs. 1. The objective character of the genitive in the former example may be seen by using in place of ămŏr and cŭpīdō respectively the corresponding verbal constructions ămō pătrĭam and cŭpĭō laudēs, in which pătrĭam and laudēs are direct objects of the verb (cp. § 392).

The term "objective genitive" is commonly restricted to the usages mentioned in this section and the preceding one.

Obs. 2. Note the difference between **pătĭens lăbōrĭs**, *capable of enduring toil*, and **pătĭens lăbōrem**, (*actually*) *enduring toil* ; in the former **pătĭens** is used adjectivally, in the latter as a participle governing the same case as its finite verb.

OTHER USAGES.

§ 400. Poets and later prose writers employ the genitive to express **that in respect of which** an **adjective is applicable** to its substantive.

ō sērī stŭdĭōrum!
O ye late learned!
hōc Hĕlўmŭs făcĭt, hōc aevī mātūrŭs Ăcestēs.
this Helymus does, and Acestes ripe in age.

§ 401. In many instances—among them the following—the genitive is probably due to a conscious imitation of **Greek usages**:—

iustĭtĭaenĕ prĭŭs mīrĕr bellīnĕ lăbōrum?
am I to wonder first at your justice or your toils in war?
dēsĭnĕ mollĭum tandem quĕrēlārum.
cease at length from unmanly regrets.
Daunŭs ăgrestĭum regnāvĭt pŏpŭlōrum.
Daunus reigned over country tribes.

Obs. For the genitives of value and price (**plūrĭs**, etc.), see §§ 364-5.

VIII.—THE PLURAL NUMBER.

§ 402. Poets frequently use the plural of concrete substantives where the sense requires the singular. This is done to add dignity to the expression or to suit the metre.

mīrātŭr clĭpĕum Vulcānī, dōnă părentĭs.
he admires the shield of Vulcan, his mother's gift.

NOTE.—The **first person plural** is sometimes used, out of modesty real or assumed, for the first person singular; *e.g.* **saepĕ sōlī sŭmŭs**, *I am often alone.*

Obs. For Latin plural substantives rendered by the singular in English, see §§ 58, 59.

§ 403. An **abstract substantive** may be used in the plural where it (*a*) has a genitive plural dependent on it, or (*b*) denotes actions or states involving the quality which the abstract substantive expresses.

(*a*) **Lўsandĕr prōcērĭtātēs arbŏrum admīrātŭs est.**
Lysander admired the height of the trees.

(*b*) **vērae ămīcĭtĭae sempĭternae sunt.**
true friendships are everlasting.

§ 404. Pronominal adjectives which in the singular refer to two persons or things are in the plural used of two classes or groups; *e.g.* **Neutĕr altĕrum cernēbăt**, *Neither perceived the other*; **Neutrī altĕrōs cernēbant**, *Neither party perceived the other.*

§ 405. SUMMARY OF THE CHIEF CASE-USAGES.

ACCUSATIVE (§§ 325—346).

EXTERNAL.

§ 326. Object of Transitive Verb :	**dīvĭtĭās despĭcĭō.**
§ 330. Object of Factitive Verb :	**tē făcĭmŭs dĕam.**
§ 333. Goal of Verb of Motion—with preposition :	**ĭn Gallĭam contendō.**
§§ 331-2. Goal of Verb of Motion—without preposition (only town, small island, **dŏmŭs, rūs,** or supine) :	**Rōmam contendō ; dormītum ībō**

INTERNAL.

§ 335. Cognate Object of Intransitive Verb :	**longam īrĕ vĭam.**
§ 336. Object of Verb (of *asking* or *teaching*) with External Object :	**ōtĭum dīvōs rŏgō.**
§ 339. Extent of Action :	**ĕgŏ illŭd tĭbĭ assentĭŏr.**
§ 340. Part Affected (poetic) :	**ĕquŭs trĕmĭt artūs.**
§ 341. Adverbial (n. adj., poetic) :	**ăcerbă tŭĕrĭs,** *you look sour.*
§ 343. Extent of Space :	**Caesăr millĕ passūs prōcessĭt.**
§ 344. Extent of Time :	**Caesăr quinquĕ dĭēs commŏrātŭs est.**

DATIVE (§§ 347—359).

INDIRECT OBJECT.

§ 348. Indirect Object Proper (with Verbs) :	**virtūtī ŏpĕram dătō ; captīvīs parcam ; captīvīs parcētŭr.**
§ 350. With Adjectives and Adverbs :	**grātŭs ĕram tĭbĭ.**
§ 351. Advantage or Disadvantage :	**dūcĭt ăvō turmās.**
§ 353. Ethic :	**quĭd mĭhĭ Celsŭs ăgĭt ?**
§ 354. Possessive :	**hōc multīs ĕrăt ĭn ōrĕ.**
§ 355. With **sum** (= *to have*) :	**sunt nōbīs mītĭă pōmă.**
§ 356. Agent—with gerund, gerundive, or adj. in **-bĭlĭs** (normal) :	**haec Caesărī ĕrant ăgendă**
Agent—with perf., pluperf., or fut. perf. (occasional) :	**cui haec nōn sunt audītă ?**
Agent—with pres., imperf., or fut. (poetic and rare) :	**nōn cernĭtŭr ullī.**
§ 358. Purpose :	**dĭēs collŏquĭō dictŭs est.**

PREDICATIVE.

§ 359. Predicate of the Subject (with dative of indirect object) :	**haec mĭhĭ sunt cūrae.**
Predicate of the Object (with dative of indirect object) :	**ĕquĭtātum auxĭlĭō Caesărī mittunt.**

LOCATIVE (§§ 360—365).

PLACE WHERE.

§ 361. Town or small island, 1st or 2nd decl. sing. :	**Rōmae, Cŏrinthī, Tărentī hăbĭtābam.**
The words **dŏmī, hŭmī, rūrī, bellī, mīlĭtĭae, ănĭmī.**	

TIME WHEN. § 362. **Lūcī, vespĕrī.**

GEN. or LOC.

VALUE. § 363. **Tantī, quantī, magnī,** etc. :	**virtūs magnī hăbĕātŭr.**
PRICE. § 365. **Tantī, quantī :**	**quantī emptum ?**

ABLATIVE (§§ 366—387).

LOCAL.

§ 369. Place where—with preposition:	**Caesăr ĭn Gallĭā ĕrăt.**
§ 368. „ „ without „	in prose only in case of—
(*a*) town or small island, 1st or 2nd declension plural or 3rd declension:	**Āthēnīs, Thūrĭīs, Tībŭrĕ, Gādĭbŭs hăbĭtābam.**
(*b*) substantives with **mĕdĭŭs** or **tōtŭs**:	**carcĕr mĕdĭā urbĕ aedĭfĭcātŭr.**
(*c*) **terrā mărīquĕ, dextrā, laevā, lŏcō, partĕ, rĕgĭōnĕ.**	
§ 370. Respect:	**tōtā rē errastī.**
§ 371. Time when:	**hōrā dĕcĭmā pervēnī.**
§ 372. „ within which:	**Āgămemnōn vix dĕcem annīs urbem ūnam cēpĭt.**

INSTRUMENTAL.

§ 374. Instrument:	**Gallĭă Ōcĕănō contĭnētŭr.**
§ 376. Road:	**ībam vĭā sācrā.**
§ 377. Price:	**parvō emptum.**
§ 378. Measure or Amount of Difference:	**proelĭum paucīs antĕ dĭēbŭs ĕrăt factum.**
§ 380. Cause:	**fāmĕ ĕt sĭtī mŏrĭŏr.**
§ 381. Manner—with preposition:	**cum cĕlĕrĭtātĕ vēnī.**
„ with attribute:	**summā cĕlĕrĭtātĕ vēnī.**
„ without preposition or attribute:	certain words only.
§ 382. Description (with attribute):	**Brĭtannī căpillō sunt prōmissō.**
§ 383. Attendant Circumstances:	**Caesăr expŏsĭtō exercĭtū ăd hostēs contendĭt.**

ABLATIVE PROPER.

§ 384. Place whence motion takes place:	
with preposition:	**ăb urbĕ rĕdĭī.**
without „ (only town, small island, or **dŏmō, hŭmō, rūrĕ**):	**Rōmā rĕdĭī; dŏmō prŏfĭcĭscăr.**
§ 385. Separation:	**Caesăr cōpĭās castrīs ēdūcĭt.**
§ 386. Origin:	**Aenēās nātŭs est dĕā.**
§ 375. Agent (the source of action)—with preposition:	**Clўtaemnestră ā fīlĭō occīsă est.**
§ 387. Standard of Comparison:	**sōl est terrā māiŏr.**

GENITIVE (§§ 388—401).

ATTRIBUTIVE.

§ 391. Possessor or Author:	**Dĭŏmēdĭs ĕquōs cernō.**
§ 392. Subjective:	**Rōmānōrum adventum exspectō.**
§ 393. Material:	**formĭcae pŏpŭlant farrĭs ăcervum.**
§ 394. Quality (with attribute):	**magnī pondĕrĭs saxă collŏcō.**
§ 395. Partitive or Divided Whole:	**hōrum fortissĭmī sunt Belgae.**

PREDICATIVE. **§ 396.** Possessor: **hŏmĭnĭs est errārĕ.**
Quality: **tŭae littĕrae maxĭmī sunt pondĕrĭs.**

OBJECTIVE. **§ 397.** With verbs: **mē tĭmōrĭs argŭunt.**
§§ 398, 399. „ adjectives: **Gallĭă est plēnă cīvĭum.**
§§ 398, 399. „ substantives: **vincĕt ămŏr pătrĭae.**

CHAPTER XXXIX.—VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

§ **406.** The chief usages of the verbal substantives and adjectives included in the tables of conjugations (see §§ 125—129) are here treated in the following order :—

Substantives
- The **infinitive** (active and passive) and its tenses (§§ 408—420).
- The **supine** (§§ 421—422).
- The **gerund** (§§ 423—429).

Adjectives
- The **gerundive** (§§ 430—432).
- The **present participle** active (§§ 433—437).
- The **future participle** active (§§ 438—439).
- The **perfect participle** passive and deponent (§§ 440—446).

§ **407.** These forms each have one or more of the following verbal characteristics: (*a*) voice, (*b*) tense, (*c*) construction with an object, (*d*) in the case of the verbal substantives, qualification by adverbs, not by adjectives. On the other hand they are, with the exception of the infinitive, declined as substantives or adjectives.

The Infinitive.

§ **408.** The infinitive is an indeclinable neuter substantive, and stands to the finite verb of the sentence in the relation of **subject, predicate,** or **object**; but, inasmuch as it implies verbal action, it may have a subject of its own, and also an object (direct or indirect) in the same case as the object of the finite verb from which it is formed.

Obs. The subject of the infinitive is in the nominative case when the infinitive is used either as primary predicate (historic infinitive, § 415) or as secondary predicate (§ 409, *b*). Except in these two usages the **subject of the infinitive** is in the **accusative** case. (See § 411, *Obs.*)

§ **409.** The infinitive used as a nominative may serve as (*a*) **subject** of a finite verb, (*b*) **secondary predicate** (§ 307).

(*a*) dulcĕ ĕt dĕcōrum est prō pătrĭā mŏrī.
to die for one's country is sweet and befitting.

haec ōlim mĕmĭnissĕ iŭvābĭt.
to remember these things will some day afford delight.

(*b*) **lectĭtāvissĕ Plātōnem Dēmosthĕnēs dīcĭtŭr.**
Demosthenes is said to have been in the habit of reading Plato.

dī bĕātī essĕ intellĕguntŭr.
it is understood that the gods are happy (lit. *the gods are understood to be happy*).

Obs. 1. When the finite verb is one expressing *opinion*, the personal construction is used in preference to the impersonal; so too with **vĭdĕŏr**, *I seem*; **iŭbĕŏr**, *I am commanded*; **vĕtŏr**, *I am forbidden*.

Obs. 2. Verbs which in their finite forms have a secondary predicate in the same case as the subject (§ 323) are similarly constructed in the infinitive; *e.g.* in the second example in (*b*) above **bĕātī** is nominative to agree with **dī**, and in the third example in § 411 **perfectă** is accusative to agree with **haec**.

The rule holds even when the subject of the infinitive is not expressed; *e.g.* **Magnīs ĭn laudĭbŭs fŭĭt victōrem Ŏlympĭae cĭtārī**, *To be proclaimed victor at Olympia was a great distinction.*

NOTE.—When **essĕ** stands as a subject of the sentence, the predicative adjective accompanying it is usually attracted into agreement with the substantive to which it refers; *e.g.* **Lĭcŭĭt Thĕmistŏclī essĕ ōtĭōsō**, *To be at leisure was lawful to Themistocles.* But also: **Cūr hīs essĕ lībĕrōs nōn lĭcĕt?** *Why may not these be free?* (See *Obs.* 2.)

§ **410.** The infinitive used as an accusative serves as the **object of a verb**.

Caesăr mātūrăt ăb urbĕ prŏfĭcīscī.
Caesar hastens his departure from the city.

numquam dignē sătĭs laudārī phĭlŏsŏphĭă pŏtĕrĭt.
philosophy can never be really worthily praised.

fīlĭum ĕquĭtārĕ dŏcŭī.
I taught my son riding.

Obs. 1. In the first example the infinitive is the external object of a transitive verb; in the second it is the internal object of an intransitive verb; and in the third it is the internal object of **dŏcŭī** (cp. § 336).

Obs. 2. With the passive of **dŏcĕō**, **iŭbĕō**, or **vĕtō** the infinitive is retained (cp. the retained accusative, § 337); *e.g.* **Pŭĕr doctŭs est săgittās tendĕrĕ**, *The boy has been taught to aim arrows.*

§ 411. The infinitive and its own subject (in the accusative case) together stand as the direct object of a verb of **saying**, or one expressing some mental process, such as **perceiving, thinking, rejoicing, wishing**, or the verbs **iŭbĕō, vĕtō**. This is known as the **accusative and infinitive** construction.

vōs **săpĕrĕ** ĕt sōlōs āiō bĕnĕ **vīvĕrĕ**.
I declare that you have good sense and alone live aright.

nĭhĭl **essĕ** pĕrīcŭlī sensĭmŭs.
we perceived that there was no danger.

haec perfectă **essĕ** gaudĕō.
I am glad that these things are finished.

vim vŏlŭmŭs **exstinguī**.
we want violence to be stamped out.

lex pĕrĕgrīnum vĕtăt ĭn mūrum **ascendĕrĕ**.
the law forbids a foreigner to go up on to the wall.

Obs. The use of the accusative as the subject of an infinitive probably originated in sentences in which the accusative was at first the object of a finite verb; *e.g.* in **Sentĭō ĕum sĕquī**, *I perceive him to be following*, the case of **ĕum** is in origin due to the transitive verb **sentĭō**.

NOTE.—Instead of **dīcō** followed by **nōn, nĕgō** is used; *e.g.* **Illĕ vērum plānē nĕgăt essĕ**, *He distinctly says that truth does not exist.*

§ 412. The accusative and infinitive construction is also found with expressions kindred in meaning to some verb included in the above rule, *e.g.*—

certĭŏr fīō, *I am informed.* incrēdĭbĭlĕ est, *it is incredible.*
fāmă est, *there is a rumour.* ŏpĭnĭō est, *there is a notion.*
(mĭhĭ) vĕnĭt ĭn mentem, *it occurs to (me).*

Caesăr certĭŏr factŭs est hostēs sŭb montĕ **consēdissĕ**.
Caesar was informed that the enemy had posted themselves at the foot of the mountain.

§ 413. The use of the infinitive in **exclamations** falls under the heading of "accusative and infinitive," dependent on some verb which is not expressed.

mēnĕ inceptō dēsistĕrĕ victam?
what, I draw back defeated from a task begun?

§ 414. The continuous use of the accusative and infinitive in reports of speeches, etc., known as **indirect discourse** or **ōrātiō oblīquă**, is treated in Chapter XLVI. (pp. 265–271).

§ 415. In the construction known as **historic infinitive**, the infinitive takes the place of primary predicate to the subject of the sentence, and is thus practically equivalent to a finite verb; the subject is in the nominative case. This usage is found in graphic narrative, and is confined to the present infinitive.

multī sĕquī fŭgĕrĕ, occīdī căpī.
many were following or fleeing, being slain or being taken prisoners.

Poetic Usages of the Infinitive.

§ 416. In the usages already noticed the infinitive stands as a verbal substantive either in the nominative or in the accusative; it is for the most part only in poetry that the infinitive stands as any other case, the gerund or some other construction being used instead.

§ 417. The infinitive in most of these poetic usages is equivalent to a dative of purpose (§ 358), and is dependent on (*a*) a substantive, (*b*) an adjective or participle, (*c*) a verb.

(*a*) **tempŭs est iam hinc ăbīrĕ mē.**
it is already time for me to go hence.

This use of **tempŭs** is found in prose.

(*b*) **audax omnĭă perpĕtī gens hūmānă rŭĭt pĕr vĕtĭtum nĕfās.**
bold to endure all things, the race of men rushes headlong through forbidden sin.

The prose construction would be **audax ăd omnĭă perpĕtĭendă** (§ 430, i.).

(*c*) **quem vĭrum sūmĭs cĕlĕbrārĕ, Clĭō?**
what hero, Clio, dost thou select to glorify?

lōrĭcam dōnăt hăbērĕ vĭrō.
he presents to the hero a cuirass to keep.

The prose construction would be **quam hăbĕăt** (§ 501, *c*).

Obs. The infinitive was originally a case-form—usually the dative—of a verbal substantive. This would account for its force in the above usages; *e.g.* the last two examples may be rendered, *What hero dost thou take for (the purpose of) praising? He presents to the hero a cuirass for keeping.*

Tenses of the Infinitive.

§ 418. In the accusative and infinitive construction—

the present infinitive is used of an action contemporaneous with that of the finite verb;

the perfect infinitive is used of an action prior to that of the finite verb;

the future infinitive is used of an action subsequent to that of the finite verb.

This is perfectly natural and regular, and would not require pointing out were it not that in the English rendering of the accusative and infinitive construction the principal verb, *if in a past tense*, causes a change in the tense of the verb in the dependent clause. Contrast the following, in which the speaker reports what he said on a former occasion :—

Original Statement.	Report of Statement.
errās. *you are making a mistake.*	**dixī tē errārĕ.** *I said you were making a mistake.*
errābās. *you were making a mistake.*	**dixī tē errāvissĕ.** *I said you had made* (or *had been making*) *a mistake.*
errastī. *you made* or *have made a mistake.*	
errābĭs. *you will make a mistake.*	**dixī tē errātūrum essĕ.** *I said you would make a mistake.*

Obs. 1. Sometimes the past tense in the English dependent clause represents a past tense in the original statement; *e.g.* "He told me to-day that John was ill yesterday" reports the statement "John was ill yesterday." The student will never be in doubt as to the tense of the infinitive to be used in Latin if he will consider what tense was used in the original statement, and represent a present tense in the original statement by the present infinitive, a past tense by the perfect infinitive, and the future by the future infinitive.

Obs. 2. For the future infinitive active or passive a consecutive clause introduced by **fŏrĕ ŭt** or **fŭtūrum essĕ ŭt** (§ 552) *may* be substituted in the case of any verb, and *must* be used if the verb has no supine base.

§ 419. The **perfect infinitive** is found in the archaic language of legal enactments after the verbs vŏlō and nōlō. This usage was followed by the poets and Livy, and employed also with other like verbs.

nē quĭs convēnissĕ sacrōrum causā vĕlĭt.
let no one presume to assemble for the purpose of sacred rites.

gaudĕt pĕpŭlissĕ fossŏr tĕr pĕdĕ terram.
the digger delights in thrice striking the earth with his foot.

§ 420. The Latin present infinitive with a verb expressing *possibility* or *duty* in the past is often rendered by an English perfect infinitive.

dēlērī tōtŭs exercĭtŭs pŏtŭĭt.
the whole army might have been destroyed.

pĕcūnĭam hīs ŏportŭĭt cīvĭtātĭbŭs prō frūmentō dărī.
money ought to have been given to these states in payment for corn.

Obs. This usage in English is due to the words *could, should, ought*, etc., having now no distinctly past signification.

The Supine.

§ 421. The **accusative supine** is used as an accusative of the goal of motion, the action implied in the supine being regarded as the goal. The supine may govern an object (direct or indirect) in the same case as the object of the finite verb to which it belongs.

Aedŭī lēgātōs ăd Caesărem mittunt rŏgātum auxĭlĭum.
the Aedui send ambassadors to Caesar to ask for help.

Grāiīs servītum mātrĭbŭs ībō.
I shall go to be a slave to Greek matrons.

§ 422. The **ablative supine** is in common use only in the case of certain verbs of *saying, perceiving*, and *knowing*, with nascŏr (nātū, *by birth*) and făcĭō (factū, *in doing*); it is generally used with an adjective as ablative of respect (§ 370).

nĕc hōc tam rē est quam dictū mīrābĭlĕ.
nor is this so wonderful in reality as it is to tell.

ĭd exprĭmĕrĕ Lătīnē diffĭcĭlĕ factū est.
to express that in Latin is a difficult thing to do.

The Gerund.

§ 423. The **nominative gerund** of **intransitive** verbs is used with the third person singular of some tense of **sum**; the idea thus conveyed is that of **necessity** or **duty**. The gerund may govern an object in the same case as that governed by the finite verb from which it is formed; the agent is expressed by a dative, or (where the dative would cause ambiguity) by ā or ăb and the ablative.

mŏrĭendum est omnĭbŭs.
all must die.

rĕsistendum sĕnectūtī est.
old age must be resisted.

illīs ĕrĭt ā vōbīs consŭlendum.
their interests will have to be consulted by you.

Obs. 1. The literal rendering of **mŏrĭendum est omnĭbŭs** is *there is a dying for all* (Cp. § 356, *Obs.* 2). The nominative gerund used to be called the "neuter gerundive used impersonally," and a few grammars still retain that name.

Obs. 2. The accusative gerund of intransitive verbs is similarly used with **essĕ** in the accusative and infinitive construction; *e.g.* **Constăt omnĭbŭs mŏrĭendum essĕ**, *It is agreed that all must die.*

§ 424. The nominative gerund of a transitive verb is occasionally used, and is accompanied by a direct object, its construction being in other respects that of an intransitive gerund.

hanc vĭam nōbīs quŏquĕ ingrĕdĭundum est.
we too must enter upon this road.

Obs. This usage is quite exceptional and is not to be imitated.

§ 425. The **accusative gerund** is used after certain prepositions (**ăd**, *to*, being by far the commonest). It cannot, even if from a transitive verb, govern a direct object, and the gerundive construction (§ 430, i.) then takes its place.

brĕvĕ tempŭs sătīs longum est ăd bĕnĕ vīvendum.
for living aright a short time is long enough.

§ 426. The **dative gerund** is used as a dative of purpose (§ 358) in close connection with a substantive, adjective, or verb. It cannot, even if from a transitive verb, govern a direct object, but the gerundive construction (§ 430, ii.) takes its place.

ĕrant pugnandō părēs nostrī.
our men were equal to (the task of) fighting.

§ 427. The **ablative gerund** is used with or without a preposition. If formed from a transitive verb it frequently has a direct object (especially a neuter adjective or neuter pronoun), but the gerundive construction (§ 430, iii.) is also used.

ūnŭs tū nōbīs cunctandō restĭtŭĭs rem.
thou alone by delay restorest fortune to us.

hŏnestum versātŭr ĭn trĭbŭendō sŭum cuiquĕ.
honesty consists in giving each his own.

NOTE.—The ablative gerund without a preposition is usually instrumental (§ 373).

§ 428. The **genitive gerund** is used in dependence on substantives and adjectives. If formed from a transitive verb it frequently has a direct object, but the gerundive construction (§ 430, iv.) is also used.

gĕnŭs fŏrensĕ dīcendī tractārĕ vŏlō.
I wish to treat of the forensic style of oratory.

cŭpĭdŭs sum tē audĭendī.
I am desirous of hearing you.

Obs. It is to be borne in mind that the use of the gerundive construction (§ 430) is much more frequent than that of *any* case of the gerund governing a direct object, and that it must *always* be adopted instead of an accusative or dative gerund governing a direct object.

§ 429. Occasionally an objective genitive plural takes the place of the direct object of a genitive gerund.

Marcō Antōnĭō făcultās dătŭr ăgrōrum sŭīs lătrōnĭbŭs condōnandī.
an opportunity is being given to Marcus Antonius of presenting lands to his freebooters.

The Gerundive.

§ **430.** As a rule the place of a transitive gerund and its direct object is taken by the gerundive and a substantive with which the gerundive agrees in gender and number and case.

In this construction, commonly known as the gerundive (or gerundial) attraction, **the substantive is in the case of the gerund which the gerundive replaces.**

(i.) *Acc.* Caesăr ăd **conventūs ăgendōs** prŏfectŭs est.
Caesar set out to hold the assizes.

Here the gerundive construction is necessarily used instead of the gerund **ăgendum** with the direct object **conventūs.**

(ii.) *Dat.* **tresvĭrī cŏlōnĭae dēdūcendae** crĕātī sunt.
a commission of three was appointed for planting a colony.

Here the gerundive construction is necessarily used instead of the gerund **dēdūcendō** with the direct object **cŏlōnĭam.**

(iii.) *Abl.* **ā rēbŭs gĕrendīs** sĕnectūs abstrăhĭt.
old age withdraws us from active life (lit. *from carrying on affairs*).

Here the gerundive construction is used instead of the gerund **gĕrendō** with the direct object **rēs.**

(iv.) *Gen.* Caesăr **proelĭī committendī** signum dĕdĭt.
Caesar gave the signal for beginning the battle.

Here the gerundive construction is used instead of the gerund **committendī** with the direct object **proelĭum.**

NOTE.—The genitive singular neuter of the gerundive is used with the genitive of the personal pronouns (**mĕī, nostrī, tŭī, vestrī, sŭī**), these forms being in origin the genitive singular neuter of the corresponding possessive adjectives; *e.g.* **Germānī ăd Caesărem vēnērunt sŭī purgandī causā,** *The Germani came to Caesar for the purpose of exculpating themselves.*

§ **431.** The **gerundive** is also used to denote that the substantive to which it refers *ought to be, is to be,* or occasionally (with a negative) *cannot be* the object of the verbal action implied. The **agent** is expressed by a dative, or (where the dative would cause ambiguity) by ā or ăb and the ablative.

nōn tangendă rătēs transĭlĭunt vădă.
the barks leap over the waters that ought not to be meddled with.

hăbendă est rătiō vălētūdĭnĭs.
account must be taken of health.

bellăquĕ nōn pŭĕrō tractăt ăgendă pŭĕr.
and as a boy he meddles with wars that ought not to be waged by a boy.

vōtă vix nŭmĕrandă făcĭt.
he makes vows that can scarcely be numbered.

§ 432. A substantive and gerundive may together form a phrase, concrete in form but of abstract meaning, expressing an action that is to be performed on the substantive.

Caesăr pontem ĭn Ărărĕ făcĭendum cūrăt.
Caesar sees to the making of a bridge over the Arar.

tū sĕcandă marmŏră lŏcās sŭb ipsum fūnŭs.
you, on the brink of the tomb, contract for having marbles cut.

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE.

§ 433. The present participle of some verbs can be used as an attribute, like an ordinary adjective; when so used it may, if from a transitive verb, have a genitive in dependence on it (§ 399, *Obs.* 2).

ămīcum stŭdĭōsum ĕt ămantem sŭī fulsĭt.
he has sustained a friend who is devoted and affectionate to him.

Obs. The ablative singular of a present participle used attributively ends in **-ī**; in other usages the termination **-ĕ** is preferred.

§ 434. Some present participles have comparative and superlative forms, *e.g.* **ămans**, *loving*, makes comparative **ămantĭŏr**, superlative **ămantissĭmŭs**. These do not differ syntactically from ordinary adjectives.

§ 435. The present participle used predicatively in dependence on a substantive may govern an object in the same case as the object of the verb from which it is formed.

tālĭă dīcentem Aenēān āversă tŭētŭr.
she gazes askance at Aeneas as he speaks thus.

Obs. A temporal clause (§ 528) is generally used instead of the present participle active in the nominative case, and the want of a present participle passive is compensated for in the same way.

§ 436. The **present participle** is very frequently used predicatively with a substantive in the ablative (**ablative of attendant circumstances** or **ablative absolute**, § 383).

Dīdō prōgrĕdĭtŭr magnā stīpantĕ cătervā.

Dido comes forth, a great throng pressing round her.

Obs. The substantive in the ablative of attendant circumstances is one that is not otherwise related (*e.g.* as subject, object, or instrument) to the finite verb. An exception to this rule is occasionally found in the case of a pronoun emphatically used ; *e.g.* **Lăcrĭmās nōtāvī, mē lăcrĭmantĕ, tŭās,** *I, shedding tears myself, have marked your tears.*

§ 437. A present participle without a substantive is found as **an** ablative of attendant circumstances when a substantive can easily be supplied from the context.

rursŭs rĕsistentĭbŭs ăd pĕdēs dēsĭlŭērunt hostēs.

our men again resisting, the enemy dismounted (lit. *leapt down to their feet*).

THE FUTURE PARTICIPLE ACTIVE.

§ 438. The **future participle** serves (*a*) as an **attribute, fŭtūrŭs** and **ventūrŭs** alone being commonly so used; (*b*) **predicatively**, like the present participle, referring to the subject or object, or forming with a substantive an ablative of attendant circumstances, but these latter usages are of rare occurrence in writers of the best period.

(*a*) **signă ostenduntŭr ā dīs rērum fŭtūrārum.**

omens of future things are shown by the gods.

(*b*) **ădest dē tē sententĭam lātūrŭs.**

he is here to give his vote concerning you.

§ 439. The commonest use of the **future participle** is that in which with the verb **sum** it supplies a number of **additional tenses** to the conjugation of an active or deponent verb (see § 156). In this use the future participle is, strictly speaking, a secondary predicate. The future participle is frequently used (without **essĕ**) as an equivalent for the corresponding future infinitive.

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE AND DEPONENT.

§ 440. **Perfect participles** of verbs that are not deponents have a passive meaning; perfect participles of deponent verbs are, generally speaking, active in meaning. To this rule, however, there are two classes of exceptions :—

(*a*) Perfect participles of active meaning formed from active verbs, mostly intransitive (see § 177).

(*b*) Perfect participles of passive meaning formed from verbs which in classical Latin are deponent (see § 172).

The following are the most common of those belonging to the later class :—

confessŭs, *confessed*,	from	**confĭtĕŏr**	**pactŭs**, *agreed*,	from	**păciscŏr**
expertŭs, *tried*,	„	**expĕrĭŏr**	**pŏpŭlātŭs**, *ravaged*,	„	**pŏpŭlŏr**
mensŭs, *measured*,	„	**mētĭŏr**	**rătŭs**, *settled*,	„	**rĕŏr**
mentītŭs, *falsified*,	„	**mentĭŏr**	**sŏrtītŭs**, *allotted*,	„	**sortĭŏr**
oblītŭs, *forgotten*,	„	**oblīviscŏr**	**ultŭs**, *avenged*,	„	**ulciscŏr**

Obs. The above participles have an active meaning also, *having confessed*, *having tried*, etc. **Rătŭs** signifies *having thought* or *thinking* (§ 442, NOTE) ; **sortītŭs**, *having assigned* or *having received by lot*.

§ 441. Some **perfect participles** may be used as **attributes**, and admit of degrees of comparison, like ordinary adjectives ; *e.g.* **īrātŭs**, *angry*, makes comparative **īrātĭŏr**, superlative **īrātissĭmŭs**.

§ 442. The **perfect participle** may stand **predicatively** in dependence on a substantive ; if deponent or used in a middle sense (§ 304), it may govern an object.

convēnērĕ tŏrīs iussī discumbĕrĕ pictīs.
they assembled, having been bidden to recline on embroidered couches.

tum brĕvĭtĕr Dīdō vultum dēmissă prŏfātŭr.
then Dido, casting down her eyes, briefly speaks.

NOTE.—Thus used predicatively a deponent or middle perfect participle is often translated by an English present participle ; *e.g.* **Illī, supplĭcĭă Gallōrum vĕrĭtī, rĕmănērĕ sē ăpŭd Caesărem vellĕ dixērunt**, *They, fearing punishment at the hands of the Gauls, said they were willing to remain with Caesar.*

§ 443. It will be noticed that, with the exception of deponents, Latin verbs have no perfect participle of active meaning. This deficiency is supplied (*a*) by a temporal clause (§ 528) ; (*b*) by the perfect participle passive in agreement with the object, *e.g.* **Caesăr fŭgātōs hostēs sĕcūtŭs est**, *Caesar, having put the enemy to flight, followed them ;* or (*c*) by the perfect participle passive in the construction known as the ablative of attendant circumstances (§ 444).

§ 444. The **perfect participle passive** is very frequently used predicatively with a substantive in the ablative (**ablative of attendant circumstances** or **ablative absolute**, § 383). The same construction is found with the perfect participle of some deponent verbs, mostly intransitive.

hāc ōrātĭōnĕ hăbĭtā concĭlĭum dīmīsĭt.
having made this speech (lit. *this speech having been made*), *he dismissed the meeting.*

hōc responsō dătō discessĭt.
when this answer had been given him, he departed.

Caesăr ortā lūcĕ Brĭtannĭam conspexĭt.
as soon as day broke, Caesar descried Britain.

Obs. 1. The rendering of the participle in the above examples by an English active participle or an English dependent clause should be carefully noted.

Obs. 2. The substantive in the ablative of attendant circumstances is one that is not otherwise related (*e.g.* as subject, object, or instrument) to the finite verb.

NOTE.—A perfect participle passive is sometimes used impersonally in the ablative singular neuter without a substantive, *e.g.* **lībātō**, *a libation having been made;* **compertō**, *it having been ascertained.*

§ 445. A **substantive and perfect participle** passive often together form a phrase, concrete in form but of **abstract** meaning, expressing an action performed on the substantive.

Hŏmērŭs fŭĭt ĕt Hēsĭŏdŭs antĕ Rōmam condĭtam.
Homer and Hesiod lived before the foundation of Rome.

mĕmŏrābĭlem pugnam fēcĭt Hasdrŭbăl captŭs.
the capture of Hasdrubal made the battle memorable.

§ 446. The use of the **perfect participle** as **secondary predicate** with some part of **sum** is the ordinary method of forming certain tenses of passive and deponent verbs.

Frequently, especially in poetry, **est** or **sunt** is not expressed; the participle then becomes a **primary predicate**, taking the place of a finite verb (§ 309).

Similarly the perfect participle may be used (without **essĕ**) as an equivalent for the corresponding perfect infinitive.

CHAPTER XL.—QUESTIONS.

§ 447. Questions are classed as "single" and "double." A **single question** asks for information on a certain point; *e.g.* "Has Caesar won the battle?" A **double question** asks which of two or more alternatives is in accordance with fact; *e.g.* "Has Caesar or Pompeius won the battle?" "Has Caesar won the battle, or has he been defeated?"

§ 448. A question may be introduced by some **interrogative adjective, pronoun,** or **adverb,** such as ŭtĕr, *which of the two?* quĭs, *who?* ŭbĭ, *where?*

quĭd lŏquŏr? aut ŭbĭ sum? quae mentem insānĭă mūtăt?

what am I saying? or where am I? what madness alters my purpose?

NOTE.—The use of **quīn** (= **quī**? *why?* + the inseparable particle **nĕ**, *not*) with the indicative in exhortations falls under this heading; *e.g.* **Quīn expergiscĭmĭnī?** *Arise!* (lit. *Why do you not arise?*)

§ 449. Where no such interrogative word is used, the interrogative character of the sentence is generally indicated by one of the **interrogative particles** -nĕ, nonnĕ, num, and (in double questions only) ŭtrum, ăn. (For examples, see the succeeding sections.)

SINGLE QUESTIONS.

§ 450. **Nonnĕ** and **num** stand at the beginning of the sentence; **nonnĕ** indicates that an affirmative, **num** that a negative, answer is expected. The enclitic -nĕ is used without regard to the character of the answer expected, though the character of that answer is often clear from the context. It is appended to the emphatic word in the question, and this word as a rule stands first in the sentence.

nonnĕ vĭdēs rempublĭcam pĕrĭssĕ?

do you not see that the commonwealth has perished?

num flētū ingĕmŭĭt nostrō? tūnĕ ĭd vĕrĭtŭs ĕs?

did he sigh over my tears? *were you afraid of that?*

Obs. 1. For the term enclitic, see § 239, *Obs.* 1; for the shortened form of the second person singular with -nĕ, see § 239, *Obs.* 2.

Obs. 2. **Num** may be written as one word with **quĭs**, *any one* (§ 115).

§ 451. A question is sometimes asked without the aid of any interrogative word or particle, especially if nōn is the first word of the sentence.

vīs rectē vīvĕrĕ ?
do you wish to live aright ?

nōn fŭgĭs hinc praeceps ?
do you not flee hence in haste ?

Double and other Compound Questions.

§ 452. The first member of a double question is most often introduced by ŭtrum, the second by ăn; less frequently the first member is introduced by -nĕ or stands without an interrogative particle.

ŭtrum ĕă vestră ăn nostră culpă est ?
is that your fault or ours ?

vosnĕ vērō Dŏmĭtĭum ăn vōs Dŏmĭtĭŭs dēsĕrŭĭt ?
did you in fact desert Domitius, or did Domitius desert you ?

Note.—The latter alternative, when merely the contradictory of the former, is expressed usually by annōn, rarely by necnĕ.

ŭtrum haec aequō ănĭmō pătĭēmĭnī annōn ?
will you endure these things with a calm mind or not ?

§ 453. When an interrogative sentence has more than two members, ŭtrum introduces the first, ăn the rest.

ŭtrum hōc tū părum commĕmĭnistī, ăn ĕgŏ nōn sătĭs intellexī, ăn mūtastī sententĭam ?
is it that you fail to remember this, or did I not quite understand, or have you changed your opinion ?

§ 454. The first member of a double question is sometimes suppressed, and the second (introduced by ăn) expresses wonder or indignation. This is always the case where ăn introduces an apparently single question.

ăn est ullum māiŭs mălum turpĭtūdĭnĕ ?
is there any greater evil than disgrace ?

Thus, before the above example, there is a suppression of some such question as *Is disgrace the greatest of evils ?*

CHAPTER XLI.—VERBS: NUMBER AND PERSON.

§ 455. In Chapter XXXVIII. the chief rules relating to the number and case of the substantive have been stated; the voice of the verb has been dealt with in Chapter XXXVI.; the use of the remaining inflexions of the verb will now be treated, *viz.* number and person and (for simple sentences) mood and tense. The rules here given are not meant to be exhaustive, but to call attention to usages in which Latin differs noticeably from English, or which are otherwise worthy of attention.

§ 456. The **first person plural** is sometimes used by a speaker or writer to refer to himself alone when he wishes to assume an air of modesty.

nōs ădŏlescentēs Sextō Roscĭō subvēnĭmŭs.
as a young man I aided Sextus Roscius.

§ 457. The **second person**, singular and plural, should be rendered by *you* in prose and in poetry of the lighter kind; *thou* and *ye* should be reserved for serious poetry.

Obs. The second person plural is *never* used in Latin for the singular; consequently, in rendering English into Latin, *you* must be rendered by the singular unless the context clearly shows that the meaning is plural.

§ 458. The **indefinite subject** (French *on*) is represented in Latin by the following, among other forms of expression.

(*a*) the first person plural;
(*b*) the third person plural of verbs expressing rumour or opinion;
(*c*) the second person singular subjunctive.

(*a*) **virtūtem incŏlŭmem ōdĭmŭs.**
we dislike true merit when in our midst (lit. *safe*).

(*b*) **tē săpĭentem ĕt appellant ĕt existĭmant.**
people both style and think you wise.

(*c*) **crēdĕrēs victōs.**
you would have believed them conquered.

Obs. With usage (*c*) cp. § 477, § 514, *Obs.* 2.

CHAPTER XLII.—MOODS AND TENSES IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

I.—THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 459. The **indicative** mood states a thing as a fact or asks a question as to whether a thing is a fact or not.

nonnĕ mĕmĭnistī? mĕmĭnī vērō.
do you not remember? I do indeed.

§ 460. The **present** indicative answers to the English continuous present (*I am loving, I am being loved*) as well as to the simple present (*I love, I am loved*).

quīd strŭīs aut quā spē Lĭbўcīs tĕrĭs ōtiă terrīs?
what art thou devising, or with what hope art thou spending thy leisure in Libyan lands?

Obs. With regard to the passive of verbs that express the bringing of a thing into a certain condition, see § 471.

§ 461. The present indicative is used of an action or state which has already been going on some time, and the imperfect of an action which at the time referred to had been going on some time. This is the case especially when the verb is accompanied by **iam**, *already*, **iamdūdum** or **iamprīdem**, *for some time already*.

annum iam audīs Crătippum.
you have already been attending Cratippus' lectures a year.

iamdūdum flēbam.
I had long been weeping.

§ 462. The **historic present**, in which a narrator describes an event from the standpoint of the time when it actually occurred, is more frequently used in Latin than in English.

tālĭbŭs ōrābăt, tālesquĕ mĭserrĭmă flētūs fert sŏrŏr.
in such words did she continue to entreat, and such the laments her most unhappy sister conveyed.

Obs. The Latin historic present may sometimes be rendered with good effect by the same tense in English; but, on the whole, the learner will do better to make a practice of rendering it by the past.

For **dum** with the present indicative see § 534.

§ 463. The **imperfect** indicative answers to the English continuous past (*I was loving, I was being loved*); sometimes, however, the simple past tense (*I loved*) is a sufficient rendering.

nĕc plūră effātŭs ăd altōs
tendēbăt mūrōs, gressumquĕ ĭn castră fĕrēbăt.
and, without saying more, he sought the lofty walls, and bent his steps to the camp.

NOTE.—The imperfect of **sum** and its compounds is more commonly used than the perfect, except in matters of historical fact; it is always rendered by the simple past in English.

§ 464. The **imperfect** indicative is also used to express (*a*) **habitual** action in past time, and (*b*) **attempted** action in past time.

(*a*) Karthāgĭnĕ quŏtannīs bīnī consŭlēs crĕābantŭr.
at Carthage two consuls used to be appointed yearly.

(*b*) ex urbĕ Cătīlīnam ēĭcĭēbam.
I endeavoured to drive Catilina from the city.

§ 465. In writing a letter a Roman frequently used the imperfect to describe something going on at the time he was writing, that being the tense which would be applicable by the time the letter was delivered. This is known as the **epistolary imperfect,** and is found chiefly at the beginning and end of letters.

ex ĭtĭnĕrĕ scrībēbam.
I am writing on my journey.

NOTE.—The pluperfect is similarly used of an action previous to the time of writing; *e.g.* **Ĕgŏ constĭtŭĕram vĕnīrĕ ĭn Pŭtĕŏlānum,** *I have determined to go to my seat at Puteoli.*

§ 466. In principal sentences the use of the Latin **future** corresponds with that of the English tense so named.

For the future in dependent clauses, see § 511 (conditional) and § 532 (temporal).

§ 467. The **perfect** indicative has two distinct functions: it is equivalent to (*a*) the English simple past, (*b*) the English present-perfect (simple or continuous). Thus, **ămāvī** denotes (*a*) *I loved*, (*b*) *I have loved* or *I have been loving*.

(*a*) **incŭbŭitquĕ tŏrō dixitquĕ nŏvissĭmă verbă.**
she lay down on the bed and spake her last words.

(*b*) urbem praeclāram **stătŭī**, **mĕă moenĭă vīdī.**
I have built a noble city, I have seen my own walls rise.

Obs. For the meaning of the perfect and other tenses of the passive which are formed by means of the perfect participle and the verb **sum**, see § 471.

§ 468. Two poetical usages of the perfect are noticeable: (*a*) the perfect expressing instantaneous action; (*b*) the gnomic (*i.e.* proverbial) perfect, expressing customary action.

(*a*) **ēn nāvīs fŭgĭt ĕt portū sē condĭdĭt altō.**
lo, the ship flies on, and has now hidden herself in the deep harbour.

(*b*) **nōn aerīs ăcervŭs ĕt aurī**
aegrōtō dŏmĭnī dēduxĭt corpŏrĕ fēbrēs.
a heap of bronze and gold is not wont to take away fevers from its possessor's diseased frame.

§ 469. For the perfect with temporal conjunctions, such as **antĕquam, prĭusquam,** and **postquam**, see §§ 529, 533.

§ 470. The **future-perfect** was in early Latin frequently used with a meaning practically equivalent to that of a simple future; in classical times this usage survives chiefly in the case of the verb **vĭdĕō**, with which it signifies postponement.

rectē sĕcusnĕ ălīās vīdĕrĭmŭs.
whether rightly or otherwise, we will consider another time.

dē grĕgĕ praestĭtĕrĭt septem mactārĕ iŭvencōs.
it will be well to sacrifice from the flock seven steers.

Obs. For the future-perfect in dependent clauses, see § 511 (conditional) and § 532 (temporal).

Tenses formed by means of the Verb *SUM* with the Perfect Participle Passive.

§ 471. These tenses (viz. the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect passive) have meanings corresponding to those of the same tenses of the active. In the case however of verbs that express the *bringing of a thing into a certain condition* the perfect participle may denote the present condition brought about by past action, and the translation of the tenses formed by the help of the perfect participle of such verbs calls for attention.

To take, for example, the verb **mūnĭō**, *I fortify*, i.e. *put into a fortified condition:*

The perfect indicative passive in the sentence

urbs mūnītă est (past act or present state)

expresses (*a*) *The city was fortified* (i.e. *was put into a fortified condition*);

(*b*) *The city has been fortified* (i.e. *has been put into a fortified condition*);

(*c*) *The city is fortified* (i.e. *is in a fortified condition*).

But the meaning of

urbs mūnītă fŭĭt (past state)

is *The city was fortified* (i.e. *was in a fortified condition*).

Similarly the pluperfect

urbs mūnītă ĕrăt (pluperfect act or past state)

expresses (*a*) *The city had been fortified* (i.e. *had been put into a fortified condition*);

(*b*) *The city was fortified* (i.e. *was in a fortified condition*).

And so on, with other tenses of the verb **sum** (see § 164).

Obs. When the English past participle is (like "fortified") ambiguous, the Latin present, *e.g.* **mūnītŭr**, should be rendered "*is being* fortified."

II.—THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ **472.** The present imperative is the natural form for conveying a command or direction; the future imperative is used in laws and treaties, and when found elsewhere expresses an authoritative command.

fertĕ cĭtī flammās, dătĕ tēlă, impellĭtĕ rēmōs.
bring fire in haste, give out weapons, swing the oars.

noxĭae poenă pār estō. hunc tū cāvētō.
let the punishment be proportionate to the offence. *be thou ware of him.*

Obs. For the subjunctive expressing a command, see § 477.

§ **473.** A prohibition (*i.e.* a negative command) in the second person is in poetry frequently expressed by nē and the present imperative, and in legal phraseology by nē and the future imperative.

ĕquō nē crēdĭtĕ, Teucrī. dōnum nē capĭuntō.
trust not to the horse, Trojans. *they must not accept a gift.*

NOTE.—In a compound sentence (in poetry) containing two imperatives the second (if negative) is introduced by nēvĕ or neu or by nĕc or nĕquĕ; *e.g.* Dŏmum claudĕ nĕc ĭn vĭās despĭcĕ, *Close the house, and look not down into the streets.*

Obs. The methods by which a prohibition in the second person is deferentially expressed in prose are:—

(1) nōlī (or nōlītĕ) with the present infinitive, *e.g.* nōlī ăbīrĕ;
(2) cāvē (or cāvētĕ) with the present subjunctive, *e.g.* cāvē ăbĕās;
(3) vĭdē (or vĭdētĕ) nē with the present subjunctive, *e.g.* vĭdē nē ăbĕās.

For prohibitions expressed by nē and the present or perfect subjunctive (second person) see § 478.

A prohibition may in familiar language be expressed by nōn and the future indicative, *e.g.* nōn ăbībĭs.

III.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ **474.** The subjunctive is used in two classes of principal sentences, *viz.*—

(1) a jussive sentence (jussive subjunctive);
(2) the apodosis of a conditional sentence.

Its use in the latter is treated in Chapter XLV., under "Conditional Sentences" (§§ 507—517).

Jussive Subjunctive.

§ 475. Under the head of **jussive** subjunctive the following usages are comprised :—

(*a*) Subjunctive expressing a **wish** (**optative** use of subjunctive);

(*b*) Subjunctive expressing a **command** or **exhortation** (**jussive** use **proper**), including the **concessive** use;

(*c*) Subjunctive **questioning what should be done** (**deliberative** subjunctive).

§ 476. (*a*) The subjunctive expressing a **wish** is commonly introduced by **ŭtĭnam** (equivalent to *O would that . . .!*). The negative used is **nē** or **nōn.**

The **present** subjunctive is used of a wish that may yet be realised.

falsŭs **ŭtĭnam** vātēs **sim.**
may I prove a false prophet.

The **imperfect** subjunctive expresses a wish that something were otherwise than it now is.

illŭd **ŭtĭnam** nē vērē **scrībĕrem.**
would that what I am writing were not true.

The **pluperfect** subjunctive expresses a wish that something had been otherwise than it was.

ŭtĭnam ălĭtĕr **accĭdissĕt.**
would that it had happened otherwise.

§ 477. (*b*) The **present subjunctive** expresses a **command** or **exhortation** in the first person plural, in the third person, singular or plural, and (if no definite individual is addressed) in the second person singular; this last-named construction is rare. The negative used is **nē.**

absistāmŭs, ăĭt. hostĭbŭs nē **cēdāmŭs.**
let us desist, he says. *let us not yield to the enemy.*

angustam ămīcē paupĕrĭem pătī **condiscăt** pŭĕr.
let a boy learn to endure gladly straitened means.

iniūrĭās fortūnae dēfŭgĭendō **rĕlinquās.**
one should escape by flight the harsh treatment of Fortune.

§ 478. **A prohibition** addressed to a definite person is sometimes expressed by **nē** and the second person of the **present** or **perfect subjunctive**. This form of prohibition may be regarded as unceremonious and colloquial; it is accordingly very rare in dignified prose.

nē pertĭmescās. *don't be alarmed.*

hōc nē fēcĕrīs. *you must not do this.*

Obs. The perfect is more peremptory than the present; cp. "Go" and "Begone."

§ 479. **In** the imperfect or the pluperfect tense the jussive subjunctive expresses what ought to have taken place. The negative used is nē. (This usage is rare.)

restĭtissēs, rĕpugnassēs, mortem pugnans oppĕtissēs.
you should have resisted, you should have fought against it, you should have met death fighting.

§ 480. The jussive subjunctive in the present tense often expresses a readiness to assume something *for the sake of argument* to be the case; the perfect similarly concedes a request that something is to be considered to have happened. The negative used is nē.

nĕgant quemquam essĕ vĭrum bŏnum nĭsĭ săpĭentem: sĭt ĭtă sānē.
they say that no man is good unless he is wise: well, granted that it is so.

nēmō ĭs, inquĭēs, umquam fŭĭt: nē fŭĕrĭt.
there never was, you will say, such a man: granted there was not.

Obs. This usage is termed "**concessive subjunctive.**" It is to be distinguished from the use of the subjunctive in a concessive clause (§§ 521—524).

§ 481. (*c*) The interrogative form of the jussive subjunctive is called the **deliberative** or **dubitative** subjunctive; the present is used in questions as to the course of action which is to be pursued, the imperfect in questions as to the course which should have been pursued. The negative used is nōn.

quĭd hōc hŏmĭnĕ făcĭās?
what is one to do with this fellow?

quĭd ăgĕrem? contendĕrem contrā trĭbūnum plēbĭs?
what was I to do? was I to fight against a tribune of the people?

CHAPTER XLIII.—COMPLEX SENTENCES CONTAINING A SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSE.

§ 482. A substantival clause stands as subject or object to the verb of the principal sentence, and is of the nature of (I.) a question, (II.) a command, (III.) a statement.

I.—DEPENDENT QUESTION.

§ 483. It must be clearly understood that the term "**dependent question**" (or, as it is often called, "**indirect question**") applies only to the dependent clause, not to the whole complex sentence of which the clause forms part. The principal sentence is not necessarily interrogative, but it has dependent on it a question which in Latin has its finite verb in the **subjunctive**, the mood serving to indicate that the question is *not asked*, but *mentioned* or *reported*.

For dependent questions introduced by sī see § 519; for questions in oratio obliqua see § 563.

The dependent clause may be

(*a*) subject of an impersonal verb in the principal sentence;

(*b*) object of the finite verb in the principal sentence;

(*c*) object of some verbal substantive or adjective, or of some substantive or adjective containing a verbal notion, in the principal sentence.

(*a*) **nātūrā fĭĕrĕt laudābĭlĕ** carmĕn ăn artĕ **quaesītum est.**
whether a praiseworthy poem was produced by nature or by art was a subject of enquiry.

Direct question (*i.e.* the question in the form in which it is supposed to have been asked): **nātūrā fĭt laudābĭlĕ carmĕn ăn artĕ?**

(*b*) fārĕ, ăgĕ, **quĭd** vĕnĭās.
tell me, now, why you come.

Direct question: **quĭd vĕnĭs?**

(*c*) **cūrā quĭd** expĕdĭăt prĭŏr est quam **quĭd** sĭt **hŏnestum.**
the anxiety is rather as to what is expedient than as to what is honourable.

Direct question: **quĭd expĕdĭt? quĭd est hŏnestum?**

Caesăr certĭŏr factŭs est quae rēs gĕrĕrentŭr.
Caesar was informed what was going on.

Direct question: **quae rēs gĕruntŭr?**

§ 484. A further point to be noticed is that *in both languages* a past tense in the principal sentence requires a past tense in the dependent clause. Beyond this, the sense alone determines what tense is to be used in English in each case, but in Latin the choice of a tense of the subjunctive for the dependent clause is narrowed by the following rule as to the **sequence of tenses.**

§ 485. For the purposes of this rule tenses are divided into two classes : **primary** tenses and **historic** tenses :—

PRIMARY.

Indicative and Imperative.	Subjunctive.
Present.	Present.
Future.	Perfect.
Perfect (with Present-Perfect meaning).	
Future-Perfect.	

HISTORIC.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Imperfect.	Imperfect.
Perfect (with past meaning).	Pluperfect.
Pluperfect.	

Obs. 1. The perfect indicative is said to be used with "present-perfect" meaning when it answers to the English present-perfect, *e.g.* **ămāvī**, *I have loved*, and is said to be used with a "past" meaning when, as is usually the case, it answers to the English past tense, *e.g.* ămāvī, *I loved*. Even when used with present-perfect meaning it often has historic sequence.

Obs. 2. The historic present (§ 462) often counts, for the purpose of sequence, as a historic tense.

RULE.—**A primary tense in the principal sentence requires a primary tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause, and a historic tense in the principal sentence requires a historic tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause.**

Examples are given on the next page of direct questions and the forms they assume when dependent.

(A.) Quĭd Marcŭs ăgĭt? *What is Marcus doing?* or *What does Marcus do?*

quaerō, *I ask*
quaeram, *I shall ask*
quaesīvī, *I have asked*
quaesīvĕrō, *I shall have asked*
quaerĕ, quaerĭtō, *ask*
quaerāmŭs, *let us ask*
} quĭd Marcŭs ăgăt, *what Marcus is doing* or *does.*

quaerēbam, *I was asking*
quaesīvī, *I asked*
quaesīvĕram, *I had asked*
} quĭd Marcŭs ăgĕrĕt, *what Marcus was doing* or *did.*

(B.) Quĭd Marcŭs ăgēbăt? *What was Marcus doing?*
Quĭd Marcŭs ēgĭt? *What did Marcus do?* or *What has Marcus done?*

quaerō, *I ask*
quaeram, *I shall ask*
quaesīvī, *I have asked*
quaesīvĕrō, *I shall have asked*
quaerĕ, quaerĭtō, *ask*
quaerāmŭs, *let us ask*
} quĭd Marcŭs ēgĕrĭt, *what Marcus was doing* or *did* or *has done.*

quaerēbam, *I was asking*
quaesīvī, *I asked*
quaesīvĕram, *I had asked*
} quĭd Marcŭs ēgissĕt, *what Marcus had been doing* or *had done.*

The tenses of sum used with the future participle conform to the same rule as to sequence:

(C.) Quĭd Marcŭs ăgĕt? *What will Marcus do?*

quaerō, *I ask*
quaeram, *I shall ask*
quaesīvī, *I have asked*
quaesīvĕrō, *I shall have asked*
quaerĕ, quaerĭtō, *ask*
quaerāmŭs, *let us ask*
} quĭd Marcŭs actūrŭs sĭt, *what Marcus will do.*

quaerēbam, *I was asking*
quaesīvī, *I asked*
quaesīvĕram, *I had asked*
} quĭd Marcŭs actūrŭs essĕt, *what Marcus would do.*

§ 486. Sometimes the subjunctive in a dependent question represents a deliberative subjunctive (§ 481) in the direct form.

quĭd **ăgĕrem** dŭbĭtāvī.
I doubted what I should do.

Obs. Here the direct question was quĭd ăgam? *what am I to do?*

§ 487. The interrogative particles (-nĕ, nonnĕ, num) used to introduce direct single questions are used also to introduce dependent questions; num, however, does not in a dependent question necessarily expect a negative answer, but is used as an equivalent to -nĕ.

vĭdĕāmŭs **sătisnĕ** istă sĭt vērā dēfīnĭtĭō.
let us see if that definition of yours is sufficiently accurate.

exsistĭt quaestĭō **num** quandō ămīcī nŏvī vĕtĕrĭbŭs sint antĕpōnendī.
the question arises whether at any time new friends are to be preferred to old.

§ 488. Ŭtrum . . . ăn (or -nĕ . . . ăn) are used in dependent as in direct double questions.

quaerō **ŭtrum** ĭs clēmens **ăn** ĭnhūmānissĭmŭs essĕ vĭdĕātŭr.
I ask whether he seems to be merciful or most savage.

ăgĭtŭr lībĕrīnĕ vīvāmŭs **ăn** mortem ŏbĕāmŭs.
the question is whether we are to live in freedom or face death.

§ 489. Where the latter alternative is the contradictory of the former, necnĕ is more usual than annōn in dependent questions.

săpĭentĭă bĕātōs effĭcĭăt **necnĕ** quaestĭō est.
the question is whether philosophy makes men happy or not.

§ 490. The following is a summary of the usages of interrogative particles :—

	Direct Questions.	Dependent Questions.
Single.	-nĕ (*open*), nonnĕ (*yes*), num (*no*)	-nĕ or num (*open*), nonnĕ (*yes*)
Double.	utrum . . . . . ăn, annōn	utrum . . . . . ăn, necnĕ
	-nĕ . . . . . ăn, annōn	-nĕ . . . . . ăn, necnĕ
	(no particle) . . . ăn, annōn	(no particle) . . . ăn, necnĕ
Apparently Single.	ăn (*indignant*)	(haud scĭō or nescĭō) ăn

§ 491. The interrogative particle ăn is, strictly speaking, used only in the second or subsequent member of a compound question direct or dependent; but ăn is found introducing apparently single dependent questions after expressions of doubt, such as haud sciō, nesciō, *I do not know;* dŭbĭtō, *I doubt.*

haud sciō ăn nēmō bĕātĭŏr possĭt essĕ.
I am inclined to think that no one can be happier.

ingens ĕō dĭē rēs āc nesciō ăn maxĭmă illō bellō gestă sĭt.
a great deed was done on that day, and probably the greatest in that war.

Obs. It is important to note that in sentences such as the above the improbable alternative is omitted in Latin, and the probable one alone expressed; whereas in English, after the phrase *I do not know whether*, it is the improbable alternative that is expressed; hence haud sciō ăn hōc vērum sĭt must be rendered *I am inclined to think this is true*, or *I don't know whether this isn't true.*

II.—DEPENDENT COMMAND.

§ 492. A command mentioned or reported forms a dependent clause, having its verb in the subjunctive mood; it is introduced by the conjunction ŭt or (in the case of negative commands) nē. The tense of the subjunctive is in accordance with the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 485).

Hannĭbăl ĕquĭtĭbŭs praecēpĭt ŭt ădŏrīrentŭr impĕdītum agmĕn.
Hannibal ordered his cavalry to attack the encumbered line.

mŏnĕō hortorquĕ vōs nē tantum scĕlŭs impūnītum ŏmittātĭs.
I warn and exhort you not to let so great a crime go unpunished.

Obs. 1. Note that in English *to* with the infinitive is the natural form of a dependent command; the Latin infinitive is to be used to express a dependent command with iŭbĕō, *I command*, and vĕtō, *I forbid* (§ 411), *but with these verbs only.*

Obs. 2. The construction of verbs of *determining* or *deciding* is no exception to this rule. They are used with **ŭt** and the subjunctive to express a determination of one person as to the course of action to be taken by another; *e.g.* **Dēcrēvĭt sĕnātŭs ŭt consŭlēs prōvincĭās sortīrentŭr,** *The senate decreed that the consuls should receive their provinces by lot.* With the infinitive they refer to the action of the subject, and do not introduce a dependent command; *e.g.* **Hannĭbăl Săguntīnīs inferrĕ bellum stătŭĭt,** *Hannibal determined to wage war on the people of Saguntum.*

§ 493. A jussive subjunctive is often used (without a conjunction) in **semi-dependence** on the principal verb.

Caesăr rŏgăt fĭnem ōrandī făcĭăt.
Caesar bade him make an end of entreating.

mēcum mŏrĭārĭs ŏportĕt.
it is right that you should die with me.

NOTE.—The subjunctive is by analogy similarly constructed with **cāvē,** and refers to an action to be avoided, *e.g.* **Cāvē quidquam turpĕ faxīs** (§ 200), *Beware of doing anything disgraceful.*

III.—DEPENDENT STATEMENT.

[The place of an English dependent clause consisting of a statement is in Latin usually taken by the accusative and infinitive construction (§ 411).]

§ 494. **Quŏd,** denoting *the fact that,* may introduce a clause which stands as subject to the sentence. The verb in the clause is in the indicative mood.

nĕc tantum mălī est peccārĕ princĭpēs quantum illŭd quŏd permultī ĭmĭtātōrēs princĭpum exsistunt.
nor is it so great an evil that rulers should do wrong as that very many imitators of rulers arise.

§ 495. An explanatory clause introduced by **ŭt** and with its verb in the subjunctive may stand in apposition to the principal sentence or to a word in it.

fēcī nōn invītŭs, ŭt prōdessem multīs rŏgātū tŭō.
I acted not unwillingly in doing a service to many at your request.

concēdētŭr vērum essĕ ŭt bŏnōs bŏnī dĭlĭgant.
it will be allowed that it is true that good men like good men.

Obs. 1. The rule (§ 485) for the sequence of tenses applies here.
Obs. 2. The learner will do well always to use the accusative and infinitive in rendering into Latin an English dependent statement.

CHAPTER XLIV.—COMPLEX SENTENCES CONTAINING AN ADJECTIVAL CLAUSE.

§ 496. Adjectival clauses are introduced by **quī**, *who*, or some other **relative pronoun** or **adjective** (§ 118, 2nd column). Thus in the sentence **vĭrum cănō quī ăb ōrīs Trōiae prīmŭs vēnĭt**, *I sing of the hero who was first to come from the shores of Troy*, the clause introduced by **quī** describes **vĭrum**, and stands to it in the relation of an adjective. **Vĭrum** is said to be the "antecedent" of the relative **quī**.

The Concord of the Relative (otherwise called the Third Concord).

§ 497. The relative is regularly of the same **gender** and **number** and **person** as its antecedent, but its **case** is determined by its own clause.

sōl, quī terrārum flammīs ŏpĕră omnĭă lustrās.
sun, that visitest with thy beams all the actions of the world.

quoscumquĕ dē tē quĕrī audīvī quācumquĕ pŏtŭī
rătĭōnĕ plācāvī.
whomsoever I have heard complaining of you, them I have satisfied in every possible way.

Obs. It is necessary to determine of what person (first, second, or third) the relative is, because if the relative is the subject of its clause the verb of the clause must agree with it in person, in accordance with the first concord (§ 311).

Note.—An adjective which in Latin qualifies the relative is in English often transferred to the antecedent; *e.g.* **Ĭn tŭmŭlō, quem proxĭmum Gallīs căpĕrĕ pŏtŭĭt, cōpĭās instruxĭt**, *He drew up his forces on the nearest eminence to the Gauls which he could seize.*

§ 498. When a substantive stands to the relative pronoun in the relation of predicate, the relative generally assumes the gender and number of that substantive.

dŏmĭcĭlĭă coniunctă quās urbēs dīcĭmŭs moenĭbŭs saepsērunt.
they surrounded with walls the united dwellings which we call cities.

§ 499. In Latin the relative clause often precedes the so-called "antecedent." The substantive is then usually placed with the relative, not with the demonstrative.

quae cīvĭtās călămĭtātem pŏpŭlō Rōmānō intŭlĕrăt, ĕă princeps poenās exsolvĭt.

the state which had brought disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty.

§ 500. Often the antecedent is not separately expressed, but is contained in the relative.

ĕquĭtēs quōs possunt occīdunt.

the cavalry kill whom they can.

Obs. This construction is found also in English ; *e.g.* "Who steals my purse, steals trash."

Mood of the Verb in a Relative Clause.

§ 501. The verb in the relative clause is in the **subjunctive** mood when the clause implies (*a*) **concession**, (*b*) **cause**, (*c*) **purpose**, or (*d*) **result.**

(*a*) tū nōn adfŭistī quī illum dĭem sŏlĭtŭs essēs ŏbīrĕ.
you were not present although you had been accustomed to observe that day.

Here **quī** is equivalent to **quamvīs** (**tū**), *although you.*

(*b*) Tĭtūrĭŭs, quī nĭhĭl antĕā prōvīdissĕt, trĕpĭdārĕ.
Titurius grew alarmed, for he had made no preparations beforehand.

Here **quī** is equivalent to **quŏd** (**ĭs**), *because he.*

(*c*) Caesăr ĕquĭtātum quī sustĭnērĕt hostĭum impĕtum mīsĭt.
Caesar sent the cavalry to resist the enemy's onset.

Here **quī** is equivalent to **ŭt** (**ĭs**), *in order that it.*

(*d*) quĭs tam praeceps est quī hōc nĕgĕt?
who is so rash as to deny this?

Here **quī** is equivalent to **ŭt** (**ĭs**), (*so*) *that he.*

Obs. The rule given for the sequence of tenses (§ 485) applies to the subjunctive in relative clauses.

§ 502. Of the usages of the subjunctive with **quī** that expressing result is the least obvious at first sight. It occurs where **tālīs ŭt (īs)** (*such that he*) might be substituted for **quī**, and also where the antecedent is indefinite, **quī** then denoting *any one who* (i.e. *any such as*).

ŭbĭ ĕōs invĕnīēmŭs quī ŏpēs ămīcĭtĭae nōn antĕpōnant?
where shall we find those who do not prefer wealth to friendship?

quĭd dulcĭŭs quam hăbērĕ quīcum omnĭă audĕās dīcĕrĕ?
what is more pleasant than to have some one with whom you can venture to speak on every matter?

virgīs caesī quī ăd nōmĭnă nōn respondissent.
all that did not answer to their names were beaten with rods.

impĕrītī făcĭlĕ quŏd stultē dixĕrīs rĕpрĕhendunt.
the unskilled easily take up anything foolish you may have said.

§ 503. This subjunctive is especially frequent after the phrases **est quī, sunt quī**, meaning *there is a sort of man that, there is a class of men who;* also after **īs quī**, meaning *one who.*

sunt dēlictă tămĕn quĭbŭs ignōvissĕ vĕlīmŭs.
there are faults, however, which we are willing to pardon.

nōn tū īs ĕs quī hōc nescĭās.
you are not the man to be ignorant of this.

NOTE 1.—The indicative is used when the antecedent is definite; *e.g.* **Vestēs mūrĭcĕ tinctās sunt quī nōn hăbĕant, est quī nōn cūrāt hăbērĕ,** *There are people* (indefinite antecedent) *who do not possess garments dyed with purple, there is one* (definite antecedent) *who does not care to possess them.*

NOTE 2.—Poets sometimes use the indicative after **sunt quī**, regarding the phrase as a single word; *e.g.* **Sunt quōs currĭcŭlō pulvĕrem Ŏlympĭcum collēgissĕ iŭvăt,** *It delights some to have collected upon their chariot the dust of Olympia.*

§ 504. When the relative clause does not imply concession, cause, purpose, or result, but is merely a description or definition, the verb is in the indicative.

Gallĭă est omnīs dīvīsă ĭn partēs trēs quārum ūnam incŏlunt Belgae.
Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts, of which the Belgae inhabit one.

See also the examples in §§ 496—500.

§ 505. When an adjectival clause consists of a **description** or **definition** which the writer or speaker does not insert in his narrative as so much additional explanation, but **reports as being given at the time of the action**, the verb in this adjectival clause is subjunctive.

Caesăr obsĭdēs quī ăd ĕōs perfūgissent pŏposcĭt.
Caesar demanded such hostages as had taken refuge with them.

Ăgămemnōn Dīānae dēvōvīt quŏd pulcherrĭmum nātum essĕt ĕō annō.
Agamemnon vowed to Diana the most beautiful creature that should be born that year.

In the first example above, Caesar is recording a past action of his own. The clause quī ăd ĕōs perfūgissent is not a description added for the benefit of the reader, but a report of the description given by Caesar in making his demand: obsĭdēs quī ăd vōs perfūgērunt poscō.

Obs. Clauses such as the above are sometimes called "virtually oblique."

The tense of the subjunctive is decided in accordance with (*a* the rule for the sequence of tenses, and (*b*) the tense of the indicative) which would have been used in the relative clause in the direct form. Thus:—

DIRECT.	REPORTED.	
	Primary sequence.	Historic sequence.
Indic. Present ,, Future	Subj. Present	Subj. Imperfect
,, Imperfect ,, Perfect ,, Pluperfect ,, Future-Perfect	,, Perfect	,, Pluperfect

Here the representation of the future and future-perfect indicative is the chief thing to be noticed. In the second example above the words which Agamemnon is supposed to have used are **Dīānae dēvŏvĕō** (or **immŏlābō**) **quŏd pulcherrĭmum nātum ĕrĭt** (future-perfect) **hōc annō**.

These rules as to the tense of the subjunctive apply to virtually oblique clauses in general (cp. § 518), and also to sub-dependent clauses (§ 549). Thus the two examples in § 518 severally represent **aedem Fortūnae dēvŏvĕō** (or **dēdĭcābō**) **sī hŏdiē hostēs fūdĕrō** (future-perfect) and **vōbīs auxĭlĭum mĕum pollĭcĕŏr** (or **auxĭlĭum fĕram**) **sī ăb Suēvīs prĕmēmĭnī** (future).

CHAPTER XLV. — COMPLEX SENTENCES CONTAINING AN ADVERBIAL CLAUSE.

§ 506. Adverbial clauses are here arranged in the fol lowing four classes :—

§§ 507—520. I. **Conditional** (in English usually introduced by *if*).

§§ 521—537. II. **Circumstantial**, *i.e.* such as express some circumstances under which the action of the principal sentence is represented as taking place, including :

§§ 521—524. (i) **concessive** (in Eng. introd. by *although*).
§§ 525—527. (ii) **causal** („ „ „ *because*).
§§ 528—535. (iii) **temporal** („ „ „ *when*).
§ 536. (iv) **local** („ „ „ *where*).
§ 537. (v) **comparative** („ „ *as*).

§§ 538—542. III. **Final**, expressing the *purpose* of the action of the principal sentence.

§§ 543—547. IV. **Consecutive**, expressing the *consequence* or *result* of the action of the principal sentence.

The chief point to attend to in an adverbial clause is the mood of its verb, which is always either indicative or subjunctive.

The rule for the **sequence of tenses** (§ 485) applies to all sentences in which the verb of the dependent clause is subjunctive.

I.—CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

§ 507. It is convenient to give here the rules not only for the **conditional** (or " if ") **clause** (usually known as the **protasis**), but also for the principal sentence to which the conditional clause is subordinate, viz. the **hypothesis** or (to use the name corresponding to " protasis ") **apodosis.**

The whole complex sentence, consisting of conditional clause (or protasis) and hypothesis (or apodosis), is known as a **conditional** (or **hypothetical**) sentence ; thus **sī hōc crēdīs, errās** (*if you believe this, you are wrong*) is a conditional sentence, of which the protasis is **sī hōc crēdīs** and the apodosis **errās.**

§ 508. The protasis is usually introduced by one of the conjunctions sī, *if*, nĭsī (or, especially in poetry and legal language, nī), *if . . . not, unless.* For sīvĕ or seu, see § 607.

Obs. Etsī, ĕtĭamsī, tămetsī are treated under "Concessive Clauses" (§§ 523, 524).

§ 509. Hypothetical sentences fall into three divisions according as the condition expressed by the protasis is represented, as :—

(A.) A condition that **may or may not** have been fulfilled in the past,

or a condition that **may or may not** be fulfilled in the present;

(B.) A condition that **may or may not** be fulfilled in the future;

(C.) A condition that **is not** fulfilled in the present, or a condition that **was not** fulfilled in the past.

§ 510. (A.) When the condition is represented as one that **may or may not** have been fulfilled in the **past**, or one that may or may not be fulfilled in the **present**, the **indicative** is used in both protasis and apodosis, the tense in each being present, imperfect, perfect or pluperfect according to the sense.

sī peccāvī, insciens fēcī.
if I did wrong, I did so unwittingly.

sī quandō nostrī nāvem rĕlĭgāvĕrant, hostēs succurrēbant.
if at any time our men had moored a ship, the enemy rushed up.

assĕquŏr omnĭă, sī prŏpĕrō; sī cunctŏr, āmittō.
I gain all, if I hasten; if I delay, I lose it.

NOTE.—The imperative may also be used in the apodosis; *e.g.* Dēsĭlītĕ, nĭsī vultĭs ăquĭlam hostĭbŭs prōdĕrĕ, *Leap down, unless you want to betray the standard to the enemy.*

§ 511. (B.) When the condition is represented as one that **may or may not** be fulfilled in the **future**, the **future** or (more commonly) the **future-perfect indicative** is used in

the protasis, and the future indicative (rarely the future-perfect) in the apodosis.

scrībentŭr fortassĕ plūrā, sī vītă suppĕtĕt.
more will perhaps be written, if life lasts.

quidquĭd fēcĕrĭs, apprŏbābŏ.
I shall approve of anything you do.

pergrātum mĭhĭ fēcĕrĭs, sī dē ămīcĭtĭā dispŭtārĭs.
you will do me a great pleasure, if you discuss friendship.

Obs. In conditional clauses of this kind the Latin future or future-perfect of the protasis is represented by the English present or present-perfect.

NOTE.—The imperative may also be used in the apodosis; *e.g.* **Sī dē mē ipsō plūrā dīcĕrĕ vĭdēbŏr, ignoscĭtōtĕ,** *If I shall seem to speak rather much about myself, you must pardon me.*

§ 512. But if the idea of futurity is not prominent, the present subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis.

sī Scīpĭōnĭs dēsīdĕrĭō mē mŏvērī nĕgem, certē mentĭăr.
were I to deny that I am moved with regret for Scipio, I should assuredly lie.

Obs. In this form of sentence the contingency is regarded as less probable than it is when the future indicative is used.

§ 513. (C.) When the condition is represented as one that is not fulfilled in the present, the imperfect subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis; when it is represented as one that was not fulfilled in the past, the imperfect subjunctive or (more commonly) the pluperfect subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis.

sī ūtĭlĭtās ămīcĭtĭās conglūtĭnārĕt, ĕădem commūtātă dissolvĕrĕt.
if expedience cemented friendships, it would also when it lay in a different direction dissolve them.

Tărentum nĭsĭ tū āmīsissēs, numquam rĕcēpissem.
had you not lost Tarentum, I should never have recovered it.

tum măgĭs ĭd dīcĕrēs, sī nūpĕr ĭn hortīs Scīpĭōnĭs adfŭissēs.
you would then say so all the more, if you had lately been present in Scipio's garden.

§ 514. The preceding rules may be thus illustrated :—

Condition		
(A.) that may have been fulfilled in the	past	**sī hōc crēdĭdistī, errastī.** *if you believed* or *have believed this, you were* or *have been wrong.*
		sī hōc crēdēbās, errābās. *if you used believe this, you were wrong.*
that may be fulfilled in the	present	**sī hōc crēdĭs, errās.** *if you believe this, you are wrong.*
(B.) that may be fulfilled in the	(definite) future	**sī hōc crēdĭdĕrĭs, errābĭs.** *if you believe this, you will be wrong.*
that may be fulfilled in the	(vague) future	**sī hōc crēdās, errēs.** *if you were to believe this, you would be wrong.*
(C.) that is not fulfilled in the	present	**sī hōc crēdĕrēs, errārēs.** *if you believed this, you would be wrong.*
that was not fulfilled in the	past	**sī hōc crēdĭdissēs, errāvissēs.** *if you had believed this, you would have been wrong.*

Obs. 1. Especial care must be taken to distinguish the use of the present subjunctive (B) from that of the imperfect subjunctive (C) in conditional sentences, the English translation being often the same for both. In Sī hōc crēdās, errēs, the meaning is *If you were to believe this (and perhaps you will), you would be wrong ;* whereas in Sī hōc crēdĕrēs, errārēs it is *If you believed this (but I know you do not), you would be wrong.*

Obs. 2. The above are examples of the conditional sentence in its normal forms ; other combinations occur of the various tenses of the indicative (cp. the second example in § 510). The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive may also be used together, as in the last example in § 513. A subjunctive is found in the protasis with an indicative in the apodosis in accordance with the next two sections, and also when the second person singular denotes an indefinite subject; *e.g.* **Mĕmŏrĭă mĭnŭĭtŭr, nĭsĭ exercĕās,** *The memory grows weak unless one exercises it.* Cp.§ 458.

§ 515. Occasionally a past tense of the indicative takes the place of an imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in the apodosis, greater vividness being thus imparted to the narrative; similarly a future indicative may be substituted for a present subjunctive.

sī nōn ălĭum iactārĕt ŏdōrem, laurŭs ĕrăt.

save that it threw out a different scent, it was a bay-tree.

mē truncŭs illapsŭs cĕrēbrō sustŭlĕrăt, nĭsĭ Faunŭs ictum lĕvassĕt.

the fall of a tree upon my head had carried me off, were it not that Faunus warded off the blow.

sī fractŭs illābātŭr orbĭs, impăvĭdum hunc fĕrĭent rŭīnae.

if the universe fall shattered upon him, the crash will strike him unalarmed.

§ 516. The verb **sum** with a gerund or verbal adjective, and the verbs **possum, dēbĕō, dĕcĕt, ŏportĕt**, are in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences commonly used in a past tense of the indicative, where other verbs would be in the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

sī ūnum dĭem mŏrātī essētĭs, mŏrĭendum omnĭbŭs fŭĭt.

had you tarried a single day, you must all have been put to death.

nĕquĕ sustĭnērī pŏtĕrant, nī cŏhortēs sē obiēcissent.

nor could they have been withstood, if the cohorts had not interposed.

NOTE.—Similarly the present tense is used in such phrases as **Longă est fābŭlă**, *It would be a long story (to tell).*

§ 517. Often a hypothetical sentence is found without any expressed protasis; the mood of the verb in such sentences is subjunctive (potential subjunctive). The present and perfect are used of something that may be realised; the imperfect of something that may not.

tū vĕlim saepĕ ăd nōs scrībās.

I should like you to write often to me.

quĭd nōn sĭt cĭtĭŭs quam quĭd sĭt dixĕrim.

I could more easily say what it is not than what it is.

vellem ădessĕt Marcŭs Antōnĭŭs.

I could wish Marcus Antonius were here.

Obs. The effect of the present or perfect subjunctive is to give a mild or modest tone to the statement.

NOTE.—In this construction the second person singular is used when the subject is indefinite; *e.g.* **Quem nĕquĕ glōrĭă nĕquĕ pĕrīcŭlă excĭtant, nĕquīquam hortērĕ**, *It is useless to exhort a man who is moved neither by renown nor by dangers.*

§ 518. Conditional clauses with the verb in the subjunctive and without any formal apodosis are used to **report a condition** laid down at the time of the action described in the principal sentence.

consŭl aedem Fortūnae dēvōvīt sī ĕō dĭē hostēs fūdissĕt.

the consul vowed a temple to Fortune, if on that day he should rout the enemy.

Caesăr ĭīs auxĭlĭum sŭum pollĭcĭtŭs est sī ăb Suēvīs prĕmĕrentŭr.

Caesar promised them his aid if they were hard pressed by the Suevi.

Obs. Clauses such as the above are sometimes called "virtually oblique."

519. Clauses apparently conditional are found in dependence on a principal sentence which is not the apodosis, when the conjunction **sī** may be rendered *to see if* or *in case*. In these clauses, which are best classed as dependent questions, the verb is subjunctive.

hanc pălūdem sī nostrī transīrent hostēs exspectābant.

the enemy were waiting to see if our men would cross (or *in case our men should cross*) *this marsh.*

NOTE.—The use of **sī** after expressions of *wondering* is probably an imitation of a similar construction in Greek; *e.g.* **Nōn mīrum sī hōc vōbīs rīdĭcŭlum vĭdētŭr,** *It is not wonderful if this seems ridiculous to you.*

§ 520. **Quăsĭ,** *as if*, and **sī** preceded by **āc, quam, tamquam, ŭt,** or **vĕlŭt,** introduce conditional clauses with no expressed apodosis. These clauses indicate that the action of the principal sentence is such as would be expected under *other* circumstances. The verb of the clause is always subjunctive, and its tense is regulated in accordance with the sequence of tenses.

spērăt sĭbĭ quisquĕ fortūnam prŏindĕ quăsĭ plūrēs fōrtūnātī sint quam infēlĭcēs.

each hopes for good fortune for himself, just as if more were fortunate than unfortunate.

Sēquănī absentĭs Ariovistī crūdēlĭtātem, vĕlŭt sī cōram ădessĕt, horrēbant.

the Sequani stood in dread of the cruelty of Ariovistus when he was absent, just as if he were present.

Obs. The suppressed apodosis may easily be supplied; e.g. *each hopes,* as he would hope *if . . .*; *they stood in dread of him,* just as they would do *if . . . .*

II.—CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES.

(i.) Concessive Clauses.

§ 521. The verb of a concessive clause introduced by quamvīs (*although*), licĕt (*although*), cum (*although*), or ŭt (*although*) is in the subjunctive.

sĕnectūs, quamvīs nōn sĭt grăvīs, tămĕn aufert vĭrĭdĭtātem.
although old age is not burdensome, it nevertheless takes away one's freshness.

Quinctĭŭs quam causam umquam antĕā dixĕrăt, cum annōs quinquāgintā nātŭs essĕt?
what cause had Quinctius ever pleaded before, although he was fifty years old?

ŭt dēsint vīrēs, tămĕn est laudandă vŏluntās.
though strength be lacking, yet willingness is praiseworthy.

NOTE 1.—The poets often construct **quamvīs** with the indicative; *e.g.* **Pollĭō ămăt nostram, quamvīs est rustĭcă, Mūsam,** *Pollio loves my muse, rustic though she be.*

NOTE 2.—**Quamvīs** is also used with adjectives and adverbs as an adverb of degree; *e.g.* **Mĭhĭ făcĭlĕ est quamvīs multōs nōmĭnātim prōferrĕ,** *It would be easy for me to instance any number by name.*

§ 522. Quamquam (*although*) is used with the indicative.

quamquam festīnās, nōn est mŏră longă.
though you are in a hurry, the delay is not great.

NOTE 1.—The subjunctive is freely used after **quamquam** by Tacitus and other late writers.

NOTE 2.—**Quamquam** is sometimes used as an adverb of transition at the beginning of a principal sentence; *e.g.* **Quamquam nōn cărĕt ĭs quī nōn dēsīdĕrăt,** *And yet he lacks not who feels not his want.*

§ 523. Tămetsī (*notwithstanding that, although*) is used with the indicative.

Caesăr, tămetsī ĕrant mūnītĭōnēs magnae, tămĕn cĕlĕrĭtĕr hostēs ex vallō dēturbāvĭt.
although the fortifications were of great size, Caesar nevertheless quickly drove the enemy down from the rampart.

§ 524. Etsī (*although, even if*) and ētiamsī (*although, even if*) are used with the indicative when what is conceded is regarded as a fact, with the subjunctive when something is conceded merely for the sake of argument.

ergō, etsī conferrĕ mănum pŭdŏr īrăquĕ monstrăt, obĭcĭunt portās tămĕn.
therefore, although shame and anger point them to battle, they nevertheless bar the gates.

etsī nĭhĭl ălĭŭd Sullae nĭsī consŭlātum abstŭlissētĭs, tămĕn ĕō vōs contentōs essĕ ŏportēbăt.
even if you had robbed Sulla of nothing except the consulship, you ought, nevertheless, to have been satisfied.

NOTE.—Etsī is sometimes used as an adverb of transition; *e.g.* **Etsī ex partĕ magnā tĭbĭ assentĭō**, *Yet to a great extent I agree with you.*

(ii.) Causal Clauses.

§ 525. The verb of a causal clause introduced by cum (*since*) is always subjunctive.

Aedŭī, cum sē dēfendĕrĕ nōn possent, lēgātōs ăd Caesărem mittunt.
as they were unable to defend themselves, the Aedui sent ambassadors to Caesar.

Obs. The tense of **possent** in the above example is due to **mittunt** being in the historic present; see § 485, *Obs.* 2.

§ 526. After the other causal conjunctions quŏd or quĭă (*because*), quŏnĭam (*since*), quandŏquĭdem (*since*), the indicative is used if the cause is stated as a fact; the subjunctive reports the cause assigned at the time of the action described in the principal sentence; the conjunction may then be rendered by *on the ground that* or *because* (*he*) *said* (or *thought*) *that*.

dŏlĕō quĭă dŏlēs.
I am grieved because you are.

indignābantŭr Rōmānī quŏd victōrĭbŭs victī inferrent armă.
the Romans were indignant at the conquered making war on their conquerors.

mĭhĭ hŏmĭnēs grātŭlābantŭr quŏd hăbĭtūrŭs essem contrā trĭbūnum fūrĭōsum fortem consŭlem.

people were congratulating me on the ground that I should have in opposition to the furious tribune a brave consul.

Obs. If in this last example ĕram were substituted for essem, the speaker would commit himself to an acknowledgment of the consul's bravery, whereas by using the subjunctive he is able to imply that the popular expectation was disappointed.

NOTE.—Quandō is also used (with the indicative), chiefly by Livy and the poets, with the meaning of *since*.

§ 527. The subjunctive is also used after nōn quŏd or nōn quō, the reason they introduce not being stated as a fact, but mentioned only to be rejected.

quĭbuscum mē pugnantem nōn vĭdēbĭtĭs; nōn quō mĭhĭ fās sĭt quidquam dēfŭgĕrĕ, sĕd quĭă nōn nĕcessĕ est.

but you will not find me contending with them; not that I have a right to evade anything, but because it is unnecessary.

(iii.) Temporal Clauses.

§ 528. In temporal clauses which merely define the time of the action described in the principal sentence the verb is indicative; if, however, concession, cause, or purpose is implied, the verb in the temporal clause is subjunctive.

§ 529. After the temporal conjunctions ŭt, ŭbĭ, quandōquĕ, quandōcumquĕ, sĭmŭl āc (or sĭmŭl atquĕ), postquam, the indicative is used, the clauses introduced by these conjunctions being merely temporal.

Ariovistŭs, ŭt Gallōrum cōpĭās vīcĭt, crūdēlĭtĕr impĕrăt.

as soon as he has defeated the forces of the Gauls, Ariovistus governs with cruelty.

ĕō postquam Caesăr pervēnĭt, obsĭdēs pŏposcĭt.

Caesar, after he had arrived there, demanded hostages.

Obs. Often after ŭt, ŭbĭ, sĭmŭl āc, postquam, the perfect indicative is more naturally rendered by the English pluperfect.

NOTE.—Ŭbĭ is found with the subjunctive, chiefly in Livy and later writers, when an action of frequent occurrence is denoted (iterative subjunctive); *e.g.* Hasdrŭbăl Hannĭbălem praefĭcĭēbăt ŭbĭ quĭd fortĭtĕr ăgendum essĕt, *Hasdrubal used to put Hannibal in command whenever anything had to be done with courage.*

§ 530. After **postquam** the perfect indicative is the usual tense; but if the interval is specified the pluperfect is used.

annō octāvō postquam in Hispāniam vēnĕrāt Scīpĭō est interfectŭs.

Scipio was slain in the eighth year after his arrival in Spain.

§ 531. (*a*) **Cum**, *when*, referring to **present** or **future** time, is used with a primary tense of the **indicative.**

(*b*) **Cum**, *at the time when*, referring to **past** time, is used with the imperfect or perfect **indicative** to denote a state or action which is represented as **marking the time** of the event related in the principal sentence.

(*c*) **Cum**, *when*, referring to **past** time, is used with the imperfect or pluperfect **subjunctive** to denote a state or action with which that of the principal sentence is represented as **closely connected.**

(*a*) **cum** hostĭum cōpĭae nōn longē **absunt**, ăgrī cultūră dēsĕrĭtŭr.

when an enemy's forces are near, the cultivation of the land is abandoned.

(*b*) **cum** Caesăr in Gallĭam vēnĭt, princĭpēs ĕrant Haedŭī.

at the time of Caesar's arrival in Gaul, the Haedui were the leading state.

(*c*) Gȳges, **cum** terră **discessissĕt**, descendĭt in illum hĭātum.

Gyges, when the earth had opened, went down into the chasm.

Obs. **Cum**, *when*, with the subjunctive, is often indistinguishable from **cum** causal (§ 525).

NOTE 1:—The historians and other writers occasionally adopt, for the sake of emphasis, an **inversion** whereby the action which would normally be that of the principal sentence is transferred to a temporal clause introduced by **cum** and with its verb in the indicative; *e.g.* **Mūrō circumdărĕ urbem părābăt, cum Săbīnum bellum coeptīs intervēnĭt,** *He was preparing to surround the city with a wall, when the Sabine War interrupted his plans.*

NOTE 2.—When **cum** introduces a **definition** of the action of the principal sentence, it is followed by the indicative; *e.g.* **Cum collēgae Brūtŭs impĕrĭum abrŏgābăt, pŏtĕrăt vĭdērī făcĕrĕ iniustē,** *Brutus may have seemed to be acting unjustly in depriving his colleague of office.*

NOTE 3.—In a temporal clause introduced by **cum**, **repeated action** is expressed by the pluperfect indicative; *e.g.* **Nĕquĕ vērō, cum ălĭquĭd mandārăt, confectum pŭtābăt,** *Nor indeed, when he had given orders for a thing, was he wont to regard it as done.* But the subjunctive is sometimes found, and becomes frequent in late writers.

§ 532. The verb in a temporal clause referring to future time must be in the future or future-perfect, the English use of the present or present-perfect being merely idiomatic.

dē hīs rēbŭs, ōtĭōsī cum ĕrĭmŭs, lŏquēmŭr.

we will speak about these matters when we are at leisure.

mōrātī mēlĭŭs ĕrĭmŭs cum dĭdĭcĕrĭmŭs quae nātūră dēsīdĕrēt.

we shall be better in character when we have learnt what nature requires.

Obs. This rule applies to all indicative clauses referring to the future, irrespective of the conjunction by which they are introduced. Cp. **sī** with the future and future-perfect (§ 511).

§ 533. (*c*) The verb in a clause introduced by **antĕquam** or **prĭusquam** is indicative when mere sequence of events is denoted; but it is **subjunctive** if the action expressed by the clause is **purposely anticipated** or (when the principal sentence is negative) **purposely awaited.**

nĕc prĭŭs illĕ est rĕlictŭs lŏcŭs quam fīnīs est pugnandī factŭs.

nor was that position abandoned before an end was made of fighting.

Rōmānŭs prĭusquam fŏrēs obĭcĕrentŭr irrūpĭt.

the Romans rushed in before the gates could be shut.

Gallī nōn prĭŭs dŭcēs dīmittunt quam ăb hīs sĭt concessum armă ŭtī căpĭant.

the Gauls would not send away the chieftains before the latter had consented to take up arms.

Obs. 1. Often after **antĕquam** or **prĭusquam** the perfect indicative is more naturally rendered by the English pluperfect.

Obs. 2. **Antĕquam, prĭusquam, postquam** may each be written as two words: **antĕ, prĭŭs,** or **post** is frequently placed in the principal sentence, **quam** introducing the clause. (Cp. the first and third of the above examples.)

NOTE.—The subjunctive after **antĕquam** and **prĭusquam** is sometimes iterative (cp. § 529, NOTE), and is by Livy sometimes used in a merely temporal sense.

§ 534. **Dum,** meaning *while* (i.e. *in the time that*), is followed by the present indicative.

dum haec gĕruntŭr, lēgātī discessērunt.
while this was going on, the ambassadors departed.

NOTE 1.—**Dum, dōnĕc,** and **quŏăd,** meaning *so long as,* are followed by the indicative ; *e.g.* **Dum tēcum vixī, dum mē lĕvĭs aurā fērēbăt, haec mĕă pĕr plăcĭdās cumbă cŭcurrīt ăquās,** *So long as I lived with you, so long as the light breeze bore me on, this my bark sailed through calm waters.* Livy uses **dōnĕc** in this sense with the subjunctive.

NOTE 2.—**Dum,** when meaning *so long as* in the sense of *provided that,* is followed by a subjunctive ; *e.g.* **Ōdĕrint, dum mĕtŭant,** *Let them hate, so long as they fear.* In this sense the compound **dummŏdŏ** is also used. The negative in this usage is **nē.**

§ 535. The indicative is used after **dum, dōnĕc,** and **quŏăd,** when they mean *until,* if the relation between the principal sentence and the clause is merely temporal. If, however, the action expressed by the clause is **purposely awaited,** the verb of the clause is **subjunctive** ; **dum** may then often be rendered *in order that meanwhile.*

pugnāvērunt hostēs dum dux interfectŭs est.
the enemy fought until their leader was slain.

obsĭdĭō pĕr paucōs dĭēs măgĭs quam oppugnātĭō fŭīt,
dum vulnŭs dŭcĭs cūrārētŭr.
there was a blockade for a few days rather than an assault, that the general's wound might meanwhile be attended to.

NOTE.—**Dōnĕc,** *until,* is not used with the subjunctive in good prose.

(iv.) Local Clauses.

§ 536. A local clause is introduced by some **relative adverb of place** (§ 240, column 2), such as **ŭbĭ,** *where ;* **quō,** *whither ;* **undĕ,** *whence.* The mood of the verb in the clause is regulated by the same conditions that determine the mood after a relative pronoun (§ 501), *i.e.* the subjunctive is used if the clause implies concession, cause, purpose, or result.

(*a*) **Caesăr ĕōdem undĕ rĕdĭĕrăt prŏfĭcisc**ĭ**tŭr.**
Caesar sets out for the same place whence he had returned.

(*b*) **consŭl lŏcum pĕtĭt undĕ hostem invādăt.**
the consul seeks a position from which to attack the enemy.

Obs. In (*b*) **undĕ** is equivalent to **ŭt indĕ,** *in order that thence.*

(v.) Comparative Clauses.

§ 537. A comparative clause is introduced by some **relative adverb of manner**, such as **ŭt**, *as;* **quam**, *than;* or **āc** in the combinations **pĕrindĕ āc**, *just as;* **nōn sĕcŭs āc**, *not otherwise than.* The mood in a comparative clause is naturally indicative.

cunctă ŭt gestă sunt expōnam.
I will relate everything as it happened.

illŭd, quŏd dixī, nōn dixī sĕcŭs āc sentĭēbam.
what I said, I did not say otherwise than as I thought.

Obs. 1. Adverbs of manner are very commonly used without a dependent clause; *e.g.* **Plancī sălūtem nōn sĕcŭs āc mĕam tŭērī dēbĕō,** *I ought to guard Plancius' welfare no less than my own.* For **quam** so used, see § 593.

Obs. 2. For adverbs of manner followed by **sī**, see under Conditional Clauses (§ 520).

III.—FINAL CLAUSES.

§ 538. A final clause is one that expresses the purpose or end (**fīnĭs**) of the action of the principal sentence; its verb is always in the subjunctive.

The chief conjunctions that introduce final clauses are **ŭt** (*that, in order that*), **nē** (*lest, in order that . . not*), **quō** (*in order that thereby*), **quōmĭnŭs** (*that . . . not*), **quīn** (*that . . . not*).

§ 539. **Ŭt** with a final subjunctive is very frequently rendered by the English infinitive * with *to;* similarly **nē** with a final subjunctive may be rendered by *not to . . .*

ĕquĭtēs mīsĭt ŭt ĕōs quī fūgĕrant persĕquĕrentŭr.
he sent horsemen to pursue those who had fled.

dandă ŏpĕră est nē quă ămīcōrum discĭdĭă fīant.
care must be taken that no estrangements take place between friends.

* Taking this rule together with that relating to dependent commands (§ 492), we have conversely:

With *ask, command, advise,* and *strive,*
By **ŭt** translate infinitive;
But not so after **iŭbĕō,** nor
With **vĕtō** or deponent **cōnŏr.**

NOTE.—A final clause is frequently used parenthetically; *e.g.* **Quōmŏdŏ, ŭt ălĭă ōmittam, mortem fīlĭī tŭlĭt!** *How well (to pass other matters by) he bore his son's death!*

Obs. In negative final clauses **nē** must be used; not only **ŭt nōn,** but **ŭt** followed *by any negative word,* is inadmissible when purpose is denoted.

Thus, instead of **ŭt nēmō** we have **nē quĭs,** *that no one;*
„ „ **ŭt nullŭs,** „ **nē ullŭs,** *that no;*
„ „ **ŭt numquam,** „ **nē umquam,** *that never.*

The second example in § 539 contains an instance of **nē quĭs.**

§ **540.** When **nē** introduces a clause dependent on a verb of *fearing,* it is usually rendered in English by *that* more naturally than by *lest,* **ŭt** in a similar position being rendered by *that . . . not.*

ōrātŏr mĕtŭō nē languescăt sĕnectūtĕ.
I fear that the orator will be enfeebled by old age.

illă dŭŏ vĕrĕŏr ŭt possim tĭbĭ concēdĕrĕ.
I fear that I cannot grant you those two points.

NOTE.—Occasionally **nē nōn** is used instead of **ŭt**; *e.g.* **Tĭmĕō nē nōn impĕtrem,** *I fear I shall not obtain my request.*

§ **541.** **Quō** (properly abl. sing. neut. of **quī,** *who*) is used as a final conjunction chiefly when the clause introduced by it contains a comparative adjective or adverb.

Pompēiŭs, quō făcĭlĭŭs impĕtum Caesărĭs tardārĕt, portās obstrŭĭt.
the more easily to impede Caesar's attack, Pompeius barred the gates.

Obs. The tense of **tardārĕt** in the above example is due to **obstrŭĭt** being in the historic present; cp. § 485, *Obs.* 2.

§ **542.** After verbs of *hindering* or *preventing* the dependent clause is introduced by **quōmĭnŭs** or (if the principal sentence is negative) by **quīn.**

nāvēs ventō tĕnēbantŭr quōmĭnŭs ĭn portum vĕnīrĕ possent.
the ships were hindered by the wind from being able to reach the harbour.

Germānī rĕtĭnērī nōn pŏtŭērunt quīn ĭn nostrōs tēlă conĭcĕrent.
the Germani could not be restrained from hurling darts at our men.

Obs. **Quōmĭnŭs** is equivalent to **ŭt ĕō mĭnŭs**, *in order that . . . the less*, and is sometimes written as two words—**quō mĭnŭs**.

IV.—CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

§ **543.** A consecutive clause is one that expresses the consequence or result of the action of the principal sentence; its verb is always in the subjunctive.

§ **544.** Consecutive clauses are usually introduced by **ŭt** (*that, so that*); if the clause is negative, **ŭt** is followed by **nōn** or some other negative word. A consecutive clause is often preceded by a demonstrative adverb meaning *so*; *e.g.* **ădĕō, ĭtă, sīc, tam.**

mons altissĭmŭs impendēbăt ŭt făcĭlĕ perpaucī obstārĕ possent.
a very high mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily block the way.

accĭdĭt ŭt essĕt lūnă plēnă.
it so happened that the moon was full.

ĭtă vixī ŭt nōn frustrā mē nātum existĭmem.
I have so lived that I consider I was not born in vain.

Obs. **Nē** is inadmissible in consecutive clauses: hence we find **ŭt rēmō, ŭt nullŭs, ŭt numquam**, etc., in consecutive clauses; never (as in final clauses) **nē quĭs, nē ullŭs, nē umquam**, etc. Cp. § 539, *Obs.*

§ **545.** The conjunction **quīn** is used **after a negative** or interrogative principal sentence, and (with the dependent clause which it introduces) expresses an **exception**; the verb in the clause introduced by **quīn** is subjunctive.

(i.) **Quīn** is rendered by *who . . not, that* (relative pronoun) . . . *not.*

nēmō fŭĭt mīlĭtum quīn vulnĕrārētŭr.
there was not one of the soldiers who was not wounded.

hōrum nĭhĭl est quīn intĕrĕăt.
of these there is nothing that does not perish.

(ii.) Quīn is rendered by *but, but that, that* (conjunction) . . . *not.*

făcĕrĕ nōn possum quīn ăd tē mittam.
I cannot but send to you.

fĭĕrī nōn pŏtest quīn haec ĭtă sint.
it cannot but be that these things are so.

quĭd est causae quīn lĭcĕăt hōc dīcĕrĕ?
what is the reason that we may not say this?

(iii.) Quīn is rendered by *from* or *without* with a verb-noun in *-ing.*

lēgātōs nostrōs haud prŏcŭl āfŭĭt quīn vĭŏlārent.
they were not far from outraging our ambassadors.

Trēvĕrī tōtĭŭs hĭĕmĭs nullum tempŭs intermīsērunt quīn trans Rhēnum lēgātōs mittĕrent.
the Treveri let no time in the whole winter go by without sending ambassadors across the Rhine.

Obs. For quīn after verbs of *hindering*, etc., see § 542; for the interrogative adverb quīn, see § 448, NOTE.

§ 546. Quīn with the subjunctive is also used after a negative or interrogative principal sentence expressing doubt, such as nōn est dŭbĭum, nōn dŭbĭtō, quĭs dŭbĭtăt? Quīn so used is rendered by *that.*

nōn dŭbĭtō quīn brĕvī sĭt Trōiă pĕrĭtūră.
I do not doubt that Troy will soon be destroyed.

nĕquĕ ăbest suspīcĭō quīn ipsĕ sĭbĭ mortem cōnscīvĕrĭt.
nor are there wanting grounds for suspecting that he committed suicide (lit. *adjudged death to himself*).

§ 547. In consecutive clauses the ordinary sequence of tenses is so far modified that a perfect subjunctive is often found (especially in Livy) in dependence on a historic principal verb.

ĭs, tormentīs cum lăcĕrārētŭr, ĕō fŭĭt hăbĭtū ōrĭs, ŭt rīdentĭs ētĭam spĕcĭem praebŭĕrĭt.
though he was being torn on the rack, he wore such an expression of countenance that he presented the appearance of a man actually smiling.

Obs. The perfect subjunctive thus used states an actual result rather than a natural consequence.

CHAPTER XLVI.—CLAUSES DEPENDENT ON AN INFINITIVE OR DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE, *ORATIO OBLIQUA*, AND TABLE OF SUBJUNCTIVE USAGES.

I.—CLAUSES DEPENDENT ON AN INFINITIVE OR DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

§ 548. The rules given in the last three chapters apply to clauses directly dependent on some word in the principal sentence. Certain modifications, however, in these rules are required in the case of clauses dependent (*a*) on the infinitive or some word closely connected with it in the "accusative and infinitive" construction (§ 411), or (*b*) on a dependent clause of which the verb is subjunctive.

Obs. 1. A clause dependent on a dependent clause is called a sub-dependent clause.

Obs. 2. The verb in many dependent clauses is indicative. Sub-dependent clauses dependent on such are subject to exactly the same rules as clauses directly dependent on a principal sentence; *e.g.* **Caesăr, etsī intellĕgēbăt quae rēs ĕōs terrērĕt, princĭpem ăd sē vĕnīrĕ iussĭt,** *Although Caesar understood what circumstance alarmed them, he ordered the chieftain to come to him.* (Here **intellĕgēbăt,** the verb of a dependent clause, introduces a dependent question, just as it would if it were a principal verb.)

§ 549. In a clause dependent on an accusative and infinitive phrase or on a subjunctive dependent clause the mood used, if the writer wishes (as he usually does) to bring out this dependence, is subjunctive. (For the tense see § 505).

vīdī sĕnātum, sĭnĕ quō cīvĭtās stārĕ nōn p o s s ĕ t, omnīnō dē cīvĭtātĕ essĕ sublātum.

I saw that the senate, without which I knew the government could not continue, had been altogether removed from the government.

huic impĕrăt quās p o s s ĭ t ădĕăt (§ 493) **cīvĭtātēs.**

he orders him to visit what states he can.

fraus fĭdem ĭn parvīs sībĭ praestrŭĭt, ŭt, cum ŏpĕrae prĕtĭum s ĭ t, cum mercēdĕ magnā fallăt.

deceit wins for itself confidence in small matters, in order that, when it is worth while, it may cheat with great profit.

Obs. Here in the first example the subjunctive **possĕt** implies that the clause beginning **sīnĕ quō** formed part of the speaker's reflection at the past time referred to. The indicative (§ 551, i.) would have been used if the clause had been a parenthetical statement addressed to the audience. So in the second example **quās possĭt** represents a clause in the order as given ("visit what states you can"); and in the third example the temporal clause **cum . . . sĭt** is closely connected in sense with the final clause, and is not an independent mark of time.

§ 550. The sequence of tenses is so far modified in the case of clauses dependent on an accusative and infinitive phrase or subjunctive dependent clause, that a perfect infinitive or perfect subjunctive is usually followed by an imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, even when the principal verb is primary.

crēdō dĕōs immortālēs sparsissĕ ănĭmōs ĭn corpŏră hūmānă ŭt essent quī terrās tŭērentŭr.

I hold that the immortal gods assigned rational souls to human bodies in order that there might exist some beings who should care for the earth.

accusēs ĕum quī sē praesĭdĭō mūnĭĕrĭt ŭt vītam sŭam possĕt dēfendĕrĕ?

are you to accuse him for having protected himself by means of a body-guard in order that he might be able to preserve his life?

§ 551. In clauses dependent on an accusative and infinitive phrase or on a subjunctive dependent clause, the indicative is used under certain circumstances.

(i.) The indicative is used in a relative or other clause which the writer or speaker introduces for the information of his readers or hearers.

dēcrēvĭt sĕnātŭs ŭt ēĭs quī sălūtĭs mĕae causā convēnĕrant ăgĕrentŭr grātĭae.

the senate decreed that thanks should be tendered to those who had assembled on behalf of my welfare.

Obs. 1. If **convēnissent** were substituted for **convēnĕrant**, it would imply that the relative clause formed part of the decree.

(ii.) The indicative is often used in a short relative or other clause which simply defines, and sometimes in a clause introduced by **ŭt** meaning *as*, **dum** meaning *while*, or **cum** used in a merely temporal sense.

haec ipsă, quae dixī, sentĭō fŭissĕ longĭōră.

I feel that what I have said has been itself somewhat long.

quŏtŭs quisquĕ phĭlŏsŏphōrum invĕnītŭr quī sĭt ĭtă mōrātŭs ŭt rătĭō postŭlăt!
how few philosophers are found whose manner of life is such as reason demands!

nōlītĕ arbĭtrārī mē, cum ā vōbīs discessĕrō, nusquam aut nullum fŏrĕ.
you must not think that when I have departed from you I shall be nowhere or non-existent.

Obs. 2. Were the subjunctive used after **ŭt, dum,** or **cum,** the meaning might be mistaken; *e.g.* **cum** might be rendered *although* or *since*.

§ **552.** In the accusative and infinitive construction (§§ 411, 412), the **future infinitive active** may be replaced by **fŏrĕ ŭt** (or **fŭtūrum essĕ ŭt**) and the present or imperfect subjunctive active, and the **future infinitive passive** may be replaced by **fŏrĕ ŭt** (or **fŭtūrum essĕ ŭt**) and the present or imperfect subjunctive passive; the present subjunctive is used when the principal verb is primary, the imperfect subjunctive when the principal verb is historic (§ 485).

spērō fŏrĕ (or **fŭtūrum essĕ**) **ŭt multă discam.**
I hope that I shall learn much.

spērābam fŏrĕ (or **fŭtūrum essĕ**) **ŭt multă discĕrem.**
I hoped that I should learn much.

scĭō fŏrĕ (or **fŭtūrum essĕ**) **ŭt urbs căpĭātŭr.**
I know that the city will be taken.

scĭēbam fŏrĕ (or **fŭtūrum essĕ**) **ŭt urbs căpĕrētŭr.**
I knew that the city would be taken.

Obs. 1. In this usage the subjunctive is consecutive (§ 544), and the clause is sub-dependent, being dependent on the infinitive **fŏrĕ** or **fŭtūrum essĕ.**

Obs. 2. The above construction may be used in place of the future infinitive of any verb, and **must be used in the case of verbs that have no supine base.**

§ **553.** When a conditional sentence with a subjunctive in the apodosis becomes a dependent statement or a dependent question, the subjunctive of the apodosis is represented by a periphrastic form as shown by the examples in the next two sections.

§ **554.** (i.) Direct form: **sī nĕgem, mentĭăr.**
were I to deny it, I should lie.

(*a*) **āiō mē, sī nĕgem, mentītūrum essĕ.**
(*b*) **āiēbam mē, sī nĕgārem, mentītūrum essĕ.**

(*a*) *I declare*
(*b*) *I was declaring* } *that were I to deny it, I should lie.*

(ii.) Direct form: **sī ădessēs, gaudērem.**
if you were present, I should be glad.

(*a*) **dīcō mē,** } **sī ădessēs, gāvīsūrum fŭissĕ.**
(*b*) **dixī mē,** }

(*a*) *I say that, if you were present, I should be glad.*
(*b*) *I said that, if you had (when I spoke) been present, I should have been glad.*

(iii.) Direct form: **sī adfŭissēs, gāvīsŭs essem.**
if you had been present I should have been glad.

(*a*) **dīcō mē,** } **sī adfŭissēs, gāvīsūrum fŭissĕ.**
(*b*) **dixī mē,** }

(*a*) *I say that, if you had been present, I should have been glad.*
(*b*) *I said that, if you had (on a former occasion) been present, I should have been glad.*

§ 555. (i.) Direct form: **quĭd ēvĕnĭăt, sī urbs căpĭātŭr?**
what would happen, were the city to be taken?

(*a*) **mīrŏr quĭd ēventūrum sĭt sī urbs căpĭātŭr.**
(*b*) **mīrābăr quĭd ēventūrum essĕt sī urbs căpĕrētŭr.**

(*a*) *I wonder* } *what would happen, were the city to be taken.*
(*b*) *I was wondering* }

(ii.) Direct form: **quĭd dīcĕrēs, sī ădessēs?**
what would you say if you were there?

scĭō (scĭēbam) quĭd, sī ădessēs, dīcĕrēs.
I know (knew) what you would be saying if you were there.

(iii.) Direct form: **quĭd dixissēs, sī adfŭissēs?**
what would you have said if you had been there?

scĭō (scĭēbam) quĭd, sī adfŭissēs, dictūrŭs fŭĕrĭs.
I know (knew) what you would have said if you had been there.

NOTE 1.—The perfect subjunctive of **essĕ** is here used with the future participle in historic as well as in primary sequence (cp. § 547).

NOTE 2.—Similar constructions are found when the conditional sentence is introduced by **quīn** (after expressions of *doubting*) or by **ŭt** consecutive.

§ 556. When the verb of the apodosis is passive or has no future participle, **fūtūrum fŭissĕ ŭt** and the subjunctive may be used to represent the direct form of § 554 (iii.) and the direct form of § 555 (iii.) may remain unchanged.

dīcō (dixī) fūtūrum fŭissĕ ŭt vincĕrēmŭr, sī bellum indixissēmŭs.
I say (said) that we should have been defeated, if we had declared war.

quŏd illĕ sī rĕpŭdĭassĕt, dŭbĭtātĭs quīn vīs essĕt allātă?
do you doubt that, had he rejected that, force would have been used?

II.—*ORATIO OBLIQUA.*

§ 557. The name **ōrātĭō oblīquă** (*indirect discourse*) is given to the form assumed by speeches and other statements (usually of some considerable length) reported, not in the words actually used, but after some verb of *saying*, *questioning*, or *commanding*, expressed or understood. For examples, see § 562.

§ 558. The use of moods and tenses in oratio obliqua is the same as in the accusative and infinitive construction or in dependent commands; that is to say:—

Statements in a principal sentence of oratio recta are expressed by the **infinitive** in oratio obliqua, and **commands** or verbs in **dependent clauses** of oratio recta are expressed by the **subjunctive** in oratio obliqua.

Special rules (§ 563) apply to questions in oratio obliqua.

§ 559. The following are the changes which take place in mood and tense when a sentence is reported in oratio obliqua dependent on an introductory verb in a historic tense.

PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	Oratio Recta.	Oratio Obliqua.
Statements:	Indic. present	Infinitive present
	„ imperfect „ perfect, plupf.	„ perfect
	„ future „ fut-perf. (act.)	„ future
	„ „ (passive)	Perfect participle with **fŏrĕ**
Apodosis of Conditional Sentences (Active):	Subj. present	Future participle alone or with **essĕ**
	„ impf. or plupf.	Fut. participle with **fŭissĕ**
Apodosis of Conditional Sentences (Passive):	„ present	**fŏrĕ** (or **fŭtūrum essĕ**) **ŭt** with imperf. subj.
	„ impf. or plupf.	**fŭtūrum fŭissĕ ŭt** with imperf. subj.
Commands:	Imperative Subjunctive present or **nōlī** with inf.	Subjunctive imperfect
DEPENDENT CLAUSES:	Indic. pres., imperf., fut. Subj. pres., imperf.	Subjunctive imperfect
	Indic. perf., pluperf., fut.-perf Subj. perf., pluperf.	Subjunctive pluperfect

§ 560. If the introductory verb is primary instead of (as is assumed above) historic, the same rules hold good, except that the present subjunctive is used instead of imperfect, and the perfect subjunctive instead of the pluperfect. The present and perfect subjunctive are also found occasionally after a historic introductory verb, a more graphic character being thus given to the report. Cp. **vĕlĭt** in § 562 (*a*).

§ 561. All verbs and pronouns and possessive adjectives in oratio obliqua are of the **third person**; **hīc, istĕ**, adverbs derived from them (§ 243), and some other adverbs, are changed in the transformation from oratio recta to oratio obliqua.

Oratio Recta.	Oratio Obliqua.
ĕgŏ, mĕŭs, nōs, nostĕr	**sē** (in nominative **ipsĕ**), **sŭŭs**
tū, tŭŭs, vōs, vestĕr	**ĭs** (sometimes **illĕ**), **ēĭŭs**, etc.
hīc, istĕ	**illĕ** (sometimes **hīc** is retained)
nunc	sometimes changed to **tum.**

NOTE 1.—The first person plural is retained in oratio obliqua when it refers to the Roman people.

NOTE 2.—**Sē, sŭŭs,** occasionally represent the second person of the oratio recta, and **ipsum, ipsĭŭs,** the first. Cp. § 563, II. (*b*).

§ 562. **Oratio Recta.**

(*a*) agrum **dăbō** ĭn **Ītălĭā Afrĭcā** Hispānĭā **ŭbĭ** quisquĕ **vŏlĕt**; quī pĕcūnĭam quam agrum **mālŭĕrĭt**, ĕī argentō **sătisfăcĭam.**

I will give land in Italy, Africa, or Spain, wherever each shall wish; I will satisfy with money the man who shall prefer money to land.

(*b*) nē **commīsĕrĭs** **ŭt hīc** lŏcŭs, **ŭbĭ constĭtīmŭs,** ex călămĭtātĕ pŏpŭlī Rōmānī nōmĕn **căpĭăt.**

do not bring it about that this place where we have taken our stand should derive renown from a disaster to the Roman people.

Oratio Obliqua.

agrum **sēsē dătūrum essĕ** ĭn **Ītălĭā Afrĭcā Hispānĭā ŭbĭ** quisquĕ **vĕlĭt** (§ 560); quī pĕcūnĭam quam agrum **mālŭissĕt** ĕī **sē** argentō **sătisfactūrum.**

he would (he said) give land in Italy, Africa, or Spain, wherever each should wish; he would satisfy with money the man who should prefer money to land.

nē **committĕrĕt** **ŭt ĭs** lŏcŭs **ŭbĭ constĭtissent,** ex călămĭtātĕ pŏpŭlī Rōmānī nōmĕn **căpĕrĕt.**

let him not bring it about that the place where they had taken their stand should derive renown from a disaster to the Roman people.

§ 563. **Questions** in oratio obliqua (§ 557) are not immediately dependent (as are "dependent questions," § 483) on a principal verb. The following are the main rules :—

I. Questions in which the verb is **subjunctive** in oratio recta **retain the subjunctive** in oratio obliqua ;

II. (*a*) Questions in the **1st** or **3rd** person **indicative** in oratio recta become **infinitive** in oratio obliqua ;

(*b*) Questions in the **2nd** person **indicative** in oratio recta become **subjunctive** in oratio obliqua.

I. cūr vulnĕrārī **pătĭăr** optĭmē dē **mē** mĕrĭtōs mīlĭtēs ?

why am I to allow troops that have deserved so well of me to be wounded ?

cūr vulnĕrārī pătĕrētŭr optĭmē dē **sē** mĕrĭtōs mīlĭtēs ?

why was he to allow troops that had deserved so well of him to be wounded ?

II. (*a*) sī vĕtĕrĭs contŭmēlĭae oblīviscī **vŏlō**, num ĕtĭam rĕcentĭum iniūrĭārum mĕmōrĭam dēpōnĕrĕ **possum ?**

if I am willing to forget an old insult, can I also lay aside the remembrance of recent wrongs ?

sī vĕtĕrĭs contŭmēlĭae oblīviscī **vellĕt**, num ĕtĭam rĕcentĭum iniūrĭārum mĕmōrĭam dēpōnĕrĕ **possĕ ?**

if he were willing to forget an old insult, could he also lay aside the remembrance of recent wrongs ?

(*b*) sī Ariovistŭs bellum **intŭlĕrĭt**, quĭd tandem **vĕrēbĭmĭnī ?** aut cūr dē **vestrā** virtūtĕ aut dē **mĕā** dīlĭgentĭā **despērātĭs ?**

if Ariovistus makes war, what, pray, will you fear ? or why do you despair of your own valour or my carefulness ?

sī Ariovistŭs bellum **intŭlissĕt**, quĭd tandem **vĕrērentŭr ?** aut cūr dē **sŭā** virtūtĕ aut dē **ipsĭŭs** dīlĭgentĭā **despērārent ?**

if Ariovistus made war, what, pray, would they fear ? or why did they despair of their own valour or his carefulness ?

NOTE.—A question in the second person in O.R. may become infinitive in O.O. if practically equivalent to a negative statement.

ŭbĭ **tū nōbiscum** ăcĭē **conflixistī ?**

when did you fight in battle with us ? (i.e. *you never fought in battle with us*).

ŭbĭ **ĕum sēcum** ăcĭē **conflixissĕ ?**

when had he fought in battle with them ?

Obs. The rules as to tenses in questions in O.O. are the same as for principal statements if the verb is infinitive, and the same as for dependent statements if the verb is subjunctive.

§ 564. TABLE OF SUBJUNCTIVE USAGES.

I.—Subjunctive in Principal Sentences.

		Negative
(A.) HYPOTHETICAL, *i.e.* in apodosis of Conditional Sentences:	see opposite page.	nōn.
§ 517. Potential:	**vĕlim mĭhĭ ignoscās.**	nōn.
(B.) JUSSIVE.		
§ 476. Optative, *i.e.* expressing a wish:	**vălĕant cīvēs mĕī.**	nē.
§ 477. Command or Prohibition (1st pl. or 3rd person):	**ămēmŭs patrĭam.**	nē.
§ 477. Command or Prohibition, 2nd sing. indefinite (rare):	**istō bŏnō ūtārĕ dum adsĭt, cum absĭt nē rēquīrās.**	nē.
§ 478. Colloquial Prohibition, 2nd person (rare in prose):	**nē pertĭmescās. tū nē quaesĭĕrīs.**	nē.
§ 480. Concessive:	**nē sint ĭn sĕnectūtĕ vīrēs.**	nē.
§ 481. Deliberative or Dubitative:	**quĭd ăgam?**	nōn.

II.—Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses.

(C.) § 493. SEMI-DEPENDENT COMMAND:	**vĕlim mĭhĭ ignoscās.**	—
§ 492. DEPENDENT COMMAND:	**tē ōrō ŭt huic ignoscās.**	nē.
(D.) FINAL, *i.e.* expressing Purpose.		
§ 539. With final conjunction:	**ĕdŏ ŭt vīvam.**	nē.
§ 541. „ „ „	**adiŭvā mē quō ĭd fīăt făcĭlĭŭs.**	nē.
§ 542. „ „ „	**hĭems prŏhĭbŭĭt quōmĭnŭs vĕnīrem.**	—
§ 540. „ „ „ after verbs of *fearing*:	**vĕrĕŏr nē vĕnĭant hostēs.**	nē nōn, or ŭt.
§ 535. „ temporal „	**exspectā dum vĕnĭam.**	—
§ 501, *c.* „ relative pronoun:	**lēgātōs mittĭt quī pācem pĕtant.**	nē.
§ 536. „ adverb of place:	**lŏcum pĕtĭt undĕ hostem invādăt.**	nē.
(E.) CONSECUTIVE, *i.e.* expressing Consequence or Result.		
§ 544. With ŭt:	**ĭtă stultŭs est ŭt quidvīs crēdăt.**	nōn.
	accĭdĭt ŭt essĕt lūnă plēnă.	nōn.
§ 545. „ quīn:	**nēmō est quīn hōc crēdăt.**	—
§ 501, *d.* „ relative pronoun *:	**quĭs tam praeceps est quī nĕgĕt?**	nōn.
§ 503. „ „ „	**sunt quī dīvĭtĭās nōn hăbĕant.**	nōn.

* Or with relative adverb of place (§ 536).

Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses (*continued*).

(F.) CONDITIONAL, *i.e.* in protasis of Conditional Sentences.

		Negative.
§ 512. With subjunctive in apodosis:	sī hōc crēdās, errēs.	nĭsĭ or sī nōn.
§ 513. „ „ „	sī hōc crēdĕrēs, errārēs.	
„ „ „	sī hōc crēdĭdissēs, errāvissēs.	
§ 519. With sī = *to see if*:	sī hostēs ădīrent exspectābāmŭs.	—
§ 520. „ quăsĭ, vĕlŭt sī, etc.:	illum horrĕō vĕlŭt sī adsĭt.	nōn.

(G.) CIRCUMSTANTIAL, *i.e.* in Concessive, Causal, and Temporal Clauses.

§ 521. Concessive, with quamvīs, lĭcĕt, ŭt, cum (*although*):	hunc, quamvīs sĭt stultŭs, ămō.	nōn.
	ŭt dēsint vīrēs, vŏluntās ădest.	nōn.
§ 501, *a*. Concessive, with quī*:	tū nōn adfŭistī, quī illum dĭem sŏlĭtŭs essēs ŏbīrĕ.	nōn.
§ 525. Causal, with cum (*since*):	cum mē dēfendĕrĕ nĕquĕam, ăd tē vĕnĭō.	nōn.
§ 501, *b*. „ „ quī*:	tū, quī nĭhĭl prōvĭdĕrĭs, trĕpĭdās.	nōn.
§ 531. Temporal, historic tense with cum (occurrence in principal sentence being closely connected):	Gўgēs, cum terrā discessissĕt, descendĭt ĭn illum hĭātum.	nōn.

(H.) REPORTING or OBLIQUE

§ 483. (a) Dependent (*i.e.* Reported) Question:	quaerō quĭd Marcŭs ăgăt.
§ 505. Reported Description:	Caesăr obsĭdēs quī ăd ĕōs perfŭgissent pŏposcĭt.
§ 518. „ Condition:	templum dēvōvĭt sī hostēs fŭdissĕt.
§ 526. „ Cause:	Sōcrătēs accūsātŭs est quŏd iūventūtem corrumpĕrĕt.
§ 549. (b) In a clause dependent on a dependent subjunctive:	huic impĕrăt quās possĭt ădĕăt cīvĭtātēs.
§ 549. (c) In a clause dependent on an accusative and infinitive phrase:	vīdī sĕnātum, sĭnĕ quō cīvĭtās stārĕ nōn possĕt, sublātum.
§ 559. In a dependent clause in oratio obliqua:	see examples in § 562.

* Or with a relative adverb of place (§ 536).

CHAPTER XLVII. — CONSTRUCTIONS AND USAGES OF CERTAIN WORDS.

§ 565. In the preceding chapters the general principles of syntax and the construction of classes of words have been set out and illustrated. The present chapter deals with some noticeable constructions and usages of individual words. These constructions may, in some cases, be easily seen to be governed by general principles, while in others the connection is not at first sight obvious, and in some few instances cannot with certainty be traced.

I.—SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 566. **Ŏpŭs**, *work*, constructed with an ablative of that with which the work has to be done (instrument, § 374), signifies (*there is*) *need of*.

măgistrātĭbŭs ŏpŭs est.

there is need of magistrates (lit. *there is work to be done with magistrates*).

Ŏpŭs is also used as a secondary predicate in the sense of *necessary*.

dŭcēs nōbīs ŏpŭs sunt.

we need leaders (lit. *leaders are necessary for us*).

§ 567. **Ūsŭs**, *use*, has a construction and meaning similar to that of ŏpŭs with the ablative. Cp. § 586.

nunc vīrĭbŭs ūsŭs.

now we need strength.

II.—ADJECTIVES.

§ 568. Some **adjectives**, instead of qualifying as a whole the substantives of which they are the attributes, often **specify certain parts** of those substantives. The adjectives commonly so used are :—

prīmŭs, *first*	mĕdĭŭs, *middle*	extrēmŭs, *last*	
summŭs, *highest*	infĭmŭs or īmŭs,	*lowest*	rĕlĭquŭs, *remaining*

They are commonly rendered by English substantives, thus : prīmum vēr, *the beginning of spring ;* mĕdĭă urbs, *the middle of the city ;* extrēmă ōrātĭō, *the end of the speech ;* summŭs mons, *the top of the mountain ;* infĭmă āră, *the lowest part of the altar ;* rĕlĭquă praedă, *the rest of the booty.*

§ 569. **Sĭmĭlĭs**, *like*, is used with a genitive or dative of that with which its substantive is compared. A person is more commonly in the genitive; a thing is in the genitive or dative indifferently.

Attĭcōrum sĭmĭlēs essĕ **vŏlŭmŭs.**
we wish to be like the Attic writers.

quĭd hăbĕt illĭŭs carmĭnĭs sĭmĭlĕ haec ōrātĭō?
what resemblance has this speech to that poem?

nĭhĭl est mortī tam sĭmĭlĕ quam somnŭs.
nothing is so like death as sleep.

NOTE.—**Dissĭmĭlĭs**, *unlike*, is constructed like **sĭmĭlĭs**.

§ 570. The following **adjectives** are used **with an ablative**:—**dignŭs**, *worthy* (*of*); **indignŭs**, *unworthy* (*of*); **praedĭtŭs**, *endowed* (*with*); **frētŭs**, *relying* (*on*); **contentŭs**, *content* (*with*); **laetŭs**, *rejoicing* (*in*).

Rhyme:—Construct with ablative **contentŭs, laetŭs, Dignŭs, indignŭs, praedĭtŭs,** and **frētŭs.**

glandĕ sŭēs laetī rĕdĕunt.
the swine return gladdened with acorns.

dignum laudĕ vĭrum Mūsă vĕtăt mŏrī.
the Muse forbids the man who is worthy of praise to die.

§ 571. **Aptŭs**, *fit*, and **ĭdōnĕŭs**, *suitable*, are used with the dative, or with **ăd** and the accusative.

castră ĕrant ăd bellum dūcendum aptissĭmă.
the camp was well suited for prolonging the war.

Caesăr castrīs ĭdōnĕum lŏcum dēlēgĭt.
Caesar chose a spot suitable for a camp.

§ 572. **Dignŭs, indignŭs, aptŭs, ĭdōnĕŭs** are followed by **quī** and the subjunctive.

nullă vĭdēbātŭr aptĭŏr persōnă quae dē sĕnectūtĕ lŏquĕrētŭr.
there seemed no character more fit to discourse on old age.

§ 573. **Ălĭŭs** (§ 81) is frequently repeated in a different case, or followed by an adverb formed from it. The translation of the doubled ălĭŭs is to be noted.

ălĭŭs ĭn ălĭā est rē măgĭs ūtĭlĭs.
one is more useful in one business, another in another.

ălĭī ălĭō mittēbantŭr.
some were being sent one way, some another.

NOTE.—**Ălĭŭs** followed by **atquĕ** or **āc** is used in the sense of *other than; e.g.* **Hī longē ălĭā rătĭōnē āc rēlĭquī Gallī bellum gĕrunt,** *These wage war in a manner very different from the rest of the Gauls.*

NUMERALS.

§ 574. The plural of **ūnŭs** is used with substantives plural in form and singular in meaning; *e.g.* **ūnae littĕrae,** *one letter* (*epistle*); **ūnă castră,** *one camp.* (Distributives are used with these substantives for numbers above 1, see § 99.)

§ 575. In poetry **distributives**, singular or plural, are sometimes substituted for the corresponding cardinal numerals.

ternō consurgunt ordĭnĕ rēmī.
the oars rise in three tiers.

tŏt lectī prŏcĕrēs tĕr dēnīs nāvĭbŭs ībant.
in thrice ten ships an equal number of chosen nobles were voyaging.

III.—PRONOUNS.

§ 576. The **personal pronouns** ĕgŏ, tū, are seldom used in the nominative except for emphasis or contrast.

vōs ītĕ dŏmum, ĕgŏ rūs ībō.
you go home, I will go into the country.

Obs. For the distinction between the two forms of the genitive plural (**nostrum, vestrum,** and **nostrī, vestrī**), see § 395, *Obs.*

§ 577. In **simple** sentences **sē, sŭŭs,** refer to the subject.

Caesăr sē ăd sŭōs rĕcēpĭt.
Caesar returned (lit. *took himself back*) *to his men.*

NOTE.—**Sŭŭs** sometimes (provided no ambiguity thereby arises) refers to some word other than the subject; *e.g.* **Hannĭbălem sŭī cīvēs ē cīvĭtātĕ ēiēcērunt,** *His fellow-citizens expelled Hannibal from the state.*

Obs. In the accusative and infinitive construction **sē, sŭŭs,** refer to the subject of the principal verb.

§ 578. In **complex** sentences the question arises as to whether **sē, sŭŭs,** are *in the dependent clause* to be used in reference to the subject of the principal sentence or to that of the dependent clause.

Classical usage is not on this point altogether uniform, but the following rules generally hold good:—

(1) **Sē** or **sŭŭs** in a dependent clause refers to the subject of the principal sentence if the dependent clause has its verb in the subjunctive mood, and is (*a*) a final clause or dependent command, (*b*) a *reported* description, condition, cause, or a dependent question (§ 564, C, D, H).

(*a*) **pĕtĭērunt princĭpēs ŭt sĭbĭ dē sŭā sălūtĕ cum ĕō ăgĕrĕ lĭcērĕt.**

the chiefs begged that it might be permitted them to treat with him concerning their lives.

(*b*) **dĕcĭmă lĕgĭō Caesărī grātĭās ēgĭt quŏd dē sē optĭmum iūdĭcĭum fēcissĕt.**

the tenth legion tendered its thanks to Caesar for having formed a high opinion of it.

hī abs tē rĕquīrunt cūr sē dēlēgĕrĭs.

these men are inquiring of you why you selected them.

(2) **Sē** or **sŭŭs** in dependent clauses other than the above refers to the subject of the clause; **ĭs, ēiŭs,** being used to refer to the subject of the principal sentence.

ĕō impĕtū mīlĭtēs ĭērunt ŭt hostēs sē fŭgae mandārent.

the troops charged with such force that the enemy betook themselves to flight.

hunc, cum ăd ĕōs Caesărĭs mandātă dēferrĕt, hostēs comprĕhendērunt.

the enemy, when he brought them Caesar's commands, took him prisoner.

Obs. Of the above examples the first contains a consecutive, the latter a temporal, clause.

§ 579. **Sē, sŭŭs,** are used in reference to an **indefinite subject.**

dēformĕ est dē sē ipsum praedĭcārĕ.

it is bad form to brag about oneself.

nōn lĭcĕt sŭī commŏdī causā nŏcērĕ altĕrī.

it is not permissible to injure another for one's own advantage.

For the case of **ipsum,** see § 581 and § 408.

§ 580. **Hīc, illĕ**, etc., used as subject of a sentence containing a secondary predicate, are attracted into the gender of that predicate.

hōc ŏpŭs, hīc lăbŏr est.
this is the toil, this is the hard work.

§ 581. When used with a reflexive pronoun, **ipsĕ** agrees with the subject of the sentence, unless the object is the emphatic word.

mē ipsĕ consōlŏr.
I soothe my own grief.

omnĕ ănĭmăl sē ipsum dīlĭgĭt.
every living thing loves itself.

Obs. Thus, in the first example above, **mē ipsĕ consōlŏr** means *it is from myself, not from others, that I derive consolation:* whereas **mē ipsum consōlŏr** would mean *it is myself, not others, that I console.*

§ 582. **Quī** frequently stands at the beginning of a Latin sentence, where English idiom requires a personal or demonstrative pronoun with or without *and*. This is especially the case when **quī** is followed by **cum** (*when*).

quā rē cognĭtā, Caesăr prŏfĭciscī contendĭt.
on learning this, Caesar hastens his departure.

quĭbŭs ex nāvĭbŭs cum essent expŏsĭtī mīlĭtēs, Mŏrĭnī convēnērunt.
and when the troops had disembarked from these ships, the Morini assembled.

§ 583. **Quĭs** following **nescĭō**, *I know not*, forms a phrase (**nescĭō quĭs**) equivalent to *some one.*

laudābăt hŏmō doctŭs phĭlŏsŏphōs nescĭō quōs.
a learned man used to praise some philosophers (lit. *I know not what philosophers*).

Obs. Thus used **nescĭō quĭs** does not affect the mood of the verb, and is sometimes written as one word—**nescĭōquĭs.** Distinguish **nescĭō quĭs ădest,** *some one is here*, from **nescĭō quĭs adsĭt,** *I do not know who is here* (dependent question).

§ 584. **Quisquĕ** used after a **superlative** adjective is translated by *all.*

optĭmŭs quisquĕ hōc sentĭt.
all the best men are of this opinion.

IV.—VERBS.

§ 585. Certain verbs are differently rendered according as they are constructed with a **direct object** in the accusative or an **indirect object** in the dative; the commonest are **cāvĕō, mĕtŭō** and **tĭmĕō, consŭlō, mŏdĕrŏr** and **tempĕrō.**

cāvē cānem, *beware of the dog*
mĕtŭunt dŏmĭnum servī, *the slaves fear their master*
poenam tĭmĕō, *I fear punishment*
consŭlō ōrācŭlum, *I consult the oracle*
mŏdĕrŏr ĕquum, *I manage a horse*
Iuppĭtĕr mundum tempĕrāt, *Jupiter rules the world*
cāvē tĭbĭ, *look out for yourself*
mĕtŭĕ tŭīs, *be anxious about your people*
urbī tĭmĕō, *I am anxious about the city*
consŭlĕ fāmae tŭae, *have regard to your reputation*
mŏdĕrŏr īrae, *I set bounds to my anger*
tempĕrō linguae, *I restrain my tongue*

NOTE.—**Nūbō,** *I marry* (said of the woman), is also constructed with a dative; *e.g.* **Porcĭă Brūtō nupsĭt,** *Porcia married Brutus.*

§ 586. The **verbs ūtŏr,** *I use;* **ăbūtŏr,** *I misuse;* **fungŏr,** *I perform;* **frŭŏr,** *I enjoy,* are constructed **with an ablative** representing the direct object of the corresponding English verbs; an ablative is also used with **dignŏr,** *I deem myself worthy of;* **pŏtĭŏr,** *I gain possession of;* **vescŏr,** *I feed on.*

Rhyme:—Put ablative with dignŏr, vescŏr, ūtŏr,
And fungŏr, frŭŏr, pŏtĭŏr, ăbūtŏr.

impĕdīmentīs castrisquĕ nostrī pŏtītī sunt.
our men gained possession of the baggage and camp.

fungăr ĭnānī mūnĕrĕ.
I shall perform a fruitless task.

rĕcordātĭōnĕ nostrae ămīcĭtĭae frŭŏr.
I enjoy the remembrance of our friendship.

Obs. With the above verbs the ablative was originally instrumental; *e.g.* **pŏtĭŏr,** *I make myself powerful by means of.*

NOTE 1.—**Pŏtĭŏr** is sometimes found with a genitive; *e.g.* **Vexillī hostēs pŏtītī sunt,** *The enemy gained possession of the standard.*

NOTE 2.—**Nītŏr,** *I endeavour* or *lean,* is in the latter sense used with an ablative; *e.g.* **Iŭvĕnĭs hastā nītĭtŭr,** *The youth is leaning on his spear.*

§ 587. Three common verbs, (*a*) **circumdō**, (*b*) **dōnō**, and (*c*) **mūtō**, have each **two constructions**, as shown in the following examples:—

(*a*) **impĕrātŏr armātōs contĭōnī circumdĕdĭt.**
the general placed armed men around the meeting.
impĕrātŏr oppĭdum vallō ĕt fossā circumdĕdĭt.
the general surrounded the town with a mound and trench.

(*b*) **Caesăr praedam exercĭtŭī dōnăt.**
Caesar presents the booty to the army.
Quintum cŏrōnā dōnastī.
you presented Quintus with a wreath.

(*c*) **mītĭbŭs mūtārĕ quaerō tristĭă.**
I seek to change harsh words for mild.
saepĕ Lŭcrētĭlem mūtăt Lўcaeō Faunŭs.
Faunus often chooses Lucretilis in place of Lycaeus.

Obs. In both constructions of **mūtō** the ablative is that of price (§ 377); in the former the accusative is the thing *given* in exchange, in the latter it is the thing *taken* in exchange.

§ 588. The construction of two impersonal verbs, **intĕrest** and **rĕfert**, both meaning *it concerns*, calls for special attention.

(*a*) The **person or thing concerned**, if represented by an English personal pronoun of the first or second person or reflexive pronoun of the third person, is expressed by the **ablative singular feminine** of the corresponding **possessive adjective** (**mĕā, nostrā**; **tŭā, vestrā**; **sŭā**), and (with **intĕrest** only) by the **genitive** of other words.

(*b*) The **extent** to which the person or thing is concerned is expressed by a **genitive** of value (§ 363) or an accusative neuter singular (§ 341); *e.g.* **parvī, nihĭl, quĭd?**

(*c*) **That which concerns** the person or thing is expressed (with **rĕfert** only) by a neuter singular pronoun (**hōc, ĭd, illŭd**), or (with either verb) by an infinitive or a dependent question, or (with **intĕrest** only) by a final clause introduced by **ŭt** or **nē**.

quĭd hōc tŭā rĕfert?
in what respect does this concern you?
tŭā ĕt mĕā magnī intĕrest tē vălērĕ.
it is of great importance to you and to me that you should be well

quĭd illīŭs intĕrest ŭbĭ sīs ?

what does it matter to him where you are?

mĕā magnī intĕrest tē ŭt vĭdĕam.

it is of great importance to me to see you.

Obs. The possessive adjectives **mĕā, tŭā,** etc., agree with **rē** (abl. sing. of **rēs**) in **rē-fert,** the original sense having probably been *it bears in the direction of my affairs.*

§ 589. Verbs of *hoping, promising,* and *threatening* (**spērō, prōmittō, pollĭcĕŏr, mĭnŏr**) are usually constructed with an accusative and future infinitive (or future participle).

spērăt ădŏlescens dĭū sē victūrum.

a young man hopes to live long.

Caesăr pollĭcĭtŭs est sĭbĭ ĕam rem cūrae fŭtūram.

Caesar promised that the matter should receive his attention (lit. *be a care to him*).

Obs. The above rule would be unnecessary were it not for the idiomatic use of the English present infinitive. In Latin the present or perfect infinitive is used only where the sense requires it; *e.g.* **Spērō tĭbĭ mē causam prŏbassĕ,** *I hope I have proved my case to you.*

§ 590. With an infinitive passive **coeptŭs sum,** the passive form of **coepī,** *I began,* is used.

contemnī coeptī ĕrant Rōmānī ā fīnĭtĭmīs pŏpŭlīs.

the Romans had begun to be despised by the neighbouring tribes.

V.—ADVERBS.

§ 591. **Noticeable usages** of some of the adverbs enumerated in §§ 238—239 are here illustrated.

ceu . . . . **Anchīsae făcĭēs fŭgĭt ceu fūmŭs ĭn aurās.**
the form of Anchises passed away like smoke into the air.

pĕrindĕ . . . **hōc pĕrindĕ atquĕ ĕgŏ pŭtāram ēvēnīt.**
this turned out exactly as I had expected.

sēcĭŭs or **sētĭŭs** (§ 252) } **nĭhĭlō sēcĭŭs Caesăr ŏpŭs perfĭcĕrĕ constĭtŭit.**
none the less Caesar determined to complete the work.

ultrō . . . . **quŏd antēā pĕtentĭbŭs dēnĕgārăt, ultrō pollĭcĭtŭs est.**
what he had previously refused to their entreaty he promised unasked.

usquĕ . . . Caesăr usquĕ ăd castră hostĭum accessĭt.
Caesar advanced right up to the enemy's camp.

nē . . . quĭdem. nē nunc quĭdem vīrēs dēsīdĕrō.
not even now do I feel the want of strength.

The emphatic word is placed between **nē** and **quĭdem**. Except in connection with **quĭdem**, **nē** is constructed with an imperative (§ 473) or subjunctive (§ 564).

nē or **nae . . nē ĕgŏ vĕlim tĭbĭ plăcērĕ.**
(with pronouns) *I should indeed like to please you.*

For **ŭtĭnam**, see § 476; for the adverbs of interrogation, see §§ 450, 452—454, 487—491.

§ 592. **Haud**, *not*, is used with adjectives and adverbs, and **reverses** their meaning. It is rarely found with verbs, except in the phrase **haud** scĭō ăn (§ 491).

haud ignōtae bellī artēs.
the art of war was by no means unknown (i.e. *well known*).

haud făcĭlĕ dixĕrim cūr haec ĭtă sint.
I should find it difficult to say why these things are so.

Obs. **Nōn** is the ordinary negative with adjectives, adverbs, and verbs alike.

§ 593. **Quam** is very commonly used after **comparative** adjectives and adverbs in the sense of *than*.

(*a*) When two persons or things are compared, the substantives denoting them must, if **quam** is used, be in the same case.

ŏdĭīs prŏpĕ māiōrĭbŭs certārunt quam vīrĭbŭs.
they fought with almost greater hatred than strength.

For the ablative of the standard of comparison, see § 387.

(*b*) When the subject of comparison is the degree in which two adjectives are respectively applicable to a substantive, **măgĭs** is used with the former adjective, or both adjectives are comparative. In both constructions the gender, number, and case of the two adjectives are the same.

hōrum corpŏră magnă măgĭs quam firmă sunt.
their bodies are large rather than strong.

dictātōrĭs trĭumphŭs clārĭŏr quam grātĭŏr fŭĭt.
the dictator's triumph was more brilliant than popular.

§ 594. **Quam**, with or without **possum**, used with **superlative** adjectives and adverbs, is represented by the English phrase *as . . . as possible.*

Caesăr quam maxĭmīs pŏtest ĭtĭnĕrĭbŭs ĭn Gallĭam contendĭt.
Caesar hastens into Gaul by means of as long marches as possible.

Caesăr quam angustissĭmē Pompēium contĭnēbăt.
Caesar was hemming Pompeius in as closely as possible.

§ 595. The adverbs **amplĭŭs, plūs, mĭnŭs,** are used with numerals in the sense of *more than, less than.*

hostēs nōn amplĭŭs octingentōs ĕquĭtēs hăbŭērunt.
the enemy had no more than 800 *horsemen.*

cĕcĭdērĕ dŭŏ mīlĭă haud mĭnŭs pĕdĭtum.
there fell not less than 2000 *infantry.*

NOTE.—The above is the usual construction of these words with numerals, but the ablative is also found with **amplĭŭs**; *e.g.* **Amplĭŭs hōrīs sex pugnābātŭr,** *The battle went on for more than six hours.* **Plūs** may be followed by **quam.**

§ 596. **Prŏpĭŭs,** *nearer;* **proxĭmē,** *nearest,* may be used (like **prŏpĕ**) as **prepositions** with the accusative.

prŏpĭŭs pĕrīcŭlum fŭērunt quī vīcērunt.
those who conquered were nearer danger.

VI.—PREPOSITIONS.

§ 597. The following are examples of the more **noticeable** or **idiomatic usages** of prepositions. The primary or ordinary meanings are not illustrated here if sufficiently obvious from the list in §§ 255—257.

§ 598. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE ONLY.

ăd, *to* . . . **praesĭdĭum ăd pontem rĕlictum est.**
a garrison was left at the bridge.

omnĭă ăd nūtum ĕt ăd vŏluntātem ēiŭs factă sunt.
everything was done in accordance with his will and pleasure.

ăd, *to . . .* vĭr bŏnŭs est, sĕd nĭhĭl **ă d** Persĭum.
he is a good man, but nothing compared with Persius.

omnēs ă d ū n u m caesī sunt.
they were all slain to a man.

ăpŭd, *with* (a person), *at the house of.* rēs ăgĭtŭr **ă p ŭ d** praetōrem pŏpŭlī Rōmānī ĕt **ă p ŭ d** sēvērissĭmōs iūdĭcēs.
the case is being heard before a praetor of the Roman people and before a very strict jury.

ă p ŭ d Xĕnŏphontem Cȳrŭs haec dīcĭt.
Cyrus speaks thus in Xenophon (i.e. *in a book by Xenophon*).

ergā, *towards* (a person). ēōdem mŏdō **e r g ā** ămīcum affectī essĕ dēbēmŭs quō **e r g ā** nosmĕt ipsōs.
we ought to be disposed towards a friend exactly as we are towards ourselves.

intĕr, *between, among.* ămīcī cōlent **i n t ĕ r s ē** āc dīlĭgent.
friends will honour and esteem one another.

ŏb, *because of.* exĭlĭum mĭhĭ **ŏ b** ŏcŭlōs versābātŭr.
exile was ever before my eyes.

pĕnĕs, *in the power of.* ēlŏquentĭă ēōs ornăt **p ĕ n ĕ s** quōs est.
eloquence graces those in whose possession it is.

pĕr, *through* **p ĕ r** tē dĕōs ōrō.
I entreat thee by the gods.

Obs. In this usage **pĕr** is frequently separated from its accusative, as above.

stĕtissĕ p ĕ r Trĕbōnĭum quōmĭnŭs oppĭdō pŏtīrentŭr vĭdēbātŭr.
it seemed to have been owing to Trebonius that they did not gain possession of the town.

praetĕr, *beyond.* **hōc nēmĭnī p r ă e t ĕ r mē** vĭdētŭr.
this seems so to no one except me.

sĕcundum, *following on.* Caesăr sex lĕgĭōnēs **s ĕ c u n d u m** flūmĕn duxĭt.
Caesar led six legions along by the river.

s ĕ c u n d u m nātūram vīvāmŭs.
let us live in accordance with nature.

sŭprā, *above.* caesă ĕō dĭē **s ŭ p r ā** mīlĭă vīgintī.
above 20,000 *were slain on that day.*

§ 599. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE ONLY.

ā, ăb, *from* or (of the agent) *by*.

Gallĭă attingĭt **ăb** Sēquănīs **ēt** Helvētĭīs flūmĕn Rhēnum.
Gaul reaches the river Rhine on the side of the Sequani and Helvetii.

sŭmŭs impărātī cum ā mīlĭtĭbŭs **tum ā** pĕcūnĭā.
we are unprepared both in respect of troops and in respect of money.

commūnĕ est quŏd nĭhĭlō **măgĭs ăb** adversārĭīs **quam ā** nōbīs **făcĭt.**
that is neutral which sides no more with our opponents than with us.

cum, *with* . . vērĭtās **cum hōc făcĭt.**
truth is on his side.

dē, *down from* templum sŏlĭdō **dē** marmŏrĕ pōnam.
I will build a temple of solid marble.

surgunt dē noctĕ lătrōnēs.
robbers rise by night.

concessum ăb nōbĭlĭtātĕ **dē** consŭlĕ plēbēĭō.
a concession was made by the nobles with regard to a plebeian consul.

ē, ex, *out of* . Bŏĭī **ex** ĭtĭnĕrĕ nostrōs aggressī sunt.
the Boii attacked our men while on the march.

nĭhĭl est tam mĭsĕrābĭlĕ quam **ex** bĕātō mĭsĕr.
nothing is so pitiable as a man who is wretched after being happy.

ĕrăt **ē** rĕgĭōnĕ oppĭdī collĭs.
there was a hill opposite the town.

hōc **ē** rēpublĭcā fēcī.
I did this in the interest of the state.

prae, *in front of*. **prae** cētĕrīs Cătō ĭn sĕnectūtĕ flōrŭĭt.
beyond all others Cato was at his prime in old age.

nĕc lŏquī **prae** maerōrĕ pŏtŭĭt (with negatives only).
nor could he speak for grief.

prō, *before, instead of*. consĭlĭum **prō** tempŏrĕ **ēt prō** rē căpĕ.
take counsel in accordance with the occasion and the circumstances.

proelĭum atrōcĭŭs quam prō nŭmĕrō pugnantĭum fŭĭt.
the battle was more deadly than would be expected for the number of combatants.

§ 600. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.

ĭn (with acc.), *into.* rārō ĭn ĕquum ascendō.
I seldom mount a horse.

exercĭtŭs ĭn dĭēs sĕnescēbăt.
the army was wasting away from day to day.

Cĭcĕrō quattŭŏr ōrātĭōnēs ĭn Cătĭlīnam hăbŭĭt.
Cicero made four speeches against Catilina.

ĭn (with abl.), *in.* impĕrātŏr ĭn ĕquō sĕdēbăt.
the general was on horseback.

Caesăr respondĭt sē quŏd ĭn Nervĭīs fēcissĕt factūrum.
Caesar answered that he would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.

sŭb (with acc.), *up to.* sŭb montem succēdunt mīlĭtēs.
the troops march up to the foot of the mountain.

Pompēiŭs sŭb noctem nāvēs solvĭt.
Pompeius weighed anchor at (i.e. *just after*) *nightfall.*

sŭb (with abl.), *below, under.* Ariovistŭs sŭb montĕ consēdĭt.
Ariovistus took up a position at the foot of the mountain.

ădhūc sŭb iūdĭcĕ lĭs est.
the case is still before the court.

VII.—CONJUNCTIONS.

CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS (§ 261).

§ 601. Of the conjunctions meaning *and* the most usual is ĕt, which is used to connect words, clauses, and sentences; -quĕ usually connects words, and is often used in the case of two objects commonly associated, *e.g.* sĕnātŭs pŏpŭlusquĕ Rōmānŭs, *the senate and people of Rome.*

Atquĕ or **āc** properly means *and indeed, and especially*, though often used by way of variety for **ĕt**. (**Atquĕ** is used before a vowel or a consonant, **āc** before consonants only.)

dīīs immortālĭbŭs hăbendă est grātĭă, atquĕ ipsī Iŏvī Stătōrī.
thanks must be rendered to the immortal gods, and especially to Jupiter the Stayer himself.

intrā moenĭă atquĕ ĭn sĭnū urbĭs sunt hostēs.
within the walls, and indeed in the very heart of the city, there are foes.

§ **602.** In lists and enumerations, **ĕt** (if used at all) is usually inserted before each item after the first, instead of before the last only.

sunt mōrōsī ĕt anxĭī ĕt īrācundī ĕt difficĭlēs sĕnēs.
old men are peevish, uneasy, wrathful, and hard to please.

Obs. Often, however, the items are enumerated without any conjunction being used ; this usage is known as "asyndeton" (§ 611).

§ **603.** Two attributes of a substantive must be connected by a conjunction.

mĭhĭ cum Marcō Crassō multae ĕt magnae contentĭōnēs fŭērunt.
I have had many great contests with Marcus Crassus.

§ **604.** Of the commoner conjunctions usually rendered *but*, **sĕd** limits or corrects a preceding statement, introducing something in contrast to it, whereas **autem** merely denotes transition to a fresh thought; **ăt** is strongly adversative, and often means *but, it may be objected.*

difficĭlĕ factū est, sĕd cōnābŏr tămĕn.
it is difficult to do, but I will nevertheless try.

vītă dēsertă ăb ămīcīs nōn pŏtest essĕ iūcundă; sĕd haec hactĕnŭs; constĭtŭendī autem sunt quăsī termĭnī dīlĭgendī.
life devoid of friends cannot be pleasant; but enough of this (lit. *these things so far*); *now the bounds* (*so to speak*) *of affection have to be determined.*

mălĕ iūdĭcāvĭt pŏpŭlŭs; ăt iūdĭcāvĭt: nōn dēbŭĭt; ăt pŏtŭĭt.
"*the people decided amiss*"; "*but it did decide*": "*it ought not to have done so*": "*but it had the power.*"

§ 605. Of the conjunctions meaning *or*, **aut** contrasts things essentially opposed; **vĕl** and the enclitic **-vĕ** leave the choice open as to some detail.

cĭtă mors vĕnĭt aut victōrĭă laetă.
swift death comes or else joyful victory.

tantă vīs prŏbĭtātĭs est ŭt ĕam vĕl ĭn ēīs quōs numquam vīdĭmŭs vĕl ĭn hostĕ dīlĭgāmŭs.
so great is the force of goodness that we esteem it either in those whom we have never seen or in an enemy.

ămīcī rēgĭs dŭŏ tresvĕ perdīvĭtēs sunt.
two or three friends of the king are very rich.

§ 606. A second final clause is, if negative, introduced by **nēvĕ** or **neu.**

Caesăr mīlĭtēs cŏhortātŭs est ŭtī sŭae pristĭnae virtūtĭs mĕmōrĭam rētĭnērent neu perturbārentŭr ănĭmō.
Caesar encouraged his troops to preserve the remembrance of their former valour and not to be troubled in mind.

§ 607. Alternative conditional clauses are introduced by **sīvĕ . . . sīvĕ** or **seu . . . seu.** These conjunctions are also used when the alternatives are expressed by single words or phrases instead of complete clauses.

illō lŏcō lībentissĭmē sŏlĕō ūtī, sīvĕ quĭd mēcum ipsĕ cŏgĭtō sīvĕ quĭd scrībō aut lĕgō.
I am in the habit of frequenting that spot with great pleasure, either if I am pondering anything in my mind or if I am writing or reading anything.

omnēs lībertātĕ cărent sīvĕ rēgī sīvĕ optĭmātĭbŭs servĭunt.
all lack liberty if they are slaves either to a king or to an aristocracy.

Obs. The use of **sīvĕ . . . sīvĕ** must be clearly distinguished from that of **utrum . . . ăn.** The latter introduce the two alternatives of a double question, direct or dependent; *e.g.* **Quĭd rēfert utrum rēgī ăn optĭmātĭbŭs servĭāmŭs?** *What does it matter whether we are slaves to a king or to an aristocracy?*

§ 608. The usages of subordinating conjunctions are given in Chapter XLV. A summary will be found on page 169.

APPENDIX

(A.) GRAMMATICAL TERMS.

§ 609. The terms here explained are applied to certain modes of expression occasionally met with in the classical writers. The names are all of Greek origin, and are best remembered by means of their literal signification, here added in parentheses.

§ 610. **Ăpŏsĭōpēsĭs** (*a lapse into silence*) is the sudden breaking off of a sentence when incomplete.

quōs ĕgŏ—sĕd mōtōs praestăt compōnĕrĕ fluctūs.
whom I—but it is better to calm the troubled waters.

§ 611. **Ăsyndĕtŏn** (*lack of conjunction*) is the term applied to the co-ordination of words without the use of conjunctions.

ăbĭīt excessĭt ēvāsĭt ērūpĭt.
he went away, he withdrew, he passed out, he burst forth.

§ 612. **Brachylogy** (**brăchўlŏgĭă**, *short expression*) is frequent where in English the phrase *that of* would be used.

multōs castră iŭvant, ĕt lĭtŭō tŭbae permixtŭs sŏnĭtŭs.
camp-life delights many, and the sound of the bugle blended with (that of) the clarion.

§ 613. **Chīasmŭs** (*forming the* Greek *letter* X—named "*chi*") : In this figure one pair of words (*A*, *a*) corresponds to another pair (*B*, *b*), and the order in the sentence is *A*, *a*, *b*, *B*.

pēiŭs victōrĭbŭs Sēquănīs quam Aedŭīs victīs accĭdĭt.
worse happened to the conquering Sequani than to the conquered Aedui.

Obs. The following diagram illustrates the name "chiasmus":—

pēiŭs victōrĭbŭs Sēquănīs
quam Aedŭīs victīs accĭdĭt.

§ 614. **Hendĭădўs** (*one thing through two*) : this term is applied when two substantives takes the place of a substantive and an attributive adjective.

pătĕrīs lībāmŭs ĕt aurō.
we make drink-offerings from cups and gold.

Obs. Here **pătĕrīs ĕt aurō** stands for **pătĕrīs aurĕīs**, *golden bowls.*

§ 615. **Hўpallăgē** (*exchange*): an attributive adjective is occasionally transferred from the substantive to which it is strictly applicable to some other substantive in the sentence.

dŏlentem nōn purpŭrārum sīdĕrĕ clārĭŏr dēlēnĭt ūsŭs.
the use of purple garments more brilliant than a constellation soothes not the sufferer.

Obs. Here **clārĭŏr** goes grammatically with **ūsŭs**, but in sense applies to **purpŭrārum**

§ 616. **Lītŏtēs** (*simplicity*) is an intentional understatement, often implying modesty on the speaker's part.

bĕnĕ dīcĕre haud absurdum est.
to use language well is no contemptible thing.

§ 617. **Meiōsīs** (*lessening*): another name for litotes.

§ 618. **Oxўmōrŏn** (*pointedly foolish*): an expression intentionally self-contradictory, and containing an inner meaning.

ūnă periūrum fŭĭt ĭn pārentem splendĭdē mendax.
one was nobly false to her perjured father.

Obs. Cp. in English: "Faith unfaithful kept him falsely true."

§ 619. **Prŏlēpsīs** (*anticipation*) is the name given to the usage in which an adjective describes the state in which its substantive will be after the action of the verb has taken place.

submersās obrŭĕ puppēs.
swamp the ships till they sink.

Obs. So in English; *e.g.* "He drained the cup dry."

§ 620. **Syncŏpē** (*striking together*): the meeting of consonants consequent upon the dropping of a vowel in the middle of a word; *e.g.* **vinclum** for **vincŭlum**, *chain.*

§ 621. **Sўnecdŏchē** (*understanding one thing with another*): the use of the name of a part of a thing to signify the whole; *e.g.* **cărīnă**, *keel*, or **puppĭs**, *poop*, for **nāvĭs**, *ship.*

§ 622. **Sўnĕsīs** (*sense*): this term is applied to constructions in which the concord is governed by the meaning, not the form, of the expression.

pars ĕpŭlīs ŏnĕrant mensās.
part (i.e. *some of them*) *load the tables with the banquet.*

Rĕmō cum frātrĕ Quĭrīnŭs iūrā **dăbunt.**
Quirinus with his brother Remus will ordain laws.

căpĭtă coniūrātĭōnĭs virgīs caesī.
the heads (i.e. *ringleaders*) *of the conspiracy were beaten with rods.*

§ 623. **Tmēsĭs** (*a cutting*): the separation of the parts of a compound word by intervening words.

q u ō nōs c u m q u ĕ fĕrĕt fortūnă, ībĭmŭs.
whithersoever fortune shall bear us, we will go.

Obs. Here **quō** and **cumquĕ** would naturally form one word.

§ 624. **Zeugmă** (*a yoking*): in this usage two subjects or two objects are constructed with a verb, which, strictly speaking, is suitable only to one of them.

tē grĕgēs centum Sĭcŭlaequĕ circum m ū gĭ u n t vaccae.
around thee a hundred flocks (bleat) and Sicilian kine are lowing.

Obs. Cp. in English: "See Pan with flocks, with fruits Pomona *crowned.*"

(B.) THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

§ 625. In each month there were three days named respectively **Kălendae** (*Kalends*), **Nōnae** (*Nones*), and **Īdūs** (*Ides*).
The **Kalends** were always on the **1st**, the **Nones** were in most months on the **5th**, and the **Ides** on the **13th**.

But in July, October, March, and May,
Nones were the seventh, Ides the fifteenth day.

Obs. The Nones were always (according to the inclusive method of reckoning in use with the Romans) nine days before the Ides (cp. **nōnŭs**, *ninth*).

§ 626. The **Roman months** were designated by **adjectives**, sometimes used substantivally in the masculine (the word **mensĭs**, *month*, being understood), but usually in agreement with one of the words **Kălendae, Nōnae, Īdūs.** These adjectives are **Iānŭārĭŭs, Febrŭārĭŭs, Martĭŭs, Aprīlĭs, Māĭŭs, Iūnĭŭs, Quintīlĭs, Sextīlĭs, Septembĕr, Octōbĕr, Nŏvembĕr, Dĕcembĕr.** **Quintīlĭs** (*July*) was after the death of Julius Caesar named **Iūlĭŭs** in his honour, and **Sextīlĭs** was similarly changed to **Augustŭs** in honour of the Emperor.
Of these adjectives, those ending in **-ŭs** are declined like **bŏnŭs** (§ 80); those in **-ĭs** like **tristĭs** (§ 86); and those in **-ĕr** like **ācĕr** (§ 86).

M a r tĭī s caelebs quĭd ăgĭs K ă l e n dīs?
what are you, a bachelor, doing on the first of March?

consŭlēs ĭī, quōs dixĭmŭs, Īdĭbŭs D ĕ c e m brĭbŭs măgistrātum occēpĕrĕ.
the consuls that I have mentioned entered upon their office on the 13th of December.

§ 627. **Intervening days** were reckoned as so many days before the next Kalends, Nones, or Ides, as the case might be, as follows :—

Dec. 30. **antĕ dĭem tertĭum Kălendās Iānŭārĭās (a. d. iii. Kal. Ian.).**
Dec. 31. **prīdiē Kălendās Iānŭārĭās (prid. Kal. Ian.).**
Jan. 1. **Kălendae Iānŭārĭae (Kal. Ian.).**
Jan. 2. **antĕ dĭem quartum Nōnās Iānŭārĭās (a. d. iv. Non. Ian.).**

It is important to observe that the Roman method of reckoning was *inclusive*; *e.g.* Dec. 30 is the third day before Jan. 1, both days being included.

The rule for expressing a Roman date in English is as follows :—

For a day between the Kalends and Nones, add 1 to the date on which the Nones fall, and subtract.

For a day between the Nones and Ides, add 1 to the date on which the Ides fall, and subtract.

For a day between the Ides and Kalends, add 2 to the number of days in the month preceding those Kalends, and subtract.

Take for example **antĕ dĭem sextum Nōnās Martĭās**: the Nones of March were on the 7th ; add 1 to 7 and subtract 6 ; this gives March 2.

Again, **antĕ dĭem sextum dĕcĭmum Kălendās Aprīlēs**: March, the month preceding the Kalends of April, has 31 days ; add 2 to 31, and subtract 16 ; this gives March 17.

NOTE 1.—To express *the day before* the Kalends, Nones, or Ides, the word **prīdiē** was used instead of the phrase **antĕ dĭem**; *e.g.* **prīdiē Īdūs Sextīlēs**, *August* 12.

Obs. 1. The phrase **antĕ dĭem**, etc., probably originated thus : the ablative form (denoting time when, § 371) was, *e.g.*, **dĭē tertĭō antĕ Kălendās Iānŭārĭās**; subsequently **antĕ** was transferred to the beginning and **dĭē** was changed to **dĭem**, as if it were governed by **antĕ**.

Obs. 2. **Prīdiē**, *on the day before*, is constructed with an accusative which is due to analogy with the construction of **antĕ dĭem**.

Obs. 3. The examples given above are in accordance with the reformed Calendar introduced by Gaius Julius Caesar, B.C. 45.

§ 628. The above phrases expressing dates having come to be regarded as substantives, they may be used after prepositions.

ex antĕ dĭem tertĭum Nōnās Iūnĭās usquĕ ăd prīdiē Kălendās Octōbrēs nuntĭŭs vēnĭt nullŭs.
from June 3 *to September* 30 *no messenger came.*

(C.) ROMAN MONEY.

§ 629. The **original unit** in the Roman monetary system was the **ās**, a copper coin which was gradually debased in value, and in the classical period weighed half an ounce. The **ās** was not used as the unit for reckoning sums of money after the end of the second century B.C., the **sestertĭŭs** (see below) taking its place for this purpose.

In the classical period the silver coin in most common use was the **dēnārĭŭs**, equivalent to 16 (originally 10) **assēs**. Reckonings were made by the **sestertĭŭs** (= ¼ **dēnārĭŭs**, and originally equivalent to 2½ **assēs**). The full name of the **sestertĭŭs** (for which the symbol was **HS**) was **sestertĭŭs nummŭs**; it was also known simply as **nummŭs**. In English it is called *sesterce*.

§ 630. The **bullion** value of a **dēnārĭŭs** of the classical period is a little over **8d.**, that of a **sestertĭŭs** about 2d. Hence **1000 sestertĭī** = £8 10*s*. It must be clearly understood that these values are not intended to represent the *purchasing power* of money at Rome.

§ 631. The **unit used in reckoning** sums of money was the **sestertĭŭs.**

In expressing *thousands* of **sestertĭī** (up to one million) the word **mīlĭă** was omitted and **sestertĭum**, the genitive plural of **sestertĭŭs**, was converted into a neuter plural substantive; the number of thousands was denoted by a **distributive** numeral.

cāpĭt illĕ ex sŭīs praedĭīs sexcēnă sestertĭă, ĕgŏ centēnă ex mĕīs.
he receives from his estates 600,000 *sesterces, I receive* 100,000 *from mine.*

In expressing *hundreds of thousands* of **sestertĭī**, if amounting to not less than one million, the words **centēnă mīlĭă** were omitted, and **sertertĭum** was declinable as a neuter singular substantive; the number of hundreds of thousands was denoted by an **adverbial** numeral.

quadringentĭēs sestertĭum dēbŭistī.
you owed forty million (400 × 100 × 1000) *sesterces.*

syngrāphă sestertĭī centĭēs factă.
a bond for ten million (100 × 100 × 1000) *sesterces was given.*

Obs. The above rules may be tabulated thus :—

Up to 1000	sesterces	cardinal	with **sestertĭī**	as **dĕcem sestertĭī** (10)
2000 to 900,000	„	distributive	„ **sestertĭă**	„ **dēnă sestertĭă** (10,000)
1,000,000 sesterces and upwards		adverbial	„ **sestertĭum**	„ **sestertĭum dĕcĭēs** (1,000,000)

§ 632. The **ās** remained the theoretical unit in reckoning interest, portions of inheritances, etc., after it had dropped out of use as the unit for reckoning sums of money. The following fractions of the **ās** were thus employed:—

uncĭ-ă (-ae)	$= \frac{1}{12}$	**quincun-x (-cĭs)**	$= \frac{5}{12}$	**dōdran-s (-tĭs)**	$= \frac{3}{4}$
sextan-s (-tĭs)	$= \frac{1}{6}$	**sēmĭs (sēmissĭs)**	$= \frac{1}{2}$	**dextan-s (-tĭs)**	$= \frac{5}{6}$
quadran-s (-tĭs)	$= \frac{1}{4}$	**septun-x (-cĭs)**	$= \frac{7}{12}$	**dĕun-x (-cĭs)**	$= \frac{11}{12}$
trĭen-s (-tĭs)	$= \frac{1}{3}$	**bēs (bessĭs)**	$= \frac{2}{3}$		

Caesăr, ŏpīnŏr, ex uncĭā; sĕd Leptă ex trĭentĕ.
Caesar, I think, (is heir) to one-twelfth, but Lepta to one-third of the property.

§ 633. Interest (**ūsūrae** or **fēnŭs**) was reckoned **by the month** at so many hundredth parts (**centēsĭmae**, *i.e.* **centēsĭmae partēs**) of the capital (**sors**).

Accordingly **ūsūrae centēsĭmae** = 1 *per cent. per mensem* = 12 *per cent. per annum.*

ūsūrae bīnae centēsĭmae = 2 *per cent. per mensem* = 24 *per cent. per annum.*

§ 634. Lower rates were expressed by fractions of the **ās** in apposition to **ūsūrae** or **fēnŭs**, the rate of 1 *per cent. per mensem* being taken as the standard; *e.g.*,

fēnŭs trĭens = $\frac{1}{3}$ *per cent. per mensem* = 4 *per cent. per annum;*
ūsūrae bessēs = $\frac{2}{3}$ *per cent. per mensem* = 8 *per cent. per annum.*

fēnŭs ex trĭentĕ factum ĕrăt bessĭbŭs.
interest had advanced from 4 to 8 per cent.

Obs. In the above example, **bessĭbŭs** is ablative of price (§ 377).

(D.) PRAENOMINA.

§ 635. A free-born Roman had three names: **praenōmĕn**, **nōmĕn**, and **cognōmĕn**. The **praenōmĕn** was the **personal** name, the **nōmĕn** that of the **gens** (*clan*), the **cognōmĕn** that of the **fămĭlĭă** (*family*); *e.g.* **Publĭŭs Cornēlĭŭs Scīpĭō** is the individual **Publĭŭs** belonging to the **gens Cornēlĭa** and the **fămĭlĭă Scīpĭōnum.**

The following is a list of Roman **praenōmĭnă** with the abbreviations commonly used:—

A.	**Aulŭs**	N.	**Nŭmĕrĭŭs**
App.	**Appĭŭs**	P.	**Publĭŭs**
C.	**Gaiŭs**	Q.	**Quintŭs**
Cn.	**Gnaeŭs**	Ser.	**Servĭŭs**
D.	**Dĕcĭmŭs**	Sex. or S.	**Sextŭs**
K.	**Kaesō**	Sp.	**Spŭrĭŭs**
L.	**Lūcĭŭs**	T.	**Tĭtŭs**
M.	**Marcŭs**	Ti.	**Tĭbĕrĭŭs**
M'.	**Mānĭŭs**		

(E.) PROSODY AND METRE.

§ 636. QUANTITY.—The metres used by the classical Latin poets are all of Greek origin and depend entirely on quantity, *i.e.* on the length of syllables. A syllable contains either one vowel or a diphthong; any syllable containing a diphthong or long vowel is a long syllable, and a syllable containing a short vowel is a short syllable unless two consonants (see Rule 3, below) follow the vowel. Thus, **ŏs**, *bone*, has genitive **ossĭs**, in which the first syllable is long on account of the position of **o** before **ss**, although the **o** is naturally short, as is seen by the nominative.

The following rules are sufficient for the learner's guidance in reading verse, but are nearly all subject to some few exceptions:—

(1) A diphthong or contracted syllable is long; *e.g.* **mensāe**, **nīl** (= **nĭhĭl**).

(2) The former of two vowels not forming a diphthong is short; *e.g.* **pŭĕr**.

(3) A syllable is long when its vowel is followed in the same word by two consonants (other than **h**), by one of the double consonants **x**, **z**, or by semi-consonant **i** (sometimes printed **j**).

(4) A final syllable ending in a consonant counts as long before a word beginning with semi-consonant **i** or a consonant (other than **h**).

(5) A syllable containing a vowel naturally short is either long or short when the vowel is followed by two different consonants of which the second is **l** or **r**; *e.g.* **pātrĭs** or **pătrĭs**, gen. sing. of **pătĕr**. (A vowel by nature long remains long; *e.g.* **mātrĭs**, gen. sing. of **mātĕr**.)

(6) Final syllables of words ending in **a**, **i**, **o**, **u**, **as**, **es**, **os**, and **c**, are long. Final **a**, however, in nom., voc., and acc. is short. Final **es** is short in such nominatives singular as **mīlĕs**, and in the nom. plural of Greek substantives, *e.g.* **lampădĕs**; and final **as** is short in the corresponding Greek acc. plural, **lampădās**. Final **os** is short when it represents Greek *os*.

(7) Final **e** is short, except in the 1st (Greek) and 5th declensions, in 2nd sing. imper. act. of verbs of the 2nd conjugation, and in adverbs.

(8) Final **is** is short, except in acc., dat., and abl. plural, and in 2nd sing. pres. ind. act. of verbs of the 4th conjugation.

(9) Final **us** is short, except in the nom., voc., and acc. plural and gen. sing. of the 4th declension, and in fem. substantives like **pălūs**.

(10) Final syllables of words of more than one syllable ending in a single consonant other than **c** or **s** are short.

(11) Monosyllables are generally long, except those ending in **b**, **d**, **t**.

§ 637. ELISION.—Before a word beginning with a vowel or **h** a final vowel or diphthong is elided, as also is a final **m** together with the vowel preceding it; *e.g.* in the fourth line quoted in § 641, **possĕ Ītălĭā** scans as **poss' Ītălĭā** and **Teucrōrum āvertĕrĕ** as **Teucrōr' āvertĕrĕ**. This rarely takes place when the two words are not in the same line (§ 641, *f*).

§ 638. METRE.—The metre most commonly used by the poets of the best period was the **dactylic hexameter**, or line consisting in theory of six dactyls, of which the last is one syllable short.

Obs. A dactyl is a foot consisting of a long syllable followed by two short ones (– ∪ ∪).

§ 639. In practice a spondee is substituted for a dactyl in any of the first four feet and occasionally in the fifth, and the last syllable of the line is "doubtful," *i.e.* may be long or short. Hence it is customary to say that the hexameter consists of six feet, of which the first four are either dactyls or spondees, the fifth a dactyl (very rarely a spondee), and the sixth a spondee or a trochee.

Obs. A spondee is a foot consisting of two long syllables (– –), and a trochee of a long syllable followed by a short one (– ∪).

§ 640. The following is a scheme of the hexameter verse :—

1	2	3	4	5	6
– ∪ ∪ |	– ∪ ∪ |	– ‖ ∪ ∪ |	– ∪ ∪ |	– ∪ ∪ |	– ∪
– – |	– – |	– ‖ – |	– – |	– – | (rare)	– –

§ 641. The following are examples of the dactylic hexameter divided into feet, with the quantities of the *syllables* marked :—

(*a*) ārmă vĭ- | rūmquĕ că- | nō ‖ Trō- | iae quī | prīmŭs ăb | ōrīs.

(*b*) quīdvĕ dŏ- | lens rē- | gīnă ‖ dĕ- | ūm tōt | vŏlvĕrĕ | căsūs.

(*c*) cāră dĕ- | ūm sŭbŏ- | lēs ‖ māg- | nūm Iŏvĭs | īncrē- | mentŭm.

(*d*) nēc pŏs- | se Ītălĭ- | ā ‖ Teu- | crōrum ā- | vertĕrĕ | rĕgĕm.

(*e*) pōsthăbĭ- | tā cŏlŭ- | īssĕ ‖ Să- | mō : hīc | īllĭŭs | ārmă.

(*f*) īactē- | mūr dŏcĕ- | ās ‖ īg- | nārī hŏmĭ- | nūmquĕ lŏ- | cōrūmque errā- | mūs . . .

(*g*) cōrtĭcĭ- | būsquĕ că- | vīs ‖ vĭtĭ- | ōsae- | que īlĭcĭs | ālveo.

NOTES.—(*a*) This is a regular line with caesura (*cutting*) in the usual place, viz. after the first syllable of the third foot. A caesura so placed is called "strong," and indicates a decided pause in the verse.

(*b*) Here the caesura is "weak," *i.e.* it occurs after the second syllable of the third foot, that foot being a dactyl.

(*c*) In this line a spondee takes the place of a dactyl in the fifth foot ; this is very rarely the case.

(*d*) Here e is elided in the second foot, and um in the fourth.

(*e*) In this line there is an example of **hiatus** (*gaping*); **o** is not, as might be expected, elided before **hīc**. Instances of hiatus are rare.

(*f*) The final vowel of **lŏcōrumquĕ** is elided before **errāmŭs**, the first word of the next line; this is an exceptional usage, and is termed **sўnăloephă** (*melting together*) or **sўnăphēă** (*fitting together*).

(*g*) The word **alveo** is here scanned as a dissyllable, **ĕō** coalescing into one syllable. This combination of vowels is termed **sўnaerĕsĭs** (*drawing together*) or **sўnizēsĭs** (*settling together*).

§ 642. The hexameter followed by a **pentameter** (*i.e.* a line of five feet) forms the elegiac couplet, which is sufficiently common to call for notice here. For other metres the student is referred to editions of the poets who employ them.

§ 643. The pentameter consists of two half-lines, each of which contains two dactyls followed by a long syllable. In the first half, a spondee may be substituted for either of the dactyls.

Obs. The dactylic pentameter is never used except in the elegiac couplet, *i.e.* each pentameter is preceded by a hexameter.

§ 644. The following is the scheme of the pentameter :—

– ∪ ∪ | – ∪ ∪ | – ‖ – ∪ ∪ | – ∪ ∪ | –
– – | – – | | ∪

Examples of the elegiac couplet :—

Īgnĭbŭs | īlĭă- | cīs ‖ ădĕ- | rām, cūm | lāpsă că- | pīllīs

Dĕcĭdĭt | ānte să- | crōs ‖ lānea | vĭttă fō- | cōs.

Dūm sĕdĕt, | ūmbrō- | sae ‖ sălĭ- | cēs vŏlŭ- | crēsquĕ că- | nōrae

Fēcē- | runt sōm- | nōs, ‖ ĕt lĕvĕ | mūrmŭr ă- | quae.

NOTE.—The first half of a pentameter always ends with the end of a word. Elision is allowed in the first two feet only.

(F.) ORDER OF WORDS.

645. Owing to the use of inflections in Latin the order of the words in a sentence admits of considerable variations being made without any radical change in the meaning. Thus, instead of **Rōmŭlŭs Rĕmum occīdĭt** (*Romulus slew Remus*), we may write **Rĕmum occīdĭt Rōmŭlŭs**; whereas in English by changing the order of the words to "Remus slew Romulus" the meaning is inverted.

§ 646. The following are the rules which govern the arrangement of words in a Latin sentence where the order is not affected (as is very commonly the case) by considerations of euphony or emphasis.

§ 647. (*a*) The **subject** stands first.

NOTE 1.—This does not apply to the infinitive used as **subject** (§ 409, *a*).

NOTE 2.—Interrogative and relative words, conjunctions and other words of connection or transition, are placed at the beginning of the sentence or clause which they introduce, except enclitics (**-nĕ, -quĕ, -vĕ**), **autem, ĕnim, quĭdem, quŏquĕ,** and (usually) **ĭgĭtŭr, tămĕn,** Cp. § 261.

(*b*) A finite verb (*i.e.* the primary **predicate**) stands at the end of its sentence or clause, the secondary predicate (if there is one) preceding the primary.

(*c*) The **object** is placed between the subject and the predicate, an indirect object usually preceding a direct object.

Caesăr ĭīs auxĭlĭum sŭum pollĭcĭtŭs est.
Caesar promised them his help.

§ 648. (*d*) An **attribute,** whether consisting of an ordinary adjective, an attributive genitive, a substantive in apposition, or a phrase, usually follows the substantive to which it refers, but a demonstrative or an adjective of quantity or number precedes its substantive.

(*e*) An **adverb** or adverbial phrase immediately precedes the word it qualifies.

(*f*) A **preposition** precedes its case, except **tĕnus** and enclitic **cum** (§§ 258, 259). An attribute may intervene.

Sĕnātŭs dŭumvĭrōs ăd ĕam aedem prō amplĭtūdĭnĕ pŏpŭlī Rōmānī făcĭendam crĕārī iussĭt.
the Senate ordered a commission of two to be appointed for building that temple in accordance with the dignity of the Roman people.

Obs. In the above example **ăd . . . făcĭendam** is an attributive phrase qualifying **dŭumvĭrōs; ĕam** (a demonstrative) is attribute to **aedem; Rōmānī** is the attribute of **pŏpŭlī; pŏpŭlī Rōmānī** is attributive genitive qualifying **amplĭtūdĭnĕ; prō . . . Rōmānī** together forms an adverbial phrase qualifying the verbal notion in **făcĭendam.**

§ 649. Clauses other than consecutive are frequently, but by no means always, inserted in the principal sentence. See examples in §§ 492, 501, 521, 532, 541, 544.

§ 650. A word is frequently, for the sake of **emphasis,** put in some prominent position—*i.e.* either first or last in the sentence. The subject is, if emphatic, placed at the end; the verb, if emphatic, at the beginning. Either of these positions emphasises any other word.

mĕtŭēbant servī, vĕrēbantŭr lībĕrī.
he was feared by his slaves, reverenced by his children.

mĕā ŏpĕrā Tărentum rĕcēpistī.
it was through me that you recovered Tarentum.

Obs. Here the normal order would be **Tărentum ŏpĕrā mĕā rĕcēpistī** (§ 648, *e*), a possessive adjective usually following its substantive.

INDEX.

The numbers refer to the pages of the book.
For Cases, see pp. 214, 215*; for the Subjunctive, see pp.* 272, 273.

I.—GRAMMATICAL TERMS, ETC.

Ablative, 7; 1st Decl. Pl., 28; 4th Decl. Pl., 30; Syntax of, 201-7, 215; Absolute, 206, 226, 228.
Abounding, Verbs of, 202, 211.
Accentuation, 2.
Accusative, 6, 188-93, 214; Subject of Infinitive, 217, 218.
Adjectives, Declension of, 43-6, 48-50; with Substantives, 46, 47, 51, 52; Indeclinable, 52; Comparison of, 53-6; Numeral, 57-61; Verbal, 74, 225-8; Formed from Verbs, 171-2; Used substantivally, 183, 185; Equivalent to Adverbs, 185; Usages, 274-6.
Advantage, Dative of, 196.
Adverbial Accusative, 190, 192.
Adverbs, 160-64; Comparison of, 165; Numeral, 57, 58, 293; Usages, 281-3.
Agent, 197, 203, 222, 224.
Alphabet, 1.
Aposiopesis, 289.
Apposition, 185.
Asking, Verbs of, 191.
Asyndeton, 289.
Attribute, 184, 186.
Attributive Genitive, 208-10.

Base, 4; of Substantives, 9; of Adjectives, 43; of Verbs, 76, 77, 80, 81; Perfect, 116; Supine, 117.
Brachylogy, 289.

Calendar, 291, 292.
Calling, Verbs of, 189.
Cardinal Numerals, 57-60.
Cases, 11, 214, 215: *see also* Nominative, etc.
Causal Clauses, 246, 256, 257.
Cause, Ablative of, 204.
Chiasmus, 289.
Circumstantial Clauses, 255-64.
Clauses, Adjectival, 180, 245-8; Adverbial, 180, 249-64; Substantival, 180, 239-44.
Cognate Accusative, 191.
Commands, 236, 237; Dependent, 243-4; in Oratio Obliqua, 269.
Comparative Adjectives, 53-56; Declension of, 48; with Abl., 207; Participles, 225, 227; Adverbs, 165; Clauses, 261.
Complex Sentences, 179, 239-268.
Composite Subject, 185.
Compound Sentences, 179.
Compound Verbs, 117, 176, 177.
Concessive Subjunctive, 238, 246; Concessive Clauses, 255, 256.
Concords: I., 184; II., 43, 184, 185; III., 245; Compound, 185, 186.
Condemning, Verbs of, 211, 212.
Conditional Sentences, 249-54; Dependent, 267; in Oratio Obliqua, 269.
Conjugation: *see* Verbs.
Conjunctions, 168, 169; Usages, 286-8.
Consecutive Clauses, 246, 247, 263, 264.

Dative, 6; in 4th Decl., 30; in 5th Decl. Sing., 31; in certain Adjectives (-i), 45; Syntax of, 194-8, 214.
Decreeing, Verbs of, 243.
Defective Verbs, 144.
Deliberative Subjunctive, 238, 242.
Demonstrative Pronouns, 64-6.
Dependent Commands, 243, 244; Questions, 239-43, 254; Statements, 218, 244.

Deponent Verbs, 110-15.
Description, Ablative of, 205.
Desiderative Verbs, 176.
Diminutive Substantives, 173.
Distributive Numerals, 57-9, 276, 293.
Doubting, Verbs, etc., of, 264, 268.
Dubitative Subjunctive, 238, 242.

Epistolary Tenses, 233.
Ethic Dative, 196.
Exclamations, Accusative, 189; Acc. and Infinitive, 218.
Exhortations, 237.
Extent, Accusative of, 192, 193.

Factitive Verbs, 189.
Fearing, Verbs of, 262.
Feminine Substantives formed from Masculine, 172.
Final Clauses, 246, 261-62.
Fractions, 60; of **as**, 294.
Frequentative Verbs, 175.
Future, Indicative, 81, 233, 251, 259; Infinitive (Periphrasis), 267; Infinitive Passive, 76.
Future Participle, 133, 226; with **sum**, 93.
Future-Perfect: Indicative Active, 92; in **-so**, 132; Infinitive Pass., 103; Syntax of, 234.

Gender of Substantives, 5, 37-42.
Genitive, 6; in 3rd Decl. Pl., 24; in 1st Decl. (**-ai**, **-um**), 28; in 2nd Decl. Sing., 29; in 2nd Decl. Pl. (**-um**), 29; in 5th Decl. Sing., 31; in **-ius**, 45; Syntax of, 208-13, 215.
Gerund, 75, 222, 223.
Gerundive, 75; in **-undus**, 102; of four Intransitive Verbs, 133; Syntax of, 224-25.
Gnomic Perfect, 234.
Grammatical Terms, 289-91.
Greek Use of Genitive, 213.
Greek Substantives, 34-6.

Hendiadys, 289.
Heteroclite Substantives, 31, 32.
Heterogeneous Substantives, 32.
Hexameter, 296.
Hindering, Verbs of, 262.
Historic Infinitive, 219.
Historic Present, 232, 240.
Hoping, Verbs of, 281.
Hypallage, 290.
Hypothetical Sentences, 249-54; Dependent, 267; in Oratio Obliqua, 269.

Imparisyllabic Substantives, 14, 24.
Imperative, 236; in apodosis, 250, 251.
Imperfect: Indicative, 81, 233; in 4th Conj., 92; Subjunctive, 82.
Impersonal Verbs, 145, 182, 194, 211.
Inceptive Verbs, 176.
Indeclinable Substantives, 33; Adjectives, 52.
Indefinite Pronouns, 68-70.
Indefinite Subject, 231, 277.
Indicative, 232-35; after **qui**, 247; in conditional sentences, 250, 251, 253; in concessive clauses, 255, 256; in causal clauses, 256; in temporal clauses, 257-60; in local clauses, 260; in comparative clauses, 261; dependent on accusative and infinitive, 266.
Indirect: *see* Dependent.
Infinitive, 76; Present Passive, 102; Future, 267; Future Passive, 76; Future Perfect Passive, 103; Syntax of, 216-19; Tenses of, 220, 221; in Oratio Obliqua, 269-71.
Inseparable Particles, 178.
Instrument, Ablative of, 203.
Interest, 294.
Interjections, 170. [242.
Interrogative Particles, 161, 229,
Interrogative Pronouns, 67, 68.
Intransitive Verbs, 181-82; with acc., 189, 191; with dat., 195.

Jussive Subjunctive, 237, 238.

Lacking, Verbs of, 202, 211.
Likeness, Adjectives of, 196.
Litotes, 290.
Local Ablative, 201-3.
Local Clauses, 260.
Locative, 8 ; of Substantives, 10, 13, 25 ; of Adjectives, 46 ; Syntax of, 199, 200, 214.

Making, Verbs of, 189.
Manner, Ablative of, 205.
Material, Genitive of, 209.
Measure, Ablative of, 204.
Meiosis, 290.
Metre, 296-7.
Middle Voice, 182, 188, 227.
Money, Roman, 293, 294.
Mood : *see* Indicative, etc.
Multiplicatives, 61.

Nearness, Adjectives of, 196.
Nominative, 6, 187.
Number, 74, 231 ; *see also* Plural.
Numerals, 57-61, 276.

Object, External, 188-9; Internal, 190 ; Cognate, 191 ; Double, 191; Indirect, 194-5.
Objective Genitive, 210-12.
Optative Subjunctive, 237.
Oratio Obliqua, 269-71.
Order of Words, 8, 297, 298.
Ordinal Numerals, 57-9.
Origin, Ablative of, 207.
Oxymoron, 290.

Parisyllabic Substantives, 21, 24.
Participles, 74, 75, 225-8 : *see also* Present, etc.
Particles, Inseparable, 178.
Partitive Genitive, 210.
Parts of Speech, 4.
Passive, 72, 82 ; replaced by Intransitive Verbs, 131 ; of Intransitive Verbs, 182 ; of Transitive Verbs, 182.
Patronymics, 174.
Pentameter, 297.
Perfect, 74 ; Indicative Active, 82 ; Shorter Forms, 92, 133 ; Syntax (Indicative), 234 ; Subjunctive Active, 82, 92 : in **-sim**, 132 ; Infinitive, 221 ; Participle, 226-8 ; with **sum**, 103, 235 ; with Active meaning, 111 ; as Primary Predicate, 184.
Person, 74, 231 ; in Oratio Obliqua, 270, 271 ; Second Singular, 82, 231.
Personal Pronouns, 62-3; with Gerundive, 224 ; with **cum**, 167.
Place : whence, 206, 207 ; where, 199, 201, 202 ; whither, 189, 190, 198.
Pluperfect : Epistolary, 233 ; Subjunctive Passive, 102.
Plural, with Special Meaning, 32 ; without corresponding Sing., 33 ; Poetic, 213 ; of Abstract Substantives, 213.
Possessive Adjectives, 63.
Possessive Dat., 197 ; Gen., 208.
Potential Subjunctive, 253.
Praenomina, 294.
Predicate, 183, 184 ; of Composite Subject, 185, 186 : *see also* Secondary.
Predicative Dat., 198 ; Gen., 210.
Prepositions, 166, 167, 283-6 ; in Composition, 176, 177, 194.
Present, Indicative, 81, 232 ; Imperative, 81, 133 ; Subjunctive, 82 ; Infinitive, 220-1 ; Participle, 225, 226.
Preventing, Verbs of, 262.
Price : Locative of, 200 ; Genitive of, 200 ; Ablative of, 204.
Principal Parts of Verbs, 77, 116-31, 146-59.
Prohibitions, 236, 238.
Prolepsis, 290.
Promising, Verbs of, 281.
Pronouns, 62-71 ; Usages, 276-8.
Pronunciation of Latin, 3.
Prosody, 295.
Purpose, Dative of, 198 : How Expressed, 246, 261, 262.

Quality, Genitive of, 209.
Quantity, 1, 2, 10, 83, 295.
Questions: Direct, 229, 230; Dependent, 239-43, 254; in Oratio Obliqua, 271.

Reduplication, 116.
Reflexive Pronouns, 63.
Relative Pronouns, 66, 67; with **cum**, 167; Clauses, 245-8.
Remembering, Verbs of, 211.
Reported Description or Definition, 248; Questions, 239-43; Statement, 218, 244; Condition, 254.
Respect, Acc. of, 192; Abl. of, 202; Gen. of, 213.
Retained Accusative, 191.
Road, Ablative of, 204.

Secondary Predicate, 183, 187; of Composite Subject, 186.
Semi-Dependence, Subj. in, 244.
Semi-Deponents, 111.
Separation, Abl. of, 207.
Sequence of Tenses, 240, 241, 264, 266, 268.
Simple Sentence, 179, 183.
Space, Extent of, 193.
Sub-dependent Clauses, 265-8.
Subject, 183; Composite, 185-6.
Subjective Genitive, 209.
Subjunctive, 72, 272, 273.
Substantives, Declensions of, 8-27; Irregularities in Declension, 28-33; Indeclinable, 33; Greek, 34-6; Gender of, 5, 37-42; declined with adjectives, 46, 47, 51, 52; Verbal, 75, 76; formed from Verbs, 171; Usages, 274.
Superlative Adjectives, 53-6; Participles, 225, 227; Adverbs, 165.
Supine, 75, 190, 221; with **iri**, 76.
Syncope, 290.
Synecdoche, 290.
Synesis, 290.

Teaching, Verbs of, 191.
Temporal Clauses, 257-60.
Tenses, 73; Sequence, 240, **241**, 264, 266, 268; in Oratio Obl., 269: *see also* Present, etc.
Time: throughout which, 193; when, 199, 203; within which 203.
Tmesis, 291.
Transitive Verbs, 181, 182, 188.

Value, Locative of, 200; Genitive of, 200; Ablative of, 204.
Verbal Stem, 116, *footnote*.
Verbs, 72-7; Regular Conjugations of, 80-109; Deponent 110-15; Principal Parts, 116-31, 146-59; Irregularities, 132, 133; Irregular, 134-43; Defective, 144; Impersonal, 145; Derived, 175-6; Usages, 279-81.
Vocative, 6, 187; in **-i**, 28.
Voice: *see* Passive and Middle.

Wishes, 237.
Wondering, Expressions of, 254.

Zeugma, 291.

II.—LATIN WORDS AND SUFFIXES.

A, ab, 167, 203, 207, 222, 224, 285.
Absum, 135.
-abus, 28.
Ac, 287; ac si, 254.
Ad, 283, 284.
Aestimo, 264.
-ai, 28.
Aio, 144.
Aliqui, aliquis, 69.
Alius, 45, 46, 276.
Alter, 45, 58.
Alteruter, 46.
Ambo, 59.
Amplius, 283.
An, 230, 242, 243, 288.
Annon, 230, 242.
Antequam, 259.
Aptus, 275.
Apud, 284.
As, 293, 294.

At, 287.
Atque, 287
Ausim, 132.
Aut, 288.
Autem, 287.

Bos, 29.

Capio, 108, 109.
Caveo, 279.
Celo, 191.
Ceu, 281.
Cieo, 120, 132.
Circumdo, 143, 280.
Coepi, 144; (Pass.), 281.
Consulo, 279.
Contentus, 275.
Cuias, 68.
Cuius, 68.
Cum (Conjunction), 255, 256, 258, 259.
Cum (Preposition), 285; (enclitic), 167.

De, 285.
Denarius, 293.
Deus, 29.
Dignor, 279.
Dignus, 275.
Dissimilis, 275.
Do, 118, 143.
Domus, 31, 189, 206.
Donec, 260.
Dono, 280.
Dubito, 243, 264.
Dum, 260.
-dum, 178.
Duo, 59.

E, ex, 167, 285.
Ecqui, ecquis, 70.
Edo (*eat*), 143.
Ego, 62, 270, 276.
Eius, 277.
Eo, 140.
Erga, 284.
Est qui, 247.
Et, 286, 287.
Etiamsi, 256.
Etsi, 256.
Extremus, 274.

Facio (Pass.), 142.
Familias, 28.
Fari, 144.
Faxo, 132.
Fero, 138, 139.
Ferveo, 132.
Fio, 142, 187.
Fore ut, 267.
Fretus, 275.
Fruor, 279.
Fulgeo, 119, 132.
Fungor, 279.

Genus (hoc, id), 193.

Haud, 282.
Haud scio an, 243.
Hic, 65, 270, 278.
Humus, 199, 206.

-i (in Abl. Sing.), 21, 22, 49, 50, 225.
Iamdudum, 232.
Idem, 66.
Idoneus, 275.
Idus, 291, 292.
Ille, 65, 278.
-im (in Acc. Sing.), 21, 22.
Imus, 274.
In, 167, 286.
Indignus, 275.
Infimus, 274.
Inquam, 144.
Instar, 193.
Inter, 284.
Interest, 280.
Ipse, 66, 270, 278.
Iri, 76.
-is (in Acc. Pl.), 21.
Is, 66, 277; Isqui, 247.
Iste, 65, 270. Istic, 65.

Iuppiter, 29.
Iusiurandum, 29.

Kalendae, 291, 292.

Laetus, 275.
Lavo, 118, 132.
Licet, 145, 255.

Magis, 282.
Malo, 136, 137.
Medius, 201, 274.
Memini, 144, 211.
-met, 62, 63.
Metuo, 262, 279.
Meus, 63, 270.
Milia, 59.
Minus, 283.
Misereor, 211.
Moderor, 279.
Muto, 280.

Ne (affirmative), 282.
Ne (negative), 272, 282; Ne non, 262; Ne . . . quidem, 282.
-ne, 161, 229, 242.
Necne, 230, 242.
Nego, 218.
Nemo, 30.
Nequeo, 141.
Nescio an, 243.
Nescio quis, 278.
Neu, 236, 288.
Neuter, 45.
Neve, 236, 288.
Ni, nisi, 250.
Nitor, 279.
Nolo, 136, 137.
Non, 272, 273, 282; Non quo, 257.
Nonae, 291, 292.
Nonne, 229, 242
Noster, 63.
Nostras, 64.
Nubo, 279.
Nullus, 45.
Num, 229, 242.

Ob, 284.
Obliviscor, 211.
Odi, 144.
Oll-i, -is, 65.
Opem, 30.
Opus, 274
Orior, 131, 132.

Os (*bone*), 23.

Pelagus, 36.
Penes, 284.
Per, 284.
Perinde, 161, 261, 281.
Plebs, 32.
Plus, 56, 283.
Polliceor, 281.
Possum, 135, 253, 283.
Postquam, 257, 258.
Potior, 132, 279.
Prae, 285.
Praeditus, 275.
Praeter, 284.
Precem, 30.
Pridie, 292.
Primus, 274.
Priusquam, 259.
Pro, 177, 285, 286.
Promitto, 281.
Propius, 283.
Prosum, 134, 135.
Proxime, 283.
-pte, 63.

Quam, 261, 282, 283.
Quam si, 254.
Quamquam, 255.
Quamvis, 255.
Quando, 162, 257.
Quandocumque, 257.
Quandoque, 257.
Quandoquidem, 256.
Quasi, 254.
-que, 168, 286.
Quec, 141.
Qui (Relative), 66, 245-8, 278; (interrogative), 67; indefinite, 68.
Quia, 256.
Quicumque, 67.
Quidam, 69, 70.
Quilibet, 69.
Quin, 229, 262-4, 268.
Quis (interrogative), 67; (indefinite), 68, 278.
Quisnam, 68.
Quispiam, 69.
Quisquam, 70.
Quisque, 69, 278.
Quisquis, 67.
Quivis, 69.
Quo (adv.), 162, 260; (conj.), 257, 262.
Quoad, 260.
Quod, 244, 256, 257.
Quominus, 262, 263.
Quoniam, 256.
Quotus, 71.
Quotusquisque, 71.

Recordor, 211.
Rĕfert, 280.
Reliquus, 274.
Requies, 32.
Respublica, 31.
Rus, 189, 199, 206.

Se, 63, 270, 276, 277.
Secius, 281.
Secundum, 284.
Secus ac, 261.
Secus (virile), 193.
Sed, 287.
Sestertius, 293.
Seu, 288.
Si, 250, 254.
Similis, 275.
Simul ac, 257.
Sive, 288.
Solus, 45.
Spero, 281.
-ssim, -sso, 132.
Strideo, 120, 132.
Sub, 167, 286.
Sum, 78, 79, 134; (with future participle), 93, 226; (with perfect participle), 103, 228, 235; (compounds), 134, 135, 194; (with dative), 197.
Summus, 274.
Sunt qui, 247.
Supra, 284.
Sus, 29.
Suus, 63-4, 270, 276-7

Tametsi, 255.
Tamquam, 254.
Tempero, 279.
Timeo, 262, 279.
Totus, 45, 201.
Trans (in comp.), 193.
Tres, 59.
Tu, 62, 270, 276.
Tuus, 63, 270.

Ubi, 162, 257, 260.
Ullus, 45.
Ultro, 281.
Unus, 45; pl., 59, 276.
Usque, 282.
Usus, 274.
Ut, 162, 243, 244, 255, 257, 261-3; Ut non, 263; Ut si, 254.
Uter, 45; compounds, 46.
Utinam, 237.
Utor, 279.
Utrum, 230, 242, 288.

-ve, 168, 288.
Vel, 288.
Vescor, 279
Vesper, 32.
Vester, 63.
Vestras, 64
Vicem, 30.
Vir, 13.
Virus, 29.
Vis, 30.
Volo, 136, 137.
Vulgus, 29.

Titles underlined are those of New Books and New Editions published during the year ending April 1910.

Select List of Books

IN THE

University Tutorial Series.

University Tutorial Press Ltd

W. B. CLIVE, 157 DRURY LANE, LONDON, W.C.

CONTENTS.

	PAGES		PAGES
Education, etc.	2	English Text-Books	10
Mathematics and Mechanics	3-5	Philosophy	11
Biology	5	Modern History	11
Physics	6	Geography	12
Chemistry	7	Roman and Greek History	12
French	8	Latin and Greek Text-Books	13
English Classics	9	Latin and Greek Classics	14, 15

The General Catalogue (64 *pages*); *Sectional Catalogues in* (1) *Mathematics and Mechanics*, (2) *Science*, (3) *Classics*, (4) *English and French*, (5) *Education, Philosophy and History; and Special Catalogues for London University and other Examinations, may be had post free on application.*

MAY 1910.

Substantives.

DECL. 1 (*F.*, Males *M.*).

	Singular.
N. V.	port-ă
Acc.	port-am
Gen.	port-ae
Dat.	port-ae
Abl.	port-ā
	Plural.
N. V.	port-ae
Acc.	port-ās
Gen.	port-ārum
D. Abl.	port-īs

DECL. 2 (**-ŭs**, *M.*, some *F.*; **-ĕr**, *M.*; **-um**, *N.*).

	Singular.
Nom.	domin-ŭs
Voc.	domin-ĕ
Acc.	domin-um
Gen.	domin-ī
D. Abl.	domin-ō
	Plural.
N. V.	domin-ī
Acc.	domin-ōs
Gen.	domin-ōrum
D. Abl.	domin-īs

Singular.	Singular.
magister	regn-um
magister	regn-um
magistr-um	regn-um
etc. (as dominus)	regn-ī
	regn-ō
[But **puer, socer, gener, līberi** retain the **e** throughout before **r**.]	**Plural.**
	regn-ă
	regn-ă
	regn-ōrum
	regn-īs

DECL. 3 (*M.* & *F.*): gen. pl. **-um.**

Of masc. and fem. substantives of the third decl. here belong those with **base ending in a single consonant and with more syllables in the gen. sing. than in the nom. sing.** For exceptions see rhyme on p. 24.

	Singular.
N. V.	princep-s
Acc.	princip-em
Gen.	princip-īs
Dat.	princip-ī
Abl.	princip-ĕ
	Plural.
N. V. A.	princip-ēs
Gen.	princip-um
D. Abl.	princip-ĭbŭs

DECL. 3 (*N.*): gen. pl. **-um.**

	Singular.
N. V. A.	nomen
Gen.	nomin-ĭs
Dat.	nomin-ī
Abl.	nomin-ĕ
	Plural.
N. V. A.	nomin-ă
Gen.	nomin-um
D. Abl.	nomin-ĭbŭs

DECL. 3 (*N.*): gen. pl. **-ium.**

	Singular.
N. V. A.	cubil-ĕ
Gen.	cubil-ĭs
Dat.	cubil-ī
Abl.	cubil-ī
	Plural.
N. V. A.	cubil-ĭă
Gen.	cubil-ĭum
D. Abl.	cubil-ĭbŭs

Third decl. neuter substantives with bases ending in **-al-, -il-, -ar-,** as **cubile**; other third decl. neuters as **nomen.**

DECL. 3 (*M.* & *F.*): gen. pl. **-ĭum.**

Sing.: as **princeps**, but acc. sometimes in **-im**, abl. sometimes in **-ī** (§ 32).

	Plural.
N. V.	host-ēs
Acc.	host-ēs or **-īs**
Gen.	host-ĭum
D. Abl.	host-ĭbŭs

DECL. 4 (**-ŭs**, *M.*, some *F.*; **-ū**, *N.*).

	Singular.	Singular.
N. V.	grad-ŭs	gen-ū
Acc.	grad-um	gen-ū
Gen.	grad-ūs	gen-ūs
Dat.	grad-ŭī	gen-ū
Abl.	grad-ū	gen-ū
	Plural.	**Plural.**
N. V.	grad-ūs	gen-ŭă
Acc.	grad-ūs	gen-ŭă
Gen.	grad-ŭum	gen-ŭum
D. Abl.	grad-ĭbŭs	gen-ĭbŭs

DECL. 5 (*F.*, except **dies**).

	Singular.
N. V.	di-ēs
Acc.	di-em
Gen.	di-ēī
Dat.	di-ēī
Abl.	di-ē
	Plural.
N. V. A.	di-ēs
Gen.	di-ērum
D. Abl.	di-ēbŭs

Acus, arcus, quercus, and some others have dat. abl. pl. in **-ūbŭs.**

Adjectives.

FIRST CLASS.

Masc. as **dominus** or (if ending in **-er**) **magister**; **e remains** throughout before **r** in those ending in **-fer** or **-ger**, also in **asper, lacer, līber, miser, tener.**

Fem. as **porta.**

Neut. as **regnum.**

SECOND CLASS (THIRD DECLENSION).

Masc. and **Fem.**—(1) **Comparatives** and (2) most adjectives with nom. sing. for all genders alike and base ending in a short syllable have abl. sing. in **-ĕ** and gen. pl. in **-um**; the rest have abl. sing. in **-ī**, gen. pl. in **-ĭum**, acc. pl. in **-ēs** or **-īs.**

Neut.—In gen., dat., abl., as masc. and fem. In nom. sing. comparatives have **-ĭŭs** (for masc. and fem. **-ĭŏr**), and in nom. pl. **-ĭōră.** Adjectives with **-ĭum** in gen. pl. have **-ĭă** in nom. pl. neut. The voc. and acc. neut. are always the same as the nom. neut.

Pronouns.

	First Person.		Second Person.		Third Person (Reflexive only).
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.	Singular and Plural.
Nom.	ĕgŏ	nōs	*N. V.* tū	vōs	
Acc.	mē	nōs	*Acc.* tē	vōs	*Acc.* sē or sēsē
Gen.	mĕī	nostrī nostrum*	*Gen.* tŭī	vestrī vestrum*	*Gen.* sŭī
Dat.	mĭhĭ	nōbīs	*Dat.* tĭbĭ	vōbīs	*Dat.* sĭbĭ
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	*Abl.* tē	vōbīs	*Abl.* sē or sēsē

* Partitive.

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	hīc or hĭc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Gen.		hūiŭs		hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.		huic			hīs	
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc		hīs	

	Singular.			Singular.		
Nom.	illĕ	illă	illŭd	*Nom.* ipsĕ	ipsă	ipsum
Acc.	illum	illam	illŭd	*Acc.* ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Gen.		illĭŭs		*Gen.*	ipsĭŭs	
Dat.		illī		*Dat.*	ipsī	
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	*Abl.* ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

Illĕ and **ipsĕ** are in the plural declined like adjectives of the first class.

Istĕ is declined like **illĕ**.

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	ĭs	ĕă	ĭd	ĕī or ĭī	ĕae	ĕă
Acc.	ĕum	ĕam	ĭd	ĕōs	ĕās	ĕă
Gen.		ēiŭs		ĕōrum	ĕārum	ĕōrum
Dat.		ĕī			ĕīs or ĭīs	
Abl.	ĕō	ĕā	ĕō		ĕīs or ĭīs	

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	īdem	ĕădem	īdem	īdem or ĕīdem	ĕaedem	ĕădem
Acc.	ĕundem	ĕandem	īdem	ĕosdem	ĕasdem	ĕădem
Gen.		ēiusdem		ĕōrundem	ĕārundem	ĕōrundem
Dat.		ēīdem			isdem or ĕisdem	
Abl.	ĕōdem	ĕādem	ĕōdem		isdem or ĕisdem	

Relative.

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	quī	quae	quŏd	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quŏd	quōs	quās	quae
Gen.		cūiŭs		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.		cui			quibŭs	
Abl.	quō	quā	quō		quibŭs	

Interrog.

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	quĭs quī	quae	quĭd quŏd	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quĭd quŏd	quōs	quās	quae

The rest as **quī** (relative).

The INDEFINITE **quĭs** or **quī** is declined as the interrogative, except that in the nom. sing. fem. and nom. and acc. pl. neut. it has **quă**, not **quae**.